THE RITES
OF THE TWICE-BORN
THE RITES OF THE TWICE-BORN

51977

By

MRS. SINCLAIR STEVENSON
M.A., Sc.D. (Dublin)

OF THE IRISH MISSION IN GUJARAT
SOMETIME SCHOLAR OF SOMERVILLE COLLEGE, OXFORD
HONOUR SCHOOL OF JURISPRUDENCE, OXFORD
AUTHOR OF "NOTES ON MODERN JAINISM" "THE HEART OF JAINISM"
"FIRST STEPS IN GUJARATHI"

WITH FOREWORD

By

A. A. MACDONELL, M.A., Ph.D., F.B.A.
PROFESSOR OF SANSKRIT IN THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD

Oriental Books Reprint Corporation
Book Publishers, 54 Rani Jhansi Road, New Delhi-55
TO THE TWO GALLANT BROTHERS,
LIEUT. C. H. B. ADAMS-WYLIE, I.M.S.
(DIED AT BLOEMFONTEIN, 1900), AND
SAPPER A. W. HAMILTON ADAMS,
CANADIAN ENGINEERS (DIED NEAR
MERVILLE, 1915), WHO WERE HER
EARLIEST CRITICS AND HER FIRST
REVIEWS, THEIR SISTER DEDICATES
THIS BOOK
FOREWORD

It is with peculiar pleasure that I write the following lines as a foreword to this volume, because both Mrs. Stevenson and her husband assiduously studied Sanskrit with me several years ago at Oxford. An adequate knowledge of the sacred language of the Brāhmans is a necessary basis for a trustworthy exposition of the life of the caste which committed its ritual rules to writing in the Sanskrit Sūtra literature more than 2,000 years ago, and which has adhered to them as there formulated with comparatively little modification down to the present time. As the daily life of the Hindus from the cradle to the grave is interpenetrated with religious practices more closely than that of any other people in the world, the mass of material involved in a description of their ceremonial is very great. Mrs. Stevenson has enjoyed the advantage of collecting this material through direct and continuous association with Brāhmans during a residence of a good many years in a part of India where old traditions have been particularly well preserved. She has consequently been able to handle her subject with a first-hand knowledge denied to most other writers who generally derive their information from books only. She has, moreover, adopted the doubly excellent plan of restricting her account to a single region of India and of submitting what she has written for correction to those who themselves practise the rites she describes. Otherwise, owing to the numerous divergencies in detail of Brāhmanical ceremonies in different parts of India, her statement, as being too general, would have been, on the one hand, liable to frequent criticism and contradiction,
and on the other might have been on her part inaccurate or misleading because of the misunderstanding or misinterpretation of the facts observed. It is to be hoped that others possessing the necessary equipment and prolonged opportunities of study on the spot will in different parts of the country follow Mrs. Stevenson's methods, and supply the student of Indian religions with new and well-attested data from every region of the peninsula.

The subject-matter of the book is distributed in three parts. The first deals with the epochs in a Brähman's life: birth, investiture with the sacred thread, betrothal, marriage, and death, together with the beliefs, practices, and ceremonies connected with the main periods of his career, such as rites performed in infancy, the importance of a son, funeral offerings, the punishments in future existences of sins committed in this life, the widow's lot, and other matters. The second part is concerned with times and seasons in so far as they are connected with the ritual of the Brähman's day, of the days of the week, the month, and the year; and with occasional rites and observances associated with the building of houses, the digging of wells, and with pilgrimages, sacred hills and rivers. The last part describes the worship of the two great gods Viṣṇu and Śiva, together with the ceremonies performed in their temples. It also treats of the practices of ascetics.

The book, concluding with a comparison of the outlook of Hinduism and Christianity, discusses the appeal which the latter makes to the increasing number of thinking men among the Twice-born as a substitute for a system which no longer satisfies their religious cravings. The author writes in an attractive style, holding the attention by comparing now and then Hindu with European ideas and customs, and by interspersing humorous criticisms, but always in a kindly spirit. She uniformly treats her subject with both insight and sym-
pathy. Especially important, I think, is her discussion of the doctrine of Karma. While admitting its value as a moral check, she indicates its paralysing influence and its evil effects, such as the arrogance of the Brähman, the sad fate of the child widow, and the wretched plight of the low-caste man and the pariah.

A perusal of the book will show that the large mass of ritual matter it contains is permeated with innumerable superstitions and primitive usages which, inherited from a remote past, hinder the progress of Indian civilization at the present day. It will therefore appeal not only to the student of religions, but to the anthropologist and the social reformer. It is a notable contribution to the armoury of those who are fighting in the war of liberation of the human race.

A. A. MACDONELL.
PREFACE

In some lovely upland valley in Switzerland the traveller may notice a lonely cross, raised, as any friendly peasant will tell him, in memory of a mission that had once been held there, and so reminding the careless passer-by that in this quiet place, perhaps years ago, simple folk had knelt and caught glimpses of the Eternal.

One would like to mark the beginning of a book like this with some such symbol, for we are to study in it rites and ceremonies in which a people, alien though they be in race and creed, have also sought after the Divine; and the reader would do well to remove the shoes from off his feet, remembering that the ground he will be treading is hallowed.

One would fain reproduce the atmosphere in which the facts recorded here were told, and introduce to the sympathetic student the beautiful Indian women with their Madonna-like faces, who welcomed the writer so prettily into their homes and confided to her their domestic rites—the fifth Veda, as the Brāhmans call it, of the woman's knowledge; the simple country Brāhmans who gathered round our tents as we toured, and told us all that they knew; and the courteous officiants met on early morning or twilight visits to city or village temples. From all these the writer gathered much scattered information, none of which, however, she dared to use, till it had been sifted and collated by three Brāhman pāṇḍits. Morning after morning she and they sat together on a quiet sunlit veranda whilst they lectured, explained, and dictated; and no fact has been recorded without the consent of all three.
Proud as the writer is of the two great schools where she herself studied, she never met there or elsewhere better or finer patience and accuracy in teaching than these three Indian schoolmasters showed. Her oldest friend amongst these paṇḍits, a Nāgara by caste and the head master of a High School, represented the modern outlook; the other two knew no English: one of them, an Audīca Brāhman, was one of the most learned Sāstrīs and Sanskrit scholars of the district, and the other, a Sārasvata Brāhman, possessed an unrivalled knowledge of the folk-lore and the legends of the people. All three had that real love of imparting knowledge which marks the born teacher. Over and over again they would describe a custom till they were certain that the writer had gripped the salient points, then she translated to them her notes as she took them down, and these they checked with lynx-eyed scrupulousness. ‘Shall we let people in England’, they would say, ‘think that we taught the Madam Sāhib things untrue?’ And later the whole book woven out of these notes was retranslated to them and altered and altered again, till even they at last were satisfied. Customs vary so much in every district in India, that the writer dare not hope that these descriptions will hold good in every detail for any very extensive stretch of country; but for the town in which she wrote, the three paṇḍits accepted this final account as accurate.

The object of this book, however, is to stimulate rather than to instruct, not to provide an encyclopaedia of ritual Hinduism, but to furnish a beginner with pigeon-holes wherein he may range the facts he himself gathers, and with pegs from which he may take down the ready-made garments the writer has provided, hanging up in their stead the fruits of his own toil.

For such a purpose the local variations of custom will prove a help rather than a hindrance; for, after all, one of the strongest instincts of mankind the wide world over is to contradict. Let
the beginner read over these pages with his own paṇḍit, and he will at once be supplied with a flood of corrections, amplifications, and alterations, from which he will be able to fashion that most valuable of all books on Comparative Religion, a personal record of a faith based on personal friendship.

The writer has called her book *The Rites of the Twice-born*, but the subject is not, of course, exhausted in these pages. Indeed, she has deliberately excluded much material, for fear of obscuring the norm by an overweight of details, and so hiding the wood by the trees; but the beginner would find it most useful to work over these rites with a Brāhman who is not a follower of Śiva, as was each of her three paṇḍits, but of Viṣṇu, or else with members of the other Twice-born castes who are not Brāhmans at all,¹ and record for himself the divergencies.

What the writer has attempted to do is to furnish the man or woman newly landed in India with some clue that may help him in beginning to study the faith of his fellow-citizens, and the earlier this ready-made clue can be discarded, the sooner will one at least of her purposes be fulfilled.

The Indian distrusts a certain type of self-styled anthropologist who, as it seems to him, looks on an alien creed merely as material from which to fill a sort of museum; and one day one of her paṇḍits said:—¹ Madam Sāhib, these are our sacred things that we are telling you, and we are willing to tell you personally of them, but will the people who read the book also study them with reverence?’ In reply she could only urge that, charm she never so wisely, the incurably frivolous, to whom nothing is sacred, would never dream of reading a book of this nature; and, for the rest, promise that at the very

¹ The term Twice-born—*Dvijas*—includes, of course, besides the Brāhmans, the members of the ancient Vaiśya and Kṣatriya castes, who, like the Brāhmans, originally passed through the Second Birth wrought by the bestowal of the sacred thread.
beginning she would ask the reader to remember that he was entering the precincts of a shrine.

There are three great Paths, any one of which a Brähman may elect to follow who wishes to find Rest:—the Way of Works;¹ the Way of Faith and Devotion;² and the Way of Knowledge.³

In this book it is the first, the Way of Works, that we are to study. Much more has been written about the other paths; about the Way of Devotion with its all-absorbing and utter consecration to a Deity—a path which leads at times as high as Heaven, and at others falls as low as Hell—and the Way of High Philosophy, the intricacy of whose labyrinths, and the delicacy of whose filaments have passed into a proverb. But in this book we have chosen the humblest of all the paths, a Way that at its highest never leads its followers to complete Liberation, but only to the passing bliss of a Heaven which he will one day have to leave again. It is, however, the road that most of the simple folk—the ordinary people—amongst the Twice-born are treading; the Way of Rites and Ceremonies, whose due performance every day, and at birth, marriage, death, and the great festivals, takes up a third of their lives. It is essentially the Woman’s Way, and so it seemed particularly to invite a woman to investigate it, for much of it is barred against the research of the mere man.

Over and over again, as she studied, the writer proved the advantage of being, not only a woman, but a missionary; for the very fact of that vocation ensured that the researcher and the worshipper were looking at things from the same point of view, that of the things which are not seen but are eternal; and, thanks to the noble tradition left by the great missionaries of the past, that fact also assured the shyest Indian that she brought sympathy and reverence to the study of his faith.

¹ Karma-mārga. ² Bhakti-mārga. ³ Jñāna-mārga.
The Way of Works may be the humblest of the three great paths, but in some respects it is the most satisfactory for a beginner to study. There are in it actual things that are performed and can be seen and inquired into, and which demand from their observer no adhesion to this or that passing theory, but only a feeling for concrete facts. And, when one comes to writing it all down, there is great solace in the thought that one may say it quite simply, since, 'when a man has facts, he need not stop to be clever'.

It is, however, impossible to write a book of this sort without the co-operation of many friends; and besides thanking the two editors of the Series for all their help and encouragement, the writer owes a special debt of gratitude to the late Rev. Dr. G. P. Taylor, the scholar-saint of Western India, who first directed her attention to the study of Indian religions, and whose death, whilst these pages that he had so carefully read and weighed were passing through the press, has bereft us of a fragrant example of godliness, old-world courtesy, and sound learning. Then she would like to thank Dr. A. A. Macdonell, who has not only written a foreword to the book, but also made time, in spite of the urgent pressure of other work, to read through the whole of the proof; and lastly her husband, who discussed every paragraph with her while the book was growing and later undertook the work of indexing and proof-correcting.

That such busy men could find so much time to be kind will always be to the writer a very gracious memory.

MARGARET STEVENSON.

CONTENTS

PART I

THE LIFE STORY OF A BRĀHMĀN

CHAPTER I

BIRTH AND BABYHOOD

Precautions—Preparations—Remedies—Telling the Good News—Only a Girl—In the Birth-chamber—The Food of Mother and Child—Birthday Superstitions—Calling—Mother Sixth—The Tenth Day—The Eleventh Day—The Twelfth Day—The Name-giving—Choice of the Name—Twentieth Day—Thirtieth Day—Beholding the Sun—Fetching Water—The First Holt—The Weaning—Seating on the Ground—Cutting the Hair—Ear-boring—Teething—Sending to School—Birthday Anniversaries.

Pages 1-26

CHAPTER II

THE SACRED THREAD


Pages 27-45

CHAPTER III

BETROTHAL AND MARRIAGE PRELIMINARIES

Vāgdāna—Inspection of the Bride—VIRGIN FASTS AND FESTIVALS (Worship of Śiva’s Wife; Sun-worship; No-Salt Festival)—Age of Marriage—The Ward of the Gods—Eight Kinds of Marriage.

Pages 46-57
CONTENTS

CHAPTER IV
THE WEDDING

Pages 58-95

CHAPTER V
AFTER THE WEDDING

Pages 96-111

CHAPTER VI
THE DESIRE FOR A SON
Prenatal Care—Fifth Month Ceremony—Rules to be observed by an Expectant Mother—Offering to the Invincible Goddess—Hair-parting (Sīmanta)—The Horse Dance—DISAPPOINTMENTS—Remedies: Story of Kṛiṣṇa—Planet Placating—Marrying a Calf to a Bull—The Worship of the Five—The Worship of the Three—Thirteen Black Pots—Seven Days’ Reading of the Seventh Book—CO-MARRIAGE—ADOPTION—The Smelling of the Head.

Pages 112-134

CHAPTER VII
DEATH
Premonitions—Preparation for Death—Last Gifts—Last Hours—The Corpse—The Corpse Worshipped—First Funeral Offerings—The Funeral
CONTENTS

Procession—The Widow’s Seven Steps—The Burning-ground—At the Burning-ground—Lighting the Pyre—A Mother with her Unborn Child—The End of the Pyre—Burials—The Women—The Return—Food and Clothes—Condolence. Pages 135-155

CHAPTER VIII

FUNERAL OFFERINGS


CHAPTER IX

THE HINDU PENAL CODE


PART II

TIMES AND SEASONS

CHAPTER X

A BRAINTMAN’S DAY

CONTENTS

Meals: Breakfast—Śvādhyaṇa—Lamplighting—Cooked Food—Supper.
A Woman’s Day: Toilet—Worship—Reverence to Husband—Breakfast
—Housework—Afternoon Calls—Evening Worship. Pages 209–251

CHAPTER XI

DAYS OF THE WEEK AND DAYS OF THE MONTH

DAYS OF THE WEEK: Monday—Tuesday—Wednesday—Thursday—
Friday—Saturday—Hanumān worship—Sunday. DAYS OF THE MONTH:
Eleventh Days—Unlucky Days—The Twelfth—The Thirteenth—The
Dark Fourteenth—Full-moon Night—The Moonless Night.
Pages 252–262

CHAPTER XII

THE BRĀHMĀNA SACRED YEAR

FIRST MONTH (Kārttika): Annakūṭa—Brothers and Sisters—Deva
Divālī—Days Sacred to Dead Ancestors. SECOND MONTH (Mārgaśīrṣa).
THIRD MONTH (Pauṣa): Saṅkrānti. FOURTH MONTH (Māgha): Vasanta
Pañcami—Śivarātri. FIFTH MONTH (Phālguna): Holī. SIXTH MONTH
(Čaitra): The Pleasant First—The Nine Nights—Rāma’s Birth-
day—Pīṭṭī Days. SEVENTH MONTH (Vaiśākha): Birthday of Rāma-
with-the-Axe—Rehearing of Gaṅga—Anniversary of the Man-lion.
EIGHTH MONTH (Jyeṣṭha): Signs of a Good Monsoon—Ten days of
Ganges-worship—Bhīma’s Eleventh Day—Worship of the Banyan-tree—
How small Girls spend their Sundays. NINTH MONTH (Āśāḍha):
Second Day—Further Monsoon Signs—The Great Eleventh—Full-moon
Night. TENTH MONTH (Śrāvana): Hollow-of-the-hand Worship—
The Four Moon-days—Worship of the Smallpox Goddess—Full-moon
Day (Change of Thread—Baleva—Sea-worship—Flood-worship)—Cow-
and-calf-worship—Flooding Śiva—Snake-day—Cooking-day—Kṛṣṇa’s
Birthday—The Bathing of Kṛṣṇa—Days of the Dead—End of the Month.
ELEVENTH MONTH (Bhādrapada): Goddess-worship—The Fourth of
Gaṅga—Gaining Merit for the Dead—Gifts for the Dead—Dwarf Incarna-
tion—Cow-and-calf Fast—The Men’s Fast—The Dark Fortnight of
the Dead. TWELFTH MONTH (Āśvina): Nine Days—The Warriors’
Day—Festival of White Moonlight—Feast of Lamps—Wealth-worship—
Day of Beauty—Witches’ Night—Account-book-worship. ADDITIONAL
MONTH.
Pages 263–342
CONTENTS

CHAPTER XIII

OCCASIONAL RITES AND CEREMONIES


PART III

TEMPLE WORSHIP

CHAPTER XIV

ŚIVA WORSHIP


Pages 368-400

CHAPTER XV

VIṢṆU WORSHIP AND OTHER TEMPLE CEREMONIES

CONTENTS

CHAPTER XVI
THE END OF THE WAY
Ascetics: Postulants—First Sraddha—Second Sraddha—Four Stages:
Kutikaka—Bahudaka—Havisa—Paramahavisa—Saunkardarya.
Pages 418-427

PART IV
CHAPTER XVII
THE APPEAL OF CHRIST TO THE TWICE-BORN
Pages 428-452

INDEX . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 453
PART I

THE LIFE STORY OF A BRĀHMĀN

CHAPTER I

BIRTH AND BABYHOOD

Precautions—Preparations—Remedies—Telling the Good News—Only a Girl—In the Birth-chamber—The Food of Mother and Child—Birthday Superstitions—Calling—Mother Sixth—The Tenth Day—The Eleventh Day—The Twelfth Day—The Name-giving—Choice of the Name—Twentieth Day—Thirtieth Day—Beholding the Sun—Fetching Water—The First Holī—The Weaning—Seating on the Ground—Cutting the Hair—Ear-boring—Teething—Sending to School—Birthday Anniversaries.

Every fresh chapter in a Hindu's life depends so inextricably on the preceding chapters, and together they form so complete a circle, that his life-history seems to have no beginning and no ending; and for a moment or two the observer stands outside the circumference, wondering where he shall break in, since, start where he will, he must snap off some of the threads which unite the present with the past. But, since he must start somewhere, it seems natural to begin a life-history at the birth and later return to pick up some of the unravelled threads.

In many parts of India a woman prefers to go back to her old home for the birth of her first child. There she is guarded in the most careful fashion from every evil, spiritual or physical, that might affect her body or her soul. Not only may she do no hard housework, for fear it should tire her, but she must do no sewing, or anything else that binds things together: for instance, she must not close up the outlet of the great grain jar, or replaster the hearth.
A special chamber is prepared for her, a dark little room, generally rather apart from the rest of the house, and every window in it is carefully closed and shuttered. The bedstead is stripped of its tapes, and string substituted, on some auspicious day, the fourth, ninth, or fourteenth day of the month being carefully avoided. Great care is taken that the bedstead should not lie exactly under the great beam that holds the house together, since some Hindus think that the god of death perches on this; neither should the bed face the south, as that is the abode of the god of death.

When her hour has come, the expectant mother, accompanied by her own mother and the midwife, enter this room, and they loosen everything that they can: her camisole, the cord that ties her skirt, her shawl-like overdress (sārī) and her hair, carefully preserving the string that has bound the last named.

The midwife may belong to the caste of midwives (Suyāṇī), or may be a Khavāsa, a Rājput, or even a Muḥammadan, but is generally a barber's wife.

If the mother's suffering be unduly prolonged, her friends will break open the mouth of the great grain jar and let the corn stream out, or dig up the beplastered hearth, or (if they can procure one) put a lotus flower in water, believing that, as its petals expand, the mouth of the womb will open; or, turning to their gods for aid, they will worship Śrī Kṛṣṇa, or Nakalaṅka, or whichever god is their tutelary deity (Iṣṭadeva), and promise to give sugar, to break a coco-nut and distribute it, to feast Brāhmans, or to give a silver model of an umbrella to some temple when the child is safely born; or they may draw seven circles, each within the other, representing the seven forts mentioned in the Mahābhārat through which Abhimanyu forced his way, and soak the diagram in water, which they then give to the woman to drink. If the midwife be a Muḥammadan, she will very likely vow a coco-nut to Dātāra Pīra in Junāgaḍh, and when the child is born, she will beg the coco-nut from its grandparents and take it home. She
will, however, avoid the trouble of an actual journey to Junagadh by just pronouncing the name of Dätära Pira over the nut as she breaks it. Some of the nut she will distribute amongst the village children, taking care, however, to keep a good deal of it for her own use; so that altogether this vow of the midwife’s to Dätära Pira does not cost her very much.

On the other hand, leaving spiritual methods on one side, the midwife may turn to medical remedies: tearing down the cobweb of a spider, she will roll it into a ball, put cloves in it and place it in the mouth of the womb; or she may try the effect of heat, putting fennel seed on a brazier and letting the smoke play on the patient as she sits over it.

Heat occupies an important place in an Indian confinement, for, an hour and a half after the child is born, a brazier of charcoal is put under the mother’s bedstead and kept burning for ten days, so that the suffocating atmosphere of a birth-chamber, with every window closed, on a stifling Indian day can be better imagined than described.

The exact moment when the child is born is noted with the most meticulous care, in order that the horoscope may later be correctly drawn by an astrologer, for this horoscope will be the determining factor in the child’s life, deciding its spouse, its wedding, and its profession.

Occasionally the midwife throws a lime under the door to tell the good news that a son is born, the sourness of the fruit safeguarding the happiness of the hour.

If the child be a boy, the midwife with a wooden mallet strikes the brass plate that she has previously taken into the birth-chamber and makes an appalling row, in order that the boy may learn never to fear or jump even at the sound of a gun in later life; but no gong is sounded if the baby is only a girl. The moment the joyful sound is heard that tells of a boy’s advent, the children of the house rush to the male members of the family and torment them, till they are appeased by the gift of one or two rupees; then, if the proud father’s house be in the same town, they hurry on there and
get much more out of him. The telling of the good news of
the birth of a son is called Vadhāmānī, and any woman mis-
missionary will tell how pretty and eager a listening she gains
from the women of the village when she tells them she has
come to bring them the Vadhāmānī which once the angels
sang at Bethlehem.

If the wee baby be only a girl, the rejoicings are quite
different; for though, after one or two sons have been born,
the parents welcome a daughter, most Indians hope that their
first-born will be a son. Still, even if the first child be a girl,
they say ‘Lakṣmī has come’, so that in either case the advent
of the first child is considered an auspicious event. The desire
for a son is not only the longing for an heir to inherit their
property and carry on their name, or the natural desire of most
parents to have the pleasure and pride of watching their boy’s
successful career; it is something that grips them far more
vitally and harrowingly than that, for only a son can save his
father’s soul from hell by performing the funeral ceremonies,
and only the birth of a son can secure his mother from the fear
that another wife may be brought in to share with her
her husband’s affections.¹

While it is true that, on account of the expense entailed,
several daughters are not welcomed, yet it is believed that one
daughter, when she is married, brings her parents as much
merit as the performance of a great sacrifice; the great advan-
tage of a marriage ceremony being, as we shall see later, that
it combines endless fun with the chance of acquiring religious
merit, and it is in the girl’s house that the best of the fun takes
place.

So the children of the house are determined to make hay,
even if it be only a daughter that has been born, and they still
go to beg from their uncles and elders, though in such a case
they can only hope for annas instead of rupees.

¹ Some Nāgara women, however, are saved from this fear, since, in many
districts at least, a Nāgara will not remarry during his wife’s lifetime, even
if no son be born.
The young mother at this time is considered specially liable to the assaults of evil, and it is worth while noticing rather carefully all that goes on in the birth-chamber.

In the case of many Brāhmans and other Hindus the after-birth is buried in the earthen floor under the mother's bedstead, or in some corner of the birth-chamber, and with it are placed one pice, turmeric, some salt, and an areca-nut. The umbilical cord is cut at a distance of four fingers' breadth from the child; the end is bound with cloth and asafoetida, and then tied to the neck of the child with the same piece of string which had previously bound the mother's hair. The cord dries up of itself, and in four or five days drops off, when the place where it had been is smeared with clarified butter.

At the time the cord is cut, special texts from the Sacred Books ought to be repeated, but this has dropped out of fashion; indeed, seeing that no man may enter the birth-chamber and no woman repeat the verses, it is difficult to see what else could be expected.

Some Hindus observe special precautions to ward off demons or evil dreams: for instance, the scissors which had been used to sever the umbilical cord are put under the pillow on which the young mother's head is resting, and the iron rod with which the floor had been dug up for the burial of the after-birth is placed on the ground at the foot of the bed. This iron rod is part of a plough, and, if the householder does not possess one of his own, it is specially borrowed for the occasion; its presence is so important that it is not returned for six days, however much its owner may be needing it.

Altogether the presence of iron or steel is now an important and rest-giving factor; for the midwife, before leaving, often secretly introduces a needle into the mattress of the bed, in the hope of saving the mother after-pains.

It is because all these things cannot be carried out in

---

1 The Nāgara do not permit the after-birth to be buried in the house, but have it thrown away.
2 These customs are not practised by Nāgara.
a hospital that it is so difficult to persuade an Indian woman to go there for her confinement; but there is also another thing that deters her. If the after-birth does not come away of itself, the midwife will give the mother raw millet flour to eat, in order to induce choking and coughing and so produce the desired effect; or if the case be more obstinate still, she will put fennel seeds into a brazier and hold the smoking mass as close as possible to the patient, whilst some one massages her stomach, and some one else beats her back. But in no case will they insert a hand to pull away the after-birth, for if this be forcibly removed, they firmly believe that the woman will never bear another child.

But now it is time that we turned to the baby; immediately after the umbilical cord is cut, the child is bathed in warm water. If a girl, it is bathed in an earthen or brass vessel, if a boy, in a bell-metal vessel; but in either case the vessel has to be given to the midwife as one of her perquisites.

It is interesting to study that lady’s fees. As a matter of fact, her actual charge is only eight annas for a daughter and one rupee for a son, but she makes her profits on her extras. She asks one rupee for burying the after-birth in the case of a girl, and two rupees in the case of a boy; but it is when she is going home on the first day that she gets most, for the people of the house have to give her then a coco-nut, a pound and a quarter of wheat, one pound of molasses, half a pound of melted butter, and seven areca-nuts. All these things are given her on a tray, which she empties into a corner of her sārī, but as it would be unlucky to hand back an empty tray, she puts a little wheat on to it before returning it. She is given all this on the first day, and again on the sixth, and on the tenth, the twentieth, the thirty-seventh, and the forty-fifth.

The Scriptures require that even before the umbilical cord is cut a Vedic ceremony, that of Jāta-karma, should be performed, when the child is given a gold coin to lick, besmeared with honey and clarified butter. Nowadays, however, this is

---

1 Rice and millet must never be given to the midwife at this time.
often omitted; but if it is done, it takes place after, and not before, the severing of the cord.

One custom, however, is invariable: practically all Hindus, and Indian Christians too, feed the child for the first three days of its life on galasodi, a mixture of molasses and water; and not until the third day is the baby put to the mother’s breast. Great care is exercised as to the character of the woman who gives this mixture of molasses and water, for it is believed that the giver transmits her own qualities of good temper, wisdom, gentleness, &c., to the new-born infant. If in later life the child turns out badly, its friends reproach it by reminding it of the noble character of the woman who gave it its first molasses.

The woman fasts for the first day; on the second she is given a thin mixture (rāba) made of molasses, wheat-flour, and clarified butter, and on the third she begins her diet of śiro, a thicker compound of wheat flour, molasses, and melted butter, on which she will live for ten days.

Every Indian woman makes a real attempt to nurse her child and usually succeeds. If the mother, however, is finally unable to do so, some Brāhmans will call in the aid of a wet-nurse of any good caste, but as Nāgara could only employ a woman of their own caste in that capacity, they are practically forced to feed the child by hand. For ten days at least the mother takes every morning a mixture, supposed to have medicinal value, which is composed of thirty-two ingredients, such as ginger, powdered coco-nut, dried gum, molasses, clarified butter, dill, pepper, &c.; the cost of the whole mixture is about five rupees.

Unfortunately the young mother’s diet includes little or no milk, and it is to this lack that some lady doctors attribute much of the phthisis so common amongst them.

Here we might perhaps pause for a moment to notice some more birthday superstitions.

We have seen the care with which the hour of the child’s birth is noted. The day of the month and the day of the week are no less important. If a boy is born on the full moon
day, a proverb says that he will be very clever but will bring misfortune to others, for (and this is also the case with a boy born on the fourteenth day), either his mother, father, or grandfather will die, or suffer some heavy loss, within the year. There is another proverb about a girl born on a Wednesday: her father or brother will die or suffer loss within the year (she is called their Bhāra or Burden), but she herself will be very rich. Moreover, if a girl is born on a Wednesday, the belief is that the next child will also be a daughter. A girl born on a Tuesday or a Sunday, however, brings wealth to her parents.

Some Hindus believe (though others contradict it) that if three daughters are born one after another, and the fourth child is a son, or if there be three sons and then a daughter, this fourth child will be unable to speak clearly, but will stammer all its life, and still worse, he or she will prove a 'Burden', bound to cause grievous loss, or the death of some relative.

The anxious parents of a child who is a Bhāra go to a Brāhman, who examines the horoscope of the child to find out what means should be taken to prevent the evil happening. Usually a bronze cup is filled with clarified butter, and a silver coin is put in it. The child is made to look into the cup, which is then taken to the father, who also gazes at his reflection. The cup and its contents are given away to a Brāhman, and then, and not till then, is it safe for the father to see his child's face.

Another belief is that, if a girl is born on a Saturday, she will be very bad-tempered, and if on a Thursday, she will be very good-tempered.

The baby's personal appearance is also fraught with deep significance, for a child with light eyes is considered ill-omened, and if marked with anything resembling a serpent will do great harm to its relatives. On the other hand, a red birthmark is very lucky and foretells wealth. A mole in the palm of the left hand or on the lip is also fortunate.¹ A further point about the birthday of the child is that the parents do

¹ We might perhaps mention here another curious superstition held by all castes of Hindus: if in a native state a mare foals by day (they
not like it to occur within a year from the marriage day, but no one minds if it is a year and a day from the wedding.

Everybody is pleased if a son is born resembling his mother, or if a daughter be like her father, for such children will be very lucky.

In addition to the two ceremonies of severing the cord and giving the child a gold coin to lick, the Nāgara have a custom of marking their thresholds when a son is born. When this is done, they make straight lines of clarified butter across the doorway as a sign of good luck. Amongst Hindu ladies of all castes it is usual for the acquaintances of the young mother, unless they happen to be in mourning, to go and call on her and inquire after the health of parent and child, and if the child be a boy, Nāgara Brāhmans in comfortable circumstances would give each caller five areca-nuts; other Brāhmans give molasses or sugar. Amongst Nāgara the friends, however, avoid calling on the sixth or the tenth day, for those are busy times for both mother and child. But other Brāhmans make a point of calling on this sixth day and making presents. If a bereaved mother call and ask for a few grains of pepper and fennel, she is hurriedly refused. If she obtained them, it would mean that her next child would not die, whereas the newly born infant in the house from which she took them would assuredly perish. They also watch that such a woman later on does not try and burn the skin of the child when it is playing in the street, for if she did, it would die, and her next baby would live.

The ceremonies that we have already mentioned may or may not be performed, but we now come to one which is almost universally observed by Hindus: it is the worship of ‘Mother Sixth’ and coincides with a time which, if ordinary hygienic precautions have not been observed, may be of special danger to the mother.

It is, as the name indicates, observed on the sixth day after are always supposed to foal by night), the king of the state will assuredly die.
the child's birth, and if that sixth day happen to fall on a Sunday or a Tuesday, it is so auspicious a coincidence that the proud father has to pay for it by giving the child gold.

The floor of the birth-chamber is besmeared with red clay, and a low wooden stool is placed near the bedstead, covered with a piece of silk, preferably green or red in colour. Seven leaves of the pipal tree are put on the stool, three being arranged in the centre and one at each corner. On each of the three central leaves something is painted; on the middle one of the three a representation of the cradle and child, and on the leaves on either side of it a woman and a man respectively; and on each one of the seven leaves a little heap of wheat or rice (but not millet) is placed, together with a tiny copper coin (a pice) and an areca-nut. Behind the low stool they put a little lamp fed with clarified butter, but this is arranged with great care in a place where it is invisible to the child, for, if he were to see it, he would later on go blind, or at least squint.¹ The next thing is to make the auspicious red mark for the first time since the birth on the mother's and on the child's forehead. This is done by some 'lucky' unwidowed woman, who has never lost a child, marking their foreheads with turmeric with her third finger. The baby is then put down on the floor to roll before the stool, whilst the women sing 'Roll, baby, roll; God has given you birth, He will give you food'. This stool is called Chathi or Sixth. Then the child's paternal aunt comes forward. She is a most important lady and in every ceremony we shall find that she plays a very leading part. Now she performs the actual worship of 'Mother Sixth' by putting some red turmeric and lime powder in water, sprinkling it over the stool, throwing some grains of wheat on it and placing on it or beside it some rice and at least one pice. She next turns to the little mite rolling on the floor and symbolically takes all its troubles on to her own head by waving her arms towards it with

¹ There is a saying that, if a man be squint-eyed, 'He must have seen the lamp on the sixth day'.
a circular motion, and then cracking her knuckles against her temples.¹

The child is then lifted up, and, as a protection against evil, some of the black pigment is taken from the lamp of clarified butter and put on the edges of the child’s eyelids. The stool is left where it was, but as evening draws on, pen, paper, and ink are put near it, for the belief is that on this night the goddess of fate (Vidhātrī) comes and writes the child’s future on the paper, or, as some believe, on the child’s forehead. That the future may be auspicious, many Brāhmans are careful to provide only red ink made of turmeric and lime for the goddess to write with.

The next morning all the things are removed. The wheat or rice and the pice are given to the family priest, the midwife gets a present of half a pound of clarified butter, half a pound of molasses, two pounds of wheat, seven areca-nuts, and a coco-nut. The aunt takes the silk away and makes it into a coat for the child, which she will give him when she names him on the twelfth day.²

On this sixth day the child also gets a good many presents from his friends and relatives, such as silk for a coat, handkerchiefs, or, in the case of a girl, a small sārī; and the day is further celebrated by a feast, in which all the resident members of the household and close relatives join.

Birth causes ceremonial defilement, and it is a very interesting study to note the mother’s progress back to ritual purity.

On the tenth day from the child’s birth the mother bathes first with a mixture of turmeric and scented white powder in the water, and then washes with arīṭhā nut.³ This marks her first step back towards ceremonial purity, for she may now clean her teeth for the first time since the child’s birth, and an auspicious mark is again made on her forehead. To avoid

¹ This action can only be performed by a woman. A man takes his son’s troubles symbolically on himself by smelling the child’s head.
² For interesting local differences cf. Bombay Gazetteer, vol. ix, pt. i, p. 34.
³ Sapindus Saponaria.
THE LIFE STORY OF A BRĀHMAN

a chill after bathing, her hair is dried and rubbed with dry ginger, and she is made to sit near a brazier. She next takes a few grains of green pulse in her hand and throws them on the bedstead, which is removed and a new one substituted. (The throwing of the pulse seems to be a sign of gratitude and auspiciousness.) The Nāgara put ten nuts and ten pieces of bāvala stick for cleaning the teeth near the bedstead on this day, but Audīca, Sārasvata, and Vālama Brāhmans do not seem to do this. With all of them, however, the mother, after bathing, takes warm water and milk ¹ in her hand three separate times and sips it three times. (Up to the thirteenth day the mother is always given warm water to drink; if she drink it cold, they think the child would die.) If the mother be strong enough, she observes all this tenth day as a fast.

The tenth day is an important date for the child also, for on this day it is bathed, first with half a cup of molasses mixed with milk, and then with warm water. After it is bathed, a very pretty little symbolic ceremony takes place: if it be a boy, he is put to lie for an instant on a slate that he may develop into a learned man; if a girl, she is deposited on a winnowing fan that she may grow up clever in domestic ways, of which cleaning the grain is one of the most important. (There is not yet much demand for a blue-stockling in an orthodox Brāhmans household!)

A feast is given on the eleventh day, if the babe be a boy, to which all the father’s relatives are invited, but the father himself, though the feast is actually given in the house where the child was born, may see neither mother nor baby. The paternal grandfather, however, is often shown the child, and, according to his means, gives it either gold or silver coins.

The father himself, if very keen on doing so, is allowed to see the child, though not the mother, on the next day, the twelfth after its birth.

¹ She only sips this diluted milk now ceremonially. She may not drink milk yet as an ordinary thing, lest she should never have another child.
The twelfth day of a child's life is as important as the sixth, for on it another of the Vedic sacra-rits, that of Name-Giving (Nāmakarana) is performed. Certain Brāhmans, believing that, whilst even days are lucky for girls, uneven ones are auspicious for boys, hold that a boy should be named on the eleventh day and a girl on the twelfth. All, however, agree that, if these days fall during the dark half of the month, the ceremony must be postponed till some lucky day in the bright of the moon. On whichever day is fixed for the ceremony, both the father's and the mother's relatives come to the house where the child was born, where a mixture of millet ¹ (which has been steeped in water since the morning), coco-nut and sugar is distributed amongst the guests present and sent to the houses of those who are not able to come.

The paternal aunt again takes the lead and, producing scarlet-coloured threads, fashioned partly from cotton and partly from silk which she has brought with her, ties one on each of the baby's wrists and ankles, two at its waist and one on its cradle. In the old days, folk say, the thread used was black, to ward off the Evil Eye more securely; it is only nowadays that red is used.² Certain Brāhmans decline to weave such a spider's web of threads round their child, and declare that one on the waist and one on the cradle are sufficient as a protection against the Evil Eye. The aunt also brings with her two tiny little bits of gold, each weighing perhaps half a gramme, one of which she ties on the cradle and one at the waist of the child for luck, or she may tie little pieces of iron on its cradle to keep off the Evil Eye.

Meanwhile in the principal room of the house a square portion of the floor has been smeared with red clay, and on this pipal leaves have been placed. The baby is now brought for the first time in its little life out of the stiflingly hot birth-

¹ In certain non-Brāhman communities wheat, gram and molasses are cooked together on this day and distributed. But the Brāhmans consider the cooking of two different kinds of grain together as impure.
² The change was probably made in order to avoid the use of so inauspicious a colour as black.
chamber and, being placed in a red silk sāri, is swung as though in a hammock above the reddened patch on the floor. The four corners of the sāri are held by the four nearest relatives of the child, its own brothers and sisters, if there be any, being given the preference; as the children swing the hammock, they sing, and at the strategic moment the ubiquitous aunt pronounces the name. The song runs (in Gujarāṭī):

Oū jholī pipāla pāna,
Phoī pādyunī [Rāma] nāma.1

It is easy to give the name when it has been decided on, the difficulty occurs earlier in the choice of the name, for in India a name is a momentous thing, and it can only be chosen after many things have been taken into consideration, and still more avoided. The letters of the Gujarāṭī alphabet are under the influence of the constellations, but, as there are fifty-two letters in the alphabet and only twenty-seven constellations, each constellation has more than one letter under its sway, some indeed have three. The first letter of the child's name must begin with one of the letters that belong to the constellation under which it was born; thus, if the child was born under the Zodiacal sign of the crab, which owns both the letters H and D, the initial of his first name must be one of the two, and the priest will tell the paternal aunt which initial to choose. But even when the initial is decided on, there is still a great deal of thought to be given to the name: it must not be that by which any dead relative was called, neither may it be the same as the child's father or grandfather, but, at least in the case of Brāhmans, it should contain the appellation of some god, and end either in Rāma, Śaṅkara, Rāya, or Lāla.

In addition to this aunt-given name, the father's name is used as a sort of hyphenated name, and then there is the family name; the next generation will keep the family name

1 Cradle and pipala tree and leaves of the same
Aunt has chosen [Rāma] as baby's name.
and drop their grandfather's name, substituting their own father's for it. A wife in marriage takes the family name, but always keeps her own father's name, and a mistake Europeans often make is to address, for instance, Putalibai, the wife of Dadabhai, as Mrs. Putalibai Dadabhai, instead of putting her father's name after her own.

A taboo on names is still observed, and is universal throughout India. The wife never mentions her husband's name, and a husband never mentions his wife's, save on the wedding day. The correct way for a husband to send a message to his wife is to say, not 'tell that to my wife', but 'tell that in my house', and in the same manner he announces any message he may have received from his wife as 'from inside my house one says'. Similarly the polite way to ask after the health of a man's wife is to say 'are the ladies of your house well?' not 'is Mrs. Bhatt well?'

In some castes, until the mother and father are about fifty, they do not as a rule mention their children's names; after that the husband might allude to his wife as 'the mother of my son so-and-so'; until the father is about fifty, he never speaks to his children in the presence of his elders, and would never call to his son if his own father were at hand.

If a mother have lost more than one child, the new baby is not named until it is six months or a year old, or, if there be mourning or ceremonial impurity (sūtaka) in a family, the name-giving is postponed till some more auspicious season. But, if possible, the name-giving takes place on the twelfth day. The mother is then only winning her way back to a state of ceremonial purity, so she cannot be present, but she watches everything from the birth-chamber, the door of which is left ajar. She is still too impure to touch anyone, so she cannot embrace the feet of the all-important aunt, her sister-in-law, but she does obeisance to her from a distance, and gives her four, or eight, annas. The midwife is also given a present. The mother makes the auspicious mark on her forehead again this day, and now her diet
also changes, and she is allowed vegetable curry, but no rice, for fear of cold; special sweets are also prepared (called Methi), some of which the mother must eat every morning; these contain, amongst their thirty-two ingredients, five pounds of molasses, five pounds of melted butter, ginger, coco-nut, gum, &c. The most important ingredient is the ginger, for this is supposed to impart great bravery to the child, indeed a proverb has arisen from this belief, and, if a man prove very courageous, his neighbours declare that his mother must have eaten a whole pound of ginger.

For the young mother the twentieth day marks another step forward towards ceremonial purity. On this day she bathes sitting on the bedstead, and afterwards is given dry ginger, molasses, and clarified butter to eat, to avoid any fear of a chill. After she has bathed, she throws some grains of green pulse on the bedstead, which is then removed, and a new one—the third—substituted; the room is freshly plastered, and she again makes the auspicious mark on her forehead. But, though less impure, she may not yet do any housework, perform any religious duties, or go outside her room for more than a minute. The diet is now more liberal, various articles, such as bread and pulse, being added to it, but as yet no rice is allowed.

Another stage is reached on the thirtieth day, for then the mother bathes, not in her bedroom, but in the ordinary household bathroom. As before, she makes the auspicious mark, throws green pulse on the bedstead, and has the room plastered, but still, as one informant puts it, 'she may do no work and no religion' and may not go outside the courtyard of the house.

With the Nāgara the thirty-seventh day is practically a replica of the thirtieth, and with them it is not till the forty-fifth day that the period of ceremonial defilement is ended. With most other Brāhmans it ends on the thirty-seventh day with bathing, removing the cot, and changing to ordinary dress. (Up till now the mother has been restricted to one or two sets of clothes.)
With the Nāgara the period lasts till the forty-fifth day, when the young mother bathes and clothes herself, if possible in silk garments, or, if not, in cotton ones that have never been worn previously, and goes to the nearest Śiva temple. There she bows to the figure of the god, and puts some silver coins near the shrine; then, returning to her mother's home, she does obeisance to the feet of each elderly woman relative and offers them some small present, such as four annas. If her husband's house be near at hand, she goes there also, and bows to the feet of her mother-in-law and the elderly ladies there, each of whom blesses her and says something pretty, such as 'May you have no worries and many children'.

From the date of the child's birth up till now the mother has not been allowed to drink milk, but hereafter she may take that, and also another special mixture, made of gum and clarified butter and other ingredients, a little of which she takes every day. Now, at long last, the woman is considered pure, and the ceremonial defilement or sūtaka is finally lifted. After this date her husband can send for her to come home any day he likes, and after the birth of a second child he does not delay very long; but, in the case of a first child, he generally allows his wife to stay six months in her mother's home. When she goes back to him, her father has to give her a new trousseau, containing a certain number of garments, the number fixed on being very often eight, so that he would have to give her eight new sāris, eight bodices, and eight petticoats. (Fortunately the fashions do not alter in Indian households, so that all these can be accumulated for future use!) The child also has to have presents: jewellery, coats, frocks, a cradle, a bed worth at least sixteen rupees, a quilt, some brass vessels, &c. Altogether the maternal grandfather of the new baby is lucky, in the case of a first grandchild, if he gets off under two hundred rupees, and if he be really very wealthy, the ladies of the family will see that he upholds the honour of his house by spending at least one thousand rupees on gifts to mother and
child; he will manage, however, to lay out less on each succeeding child that is born to his daughter.

There is another old Vedic ceremony called Niskramana which is now occasionally observed in very orthodox families on any convenient auspicious day after the forty-fifth.

In the case of a Nagara lady a square portion of the courtyard, from whence the sun is easily visible, is plastered with cow-dung and red clay, and on it the sign of the Svastika\(^1\) is made. The mother, wearing silk clothes, or absolutely new cotton ones, throws rice grains on to the square, and then, taking her baby in her arms, points out the sun to it, and singing the praises of that great luminary, prays to it for a long life for herself and her child.

Other Brahman ladies, whose customs permit them to fetch water, have another ceremony. With them, on any auspicious day after the forty-fifth, the young mother goes down to the river, taking with her two small water-pots, some rice in the husk, and some millet grain. Arrived there, she bathes, smears her forehead with red powder, and sticks rice that has been coloured red with turmeric on her forehead, and then walks home, carrying the filled water-pots and dropping rice and millet from her hands as she walks.

Some Brahmanas observe a special ceremony, when the child is two or three months old, offering it milk out of a conch-shell, but this is not very usual now, at least in western India; nor is another custom much observed at the present day of the mother touching first her own and then the child's lips with an areca-nut leaf.

At the time of Holi (the obscene Spring festival), however, nearly all Brahmanas perform some special ceremonies. The Nagara, indeed, consider the child still somewhat impure until the first Holi after its birth be passed. On the Holi day the baby girl or boy is taken to see the Holi fire, wearing round its throat a necklace of sugar drops. It is then carried round

\(^1\) The Svastika is a cross with the arms bent round.
BIRTH AND BABYHOOD

the fire three times, in such a way that its right hand is nearest to the flames. The next day the family priest comes and touches the child's lips with mango leaves or blossoms, but the Nāgara are particular that the red Holi powder should not be sprinkled over the child's clothes. Other Brāhmans deny that they consider the child impure till it has seen the Holi fire; nevertheless their ceremony for a child at its first Holi is more elaborate than that of the Nāgara. They dress the child in white clothes, sprinkle it with red or yellow powder, and adorn it with a necklace of dates, sugar, or pieces of coconut. Arrived at the Holi fire, water is sprinkled on the ground, and the mother, carrying the child on her left arm and holding a jug with a coco-nut on it, walks three times round the fire, pouring water from the jug as she walks. She then throws the coco-nut and some parched gram and parched millet into the flames. The coco-nut is rescued from the fire, and the unburnt part is divided amongst the bystanders, being known as Holi prasāda.

Some Brāhmans—not usually the Nāgara—not only mark the baby’s first Spring festival, but also its first Divālī, the great Autumn festival. The young mother kneads some cow-dung into a triangle, or into a disk and, making a hole in the centre, inserts a piece of sugar-cane and places in it a lighted wick of cotton. Then, taking her baby in her arms, she goes from house to house, bearing the light in her hands, and asking for a few drops of clarified butter to keep it burning. She believes that she thus gains light for Pitri-loka, where her dead ancestors are.

Another Vedic ceremony, the weaning or Anna-prāśana, takes place about the ninth month with Nāgara, and about the sixth with other Brāhmans. A milk pudding is made with milk, sugar, and rice, and some of this is put on a silver coin and given to the child to lick. According to the Scriptures, it ought to be put on a gold coin, but nowadays it is usually placed on a silver one; anyhow the ubiquitous aunt gets the coin, whatever be its value. The gold is supposed to have
medicinal properties and to cure the three great diseases of the body: bile, cough, and wind.

We have called this 'weaning', but perhaps 'solid-food-giving' would have been a more appropriate title, for the mother goes on nursing the child, sometimes up to five years if no other child be born in the interval, though nowadays it is considered wiser only to nurse a child till it is about two years of age. The mother feeds the child quite irregularly, any time night or day when it cries, indeed it seems quite impossible to get an Indian woman to maintain a two-hours' interval between her baby's meals.

Sometimes, but not often in western India, the rite is observed of making the child at about seven or eight months old sit on the ground, when it worships the snake which upholds the earth.

Occasionally about this time, some orthodox families persuade the tiny child to choose its profession in life, by setting before it the symbols of the various callings, such as a pen, a knife, paper, &c. Whichever the child chooses it will be expected to adopt later on.

The child is then left in peace until some auspicious time between the age of three or five, when another Vedic ceremony, that of the hair-cutting, Čaula-karma, is performed. Particular families often have to go to particular places to perform this rite: for instance, one princely family in the centre of Kāthiāwār has to go right off to Wadhūwān, that the hair may be cut near the memorial stone of a famous ancestress, Rāṇaka Devī.

Nearly all Nāgara have to go to their ancestral homes, but in the case of other Brāhmans, only if the mother of the child has made a vow to do so. Ceremonial hair-cutting is not usually performed for girls; modern Brāhmans, indeed, say that, though prescribed in their Scriptures for girls, it is prescribed without mantras being given.

The family priest having chosen an auspicious day, the father, the mother and child, and the inevitable troop of servants go to the prescribed place. There a booth is erected,
and an altar containing the fire is made. The child is bathed and dressed in silk, and the mother taking him on her lap sits near the altar.

The presiding priest or Ācārya takes some water in his right hand, in such a way that it lies at the base of the second and third fingers, and says solemnly: 'I perform the ceremony of cutting the hair, in order that the child may be free from the impurities contracted in the womb, and, being loved by God, may have a happy and a long life'.

Then follows the worship of Gaṇapati (or Gaṇeśa), that the whole ceremony may pass off auspiciously without any obstacle. The Elephant-headed son of Śiva, who would be up to mischief unless he were first placated, is worshipped by the offering of flowers, fruit, lights, and the five nectars, in the regular eightfold worship which we shall study later. Next comes the recital by four Brāhmans (who may be married or unmarried, but must on no account be widowers) of four passages from as many Vedas of five verses of Blessing. All four priests then sprinkle the child with holy water, which has been sanctified by first putting mango and ṛṣṭikā leaves in it, and afterwards reciting mantras over it; the jug containing the water has also had a red cotton thread tied on its handle, and an areca-nut, a pice, and a few grains of rice placed in it.

The fifteen mother-goddesses, together with Gaṇapati, are now represented by sixteen heaps of rice, on which are placed a pice and an areca-nut. Seven more goddesses are shown by seven lines of clarified butter, and then a Maṅgala Śrāddha takes place.

As a rule, a Śrāddha is an inauspicious ceremony performed after a death, but at this time only an auspicious sacrifice to the ancestors is intended, so none of the Brāhmans change the position of their sacred thread,1 and their hands are held with the palms downwards, not upwards. The names of the father,

1 The student can always see at once whether the ceremony he is witnessing be auspicious or inauspicious by noticing the position of the thread.
grandfather and great-grandfathers, together with all their wives, are mentioned, and clarified butter is poured on the sacrificial fire. All is then ready for the actual ceremony to begin.

The priest pours some warm water into cold (thus reversing the usual order at ceremonies) and mixes either melted butter or curds with it, and then wets the child’s right ear with the mixture.

Next, taking a porcupine quill which has three white marks on it, he combs the boy’s hair and plaits three pieces of *darbha* grass into it. The priest then picks up a particular kind of razor which has an iron blade affixed with a copper nail, and cuts the upper part of the hair, into which he has already plaited the grass. As the hair falls, either the mother or the paternal aunt (so long as neither be a widow) receives it and mixes it with cow-dung.

The priest cuts the hair again closer, and again a third time, being careful of course to leave the *sikhā* or sacred top-knot.

In the same way the priest cuts the hair from three other parts of the head, waving the razor round the head and saying mantras the first time but not again.

The barber next steps forward and performs what may be called the second part of the ceremony, the shaving of the head, which is done without mantras being said.

The child is then bathed, and a Svastika sign is made on its head.

The cut hair is, as we saw, mixed with cow-dung, and afterwards either flung into a river, or a well, or else thrown away in a cow-stall.

The barber, when he shaves the child, is as careful as the priest to avoid cutting the sacred top-knot. Every Hindu who performs *Sandhyā* should wear this top-knot (just as every Muḥammadan should wear a beard), and this often makes a very convenient touchstone for a missionary, when he suspects a man of being anxious to make the best of both the
Hindu and the Christian worlds. Mr. Facing-Both-Ways is generally very unwilling to part with this outward and visible sign of his Hinduism. No experienced missionary, however, would baptize a man who insisted on retaining it. On the other hand anglicized clerks in Government offices very often cut it off as a mere matter of fashion and convenience.

But to return to the hair-cutting ceremony: the priest should be given 'the value of a cow', which has nowadays come to mean about five rupees, or (if the supposed cow were very valuable) twenty-five rupees.

The ceremony is now over, and the only thing that remains is to give Gaṇapati and the fifteen 'mother-goddesses' and the seven other goddesses a hint to go in such a manner that their feelings may not be injured. This is done by throwing grains of rice on the sixteen heaps of rice and the seven lines of clarified butter and saying in Sanskrit: 'You may take your leave, please come back when invited on an auspicious occasion'.

As we have seen, girls do not usually have their hair ceremonially cut, but many Brāhmans have a belief that a girl baby must not be taken out in the monsoon until her hair has been cut, lest she should be struck by lightning.

Another Vedic ceremony which is still practised for both girls and boys is the Boring of the Ear (Karna-vedha). It is not considered proper for a father to see the face of his daughter until her ears have been bored, so in the case of a girl it is done as early as possible, generally before the sixth day.

But whatever the sex of the child, the ceremony is much the same. An auspicious day is chosen, and the child is so arranged as to face the east. Then it is given a sweet to eat, and whilst the ears are pierced, the officiant says: 'See what is good with the eyes, hear what is good with the ears, smell what is good with the nose, taste what is good with the mouth'.

The officiant may be the father of the child, or a priest, but
most generally nowadays a woman from outside is called in to do it and paid four annas for her trouble, besides being given presents of wheat, molasses, and clarified butter. A proverb runs: ‘It’s only a stranger woman who has the heart to pierce the child’s ear’.

The needle chosen should be of silver or gold in the case of a caste Hindu, and iron for a Śūdra, and the ear is pierced in the lobe, a hole being made there big enough for the sun’s rays to pass through. Sometimes another hole is also pierced in the middle of the ear to keep off sickness. The operator repeats the names of Čaṇapati and of the tutelary gods, as well as of the three great gods, Brahmā, Viṣṇu, and Śiva, together with the nine planets and the eight protectors of the cardinal points, and finally bows to a Brāhman.

The ears are marked with red before they are pierced, and afterwards a red thread is introduced. Both ears are bored, the left ear with girls being the first to be pierced, and with boys the right. The ceremony ends by the parents either giving alms to Brāhmans or feasting them. A girl’s nose is generally bored also, but it is not usual to bore a boy’s unless his elder brother has died, in which case the new baby’s nose is bored as soon as possible, perhaps when he is only ten days old.

There does not seem to be any actual ceremony with regard to teething, but there is amongst Brāhmans, as amongst other Hindus, a firm belief that neither the mother nor the mother’s own sister must ever look at the child’s mouth to count how many teeth have appeared, as that would make the teething harder. A proverb declares: ‘If the mother or her sister look, the teeth that are coming will run away’.

All through the Hindu customs, although it is the father’s sister who plays the leading part, there is a pretty belief in the oneness of the mother and her own sister; and a proverb runs: ‘Though the mother departs, yet the mother’s sister remains’. In this case the mother’s sister is regarded as too nearly identical with the mother to be allowed to look at the
teeth, but the ever useful father’s sister is called in (really that pushing lady must lead a bustling life!) if there is any difficulty, to rub the child’s jaw till the teeth come through.

The first time that a child attends school is an important occasion. To begin with, it is extremely inauspicious to send a child in his sixth year; so, if he has not begun to go in his fifth (which is rather early for the pursuit of knowledge), he must wait till he is seven, which will make him rather backward. The difficulty is often surmounted by sending a child to school, if only for a day, when he is five, and then, the initial step having been taken, he can continue his studies in his sixth year without the fear of ill luck dogging him.

The Nāgara community seem to make more of the Beginning of Knowledge than any of the other Brāhmans. With them the parent gives the boy a tiny silver slate and a minute gold pen, the silver slate being carefully covered with red powder. The family priest writes Srī (i.e. Lakṣmī) on the slate, and the child repeats the word three times. According to the Scriptures, the priest should write on the slate in Sanskrit

Salutation to Gaṇeṣa,
Salutation to Siddha,
Salutation to Sarasvatī,

and the child should write over this with his pencil, but as a matter of fact this is seldom done in modern times.

The boy goes to the school and presents the slate and pencil to the master, together with a coco-nut. An old custom, seldom carried out now, was that he should also give the master a turban.

If the parents of the new boy are very rich, he is sometimes taken in a regular procession through the streets, and sweets are distributed amongst all the other pupils, and arrived at the school, he worships the master and some pens and ink.

With ordinary Brāhmans nowadays the child generally has neither silver slate nor procession, but just goes quietly to school, where he gives the Head sugar and a coco-nut.
A boy's birthday in India is not generally the wonderful and glorious day that it is to a child in England. On each anniversary he is just washed in water mixed with milk and molasses, and a lucky woman waves her arms towards him and cracking her knuckles against her forehead takes on herself his ill luck. If the family is very orthodox, he will probably worship Mārkaṇḍeya, one of the seven immortal sages, in order to gain a long life himself. Sad to say, it is considered unlucky to observe a girl's birthday at all.
CHAPTER II

THE SACRED THREAD


We now come to the most important epoch in the life of a Brāhman, his investiture with the sacred thread, Upanayana. Until this takes place the boy is only a Śūdra, and it is this ceremony which makes him a Brāhman and gives him his place in the ranks of the Twice-born.

Brāhman gentlemen are more particular that the thread-giving and the marriage ceremonies should be performed exactly according to their Scriptures than in the case of any other ceremonies, and the writer is especially indebted for her account of this rite to the learned Śāstri who spent days working over this important subject with her.

The thread-giving and marriage are the two great events in a Brāhman's life, but though the wedding costs more, the other is the more important, and no Brāhman can be married till he has received the sacred thread.

The age at which it is received does not necessarily coincide with physical puberty, for if a father hopes that his son is going to become a great religious teacher, he may arrange for the ceremony to take place in the fifth year from the boy's conception (this was done, it is believed, in the case of the first Śaṅkarācārya); but as a rule it takes place in the eighth year
from conception for a Brāhman, the eleventh for a Rājput, and the twelfth for a Vaiśya. If, however, it cannot be performed in those years, special purifications will have to be undergone, and the ceremony postponed till the sixteenth year for a Brāhman, the twenty-second for a Rājput, and the twenty-fourth for a Vaiśya. If the postponement be any longer than that, it is looked on as a very grievous sin indeed.

These rules, it will be noticed, allow for the members of all three of the great sections of ancient Indian society receiving the sacred thread.

Nowadays, however, in Gujarāt and Kāṭhiāwār at least, the ceremony is practically confined to Brāhmans, Lohāṇa, and Bhātiā.¹

The actual day on which so great a rite can take place has to be carefully selected. First, it can only be begun on one of four days, either a Monday, a Wednesday, a Thursday, or a Friday, and these days must fall within the bright moonlit half of the month. The month has to be either Māgha, Phālguna, Čaitra, or Vaiśākha; Jyeṣṭha is sometimes added to the list of permissible months, but not if the candidate be the eldest son (i.e. the Jyeṣṭha of his family), for the rite may not take place in his name month.

Invitations are sent out ten or twelve days before the ceremony, and to show that the great change is about to take place which shall raise him from a low-caste man to the status of a Twice-born and allow him to perform the religious duties from which he has hitherto been debarred, the boy is decorated with a gold necklace of special shape.

A Brāhman girl is not usually given the sacred thread nowadays:² she must be content to remain a Śūdra all her life; but this being so, it is difficult to see how her Twice-born husband avoids contracting defilement by marrying her. In the old days, the Brāhmans say, girls were always invested with

¹ The student from other parts of India would find it an interesting topic for conversation to discover who receive the sacred thread.
² In the family of one at least of the ruling chiefs in Kāṭhiāwār girls are given the sacred thread.
this symbol of regeneration: for instance, Gārgī, the famous woman philosopher, who defeated the great Yājñavalkya in argument, always wore the sacred thread. Indeed there are some neat arguments ready to hand for future leaders of the Woman’s Movement amongst Brāhmans.

Once the invitations are out, preparations for the ceremony are begun.

A booth is set up resting on four posts, but in addition to these a fifth post, called the Mānikyastambha, is erected. This is quite small, but very important, as it is supposed to represent Brahmā the Creator; and close beside it a bamboo post is always placed.

Then Gaṇeśa (Gaṇapati) is worshipped, the god who removes obstacles, and who is always placated at the beginning of any great ceremony. This god is accordingly invoked and seated, his feet are bathed, and he is offered a spoonful of water mixed with rice and a sip of pure water to make him holy. The god is bathed, first with pure water, and then with the five nectars (curds, milk, clarified butter, sugar, and honey), and afterwards with pure water once more, and a sip of pure water is again given him. Clothes are brought for him, and he is dressed, invested with the sacred thread, and decorated with the auspicious red mark on his forehead. Then follow the offerings; and rice, flowers and sacred grass, together with a mixture of three scented and coloured powders, are given to him. Lights are waved round him, incense burnt in front of him, fruit and areca-nut and pice are given him, he is solemnly circumambulated, and finally ārati, the ceremonial waving of lights, is performed.¹

As soon as this is done, the priest guards against the coming of evil spirits by throwing oil seeds to each of the four corners of the booth.

Then, as at the hair-cutting, the fifteen divine mother-goddesses are installed and worshipped, and the seven other

¹ This full worship of Gaṇeśa or any other idol consists of sixteen different parts, certain acts that seem to us separate being counted in together, and vice versa.
THE LIFE STORY OF A BRĀHMAN

goddesses are each worshipped by a line of clarified butter; four Brāhmans are called in, and each is asked to recite a hymn of blessing from a different Veda.

The night before the actual ceremony the boy’s body is smeared all over with a yellow substance (pīthī). His father’s sister gives him a special piece of yellow cloth, and a silver ring is fixed in the uncut top-knot of his hair.

After that he is commanded to spend the whole night in absolute silence.

In the morning the father and mother take the child to the booth, where the sacrificial fire is burning in the altar. (To light this fire a burning piece of charcoal had been brought from the house in a covered bronze vessel.) The mother takes her seat at the right of the father, as this is an auspicious function.

The child is then shaved: if the ceremonial hair-cutting, already described, has been performed, he is simply shaved in the ordinary way by the barber, but sometimes to lessen expense the hair-cutting rite is not performed till now, just before the thread is given.

After the shaving is over, the boy is bathed, the yellow powder being rubbed off, and his body washed with warm water.

Rather a sad little ceremony follows. Some sweet food is brought, such as rice, sugar, and clarified butter, all mixed on one plate, and for the last time in their lives mother and son eat together; however proud the mother is that her boy is a man and a Twice-born, it gives her rather a heartache to realize that from now on the boy will always eat with the men of the household. In all castes the men of a household dine together first, allowing the ladies to take their places when they have finished and withdrawn. (An English bride sometimes gives a terrible shock to servants unaccustomed to

1 Namely, Śrī, Lakṣmī, Dhrīti, Medhā, Puṣṭi, Śraddkā, and Sarasvati, called the Gṝtamaṇḍrikā
2 At inauspicious rites, such as funerals, she sits on her husband’s left.
English ways, if, finding her husband delayed, she starts a meal without him.)

The boy then feasts with other young boys, who must all be celibate and not yet invested with the sacred thread.¹

After the feast is over, the boy is decked with jewels and seated to the west of the sacred fire and to the right of the priest who is his guru or preceptor. The guru tells the lad to say after him: 'I wish to enter the Brahmacarya state', and then, 'Let me become a Brahmaçāri'.

Up to this time, the child, if under five, has very likely been quite naked, or if not more than eight, may just have worn a tiny piece of cloth; but from now on he must never be naked, but will wear a loin-cloth even when bathing. So as these words are said, two pieces of yellow cloth are handed to the boy, one to wear and one to tie later on to his bamboo, and a piece of yellow string with which to tie it, and appropriate mantras are recited. Then, whilst more mantras are said, a string made of munija grass² is tied round the child's waist. In this string as many knots are made as there have been Pravara amongst his ancestors.

To possess Pravara is a great heritage, for they are saintly men who through their holiness won the great reward of being allowed to see Brahma. (A Brāhma readily understands the splendour of our Lord’s promise: ‘The pure in heart shall see God’.)

Everything about the sacred cord is symbolic: its length is ninety-six times the breadth of the four fingers of a man, the reason given being that a man's height is ninety-six times the breadth of one finger; whilst each of his four fingers represents one of the four states his soul experiences from time to time, namely, the three states of waking, of dreaming, and of dreamless sleep, and also the ‘fourth’ state, that of the Absolute Brahma.

¹ In Gujarāt, boys who have not yet received the sacred thread are known as Bātu, or Bāṭuka.
² Saccharum Munja, a kind of rush.
The cord must be threefold, because there are three qualities out of which our bodies are compounded: reality, passion, darkness.\(^1\)

The twist of the thread must be upward, so that the good quality may predominate, and so the wearer may rise to great spiritual heights.

The threefold thread must be twisted three times, lest the bad quality, the darkness, should strive to gain ascendancy and pull the soul down.

The whole cord is tied together by a knot called Brahma-granthi which has three parts, representing Brahmā, Viṣṇu, and Śiva, and in addition to this, extra knots are made in the cord to represent the various Pravara to be found in the particular gotra or lineage of the candidate.

The actual thread is just ordinary cotton, but it must have been spun by a Brāhman virgin and twisted by a Brāhman. In the old days it is believed that the Brāhmans wore cotton cords, the Kṣatriya woollen, and the Vaiśya linen; nowadays all who wear the sacred threads wear them made of cotton, but the colours vary, for the Brāhmans wear white, the Kṣatriya red, and the Vaiśya yellow, to correspond, it is said, with the colours of the mind of the wearers.

After marriage a Brāhman wears two threads, his own and also his wife’s, which is regarded as an additional proof that all Brāhman girls originally wore their own threads.

A Brāhman, after marriage, must also always, when possible, wear the scarf of ceremony, but whilst performing religious ceremonies, at which he can only wear a loin-cloth, he puts on an extra thread to compensate for the absence of the scarf.

However, when a boy is given the thread, he is, of course, only given one, and the candidate actually puts this on himself.

The preceptor repeats an appropriate mantra, asking for strength and long life and illumination for the boy, who mean-

---

\(^1\) Sattva, Rajas, Tamas, or ‘Brightness, Twilight, and Darkness’ as some pandits prefer to translate the words.
while faces the sun, holding the sacred thread by the thumb and little finger of each hand, in such a way that it passes in front of the three middle fingers, the left hand being higher than the right.

As the preceptor finishes the mantra, the boy slips the thread over his own head.

Hereafter, he must always wear the sacred cord. During auspicious ceremonies, such as weddings and propitious sacrifices, he wears it hanging from the left shoulder (in this position it is called the *Upāvīti*); when performing inauspicious rites, such as funeral ceremonies, he suspends it from his right shoulder, when it is called *Prācīnāvīti*; and when answering the calls of nature, it is worn round the neck, or, according to others, round the right ear, and called *Nisītī*.

If the thread should break, the wearer is supposed to remain immovable, without breathing or speaking, till a fresh thread is brought to him. In every Brāhmaṇ household there are always two or three spare threads, and no Brāhmaṇ should travel without an extra one. If the accident to the thread, however, happens in the jungle, the wearer should tie his scarf after the fashion of the sacred thread, first repeating the famous *gāyatrī mantra*. When a new thread is put on, the *gāyatrī* is always repeated.

The donning of the sacred thread is followed by the gift of a deerskin. If a whole antelope skin can be given, so much the better; but, as a rule, in these degenerate days, only a small piece of deerskin is provided, which is threaded on a string and then put round the boy’s neck. Whilst this is being done, no sacred verse is recited, but the gift is made in absolute silence.

Then the candidate is presented with a staff, which must be of such a height as to touch the root of the sacred top-knot in the case of a Brāhmaṇ, the forehead if the boy be a Kṣatriya, and the lips for a Vaiśya. Similarly, the wood changes according to the caste, for a Brāhmaṇ must have a stick of

---

1 For local differences, see *Bombay Gazetteer*, vol. ix, p. 39.
Palāśa (Butea frondosa), a Kṣatriya of Bilva (Aegle Marmelos), and a Vaiśya of Udombara (Ficus glomerata).

After receiving the staff, the boys sits on a stool facing west, and the preceptor, who sits facing east, takes water into his joined hands and pours it into the boy’s joined hands.

It is always important to notice how the hands are joined when water is ceremonially offered from them. If the little fingers are placed side by side, and the two hands held flat, and the water poured out over the tips of all the fingers, it is a libation to the gods; if the hands are joined with the finger-tips and wrists touching, and the water poured, as it were, through a funnel made of the hands, that is an offering to living human beings; but if the hands are held flat with little fingers touching, and the water is spilt from near the base of the right thumb with that thumb pointing downwards, it is an inauspicious offering to the dead.

The preceptor next tells the boy to look at the sun, and as the child does so, he himself repeats appropriate verses. Whilst looking at the sun, the lad offers a coco-nut. Some offering must be made, since the sun, a physician, a king, a preceptor and an astrologer can never, according to the Scriptures, be saluted with empty hands.

The guru then puts his right hand on the right side of the boy and, alternately touching the boy’s shoulder and his own breast, says: 'I take your heart into my vow. Let your heart follow mine. Carry out with an undivided mind what I say to you. May Brīhaspati confide you to me.'

This is followed by the giving of a new name, when the preceptor takes the right hand of the boy into his own and asks him his old name. The guru gives him a new name, which is only uttered at the time of this particular ceremony, and then promptly forgotten, the old one alone being used. Not one of the writer’s friends, Brāhman, or former Brāhmans who had become Christian, could remember the special name that they had been given at this ceremony.

The teacher next asks: ‘Whose disciple are you?’
'Your Honour's', the boy replies.

'You are my disciple', the preceptor assents, 'and your new name is so and so.'

'I now entrust you', the guru continues, 'to Prajāpati and to Savitā, to the gods of water, herbs, sky and earth, to all the gods and all the demons, to protect you from every kind of evil.'

The boy then walks round the fire, either once or thrice, always, of course, with his right side to it, as this is an auspicious occasion. Thereupon, the guru offers clarified butter nine times to the fire.

A set of commandments bearing on the duties of his new estate follows, and the preceptor tells him to walk as a true Brāhman; to each commandment the boy gives his assent.

'You are a celibate', says the guru.

'Very well', replies the boy.

'You must sip water before beginning your meals, and at the end.'

'Very well', says the boy again.

'You must not sleep by day' (in a hot country, like India, over-indulgence in this habit is a real temptation to sloth).

'Very well.'

'Don't talk too much.'

'Very well.'

'You must bring sacrificial wood' (samidh).¹

'I will bring it', says the child.

Then the guru adds: 'You must take a sip of water'; and the boys says 'I will'.

Next follows the teaching of the most famous of all mantras, the gāyatrī, to the child.

This verse we shall have to study more in detail when we come to the daily duties of the Brāhman; here we need only notice that the verse itself is impersonated, and the Brāhmans

¹ *Samidh* is the material for the sacred fire; it must consist of nine pieces of different kinds of specified wood, and none other than wood from these nine trees can ever be brought. Each separate piece must be as thick as the lad's teeth, half a span in width, and free from decay.
think of it now as a lovely young girl. The repetition of it cleanses from all sin, but no woman and no person of low caste may ever hear its life-giving syllables. The father of the child has the first right to teach this to his little son, but if he has failed to do so, the priest imparts it.

The boy sits to the north of the sacred fire, facing the west, and the guru sits opposite with his face to the east. The child bows to his preceptor, crossing his hands (the hands are always crossed when bowing to a priest), and with his right hand touches the guru's right foot, and with his left, the left foot of the guru. Then, for a moment or two, he and his preceptor look steadily at each other.

It is so important that no one should overhear the sound of the sacred verse, that the heads of both guru and child are now covered with a silk shawl about five yards long. Sometimes at this point the boy worships Sarasvati, the goddess of learning, represented by a book of the Vedas or the mystic symbol Svastika (the cross with the bent arms). In every case the priest bends forward and murmurs the sacred words into the boy's right ear. Slightly varying translations are given of the mantra; the version which the present writer's pandits preferred runs: 'Let us meditate on the most excellent light of the Creator (or of the sun); may He guide our intellects'.

The Brāhmans like to draw attention to the plural number of 'us' and 'our', and compare it with the great Christian prayer 'Our Father', pointing out that both presuppose a social, not an individualistic, worship.

No lover of Oxford can fail to notice the striking resemblance between this, the great prayer of the learned class in India, and the noble motto of the ancient English university: 'The Lord is my Illumination'.

So sacred is the gāyatri that the right ear of the child, once he has heard it, becomes holy for life and can save the sacred thread itself from contamination if that be wound over it.

The verse must first be taught in separate words without
the changes that come from the coalescence of words in a Sanskrit sentence; next, it must be taught with the appropriate stops that belong to the metre, and only after this is it taught as a whole. It generally takes a child three days to learn it perfectly.

When the gāyatrī has been imparted, the boy offers some of the nine specified kinds of wood to the fire. He takes each piece in his right hand, dips it in clarified butter, and puts it in the flames, repeating the appropriate verse.

A line of water is then made round the fire, and the boy stretches out his hand to the flames, pulls it back, and presses it to his heart, saying: 'May Agni protect me and give me help; may Sarasvati give me intellect, and the Sun give me light'.

The lad is now considered ceremonially pure, no longer of low caste, but a Twice-born Brāhman, and so he touches his own head, eyes, nostrils, hands, arms, limbs, and the different parts of his body to purify them also.

The third finger of the right hand is considered by the Hindus to be the most auspicious finger; and it is with the third finger that the boy touches some of the ashes of the sacred fire and puts them on his forehead, his throat, his right shoulder, and his heart. Next, he bows to the preceptor, repeating as he bows his own new name and his family name, and, what is more astonishing, his preceptor’s name. (According to the Scripture a man should never mention his own name, a guru’s name, a miser’s name, or the name of his eldest son, or of his wife. This seems to be the only time that a disciple ever does mention his guru’s name.)

Then his teacher blesses him and wishes him a long life, and the boy bows to him and to all his elders and betters who are present.

1 It is interesting to notice that the first, the index finger, is the inauspicious finger, and is the one used at death ceremonies. Hindus have exactly the same objection that we have to pointing at any one with the first finger. This is doubtless one of our many common family traditions.
The lad next asks alms for his preceptor, a symbolic survival of the duties which in the old days a disciple owed to his teacher. He goes to his mother and to half a dozen or a dozen of the women who are present, and who he knows will not refuse him, and begs from them, and they give him the round tennis-ball-like sweets (laddu) so beloved of Brāhmans, compounded of wheat-flour, sugar, and clarified butter. He submissively places all he receives at the feet of his guru.

The boy should keep silence throughout the whole of these days, an interesting injunction which seems common to initiation ceremonies.

In the evening the lad can proudly put his new-found powers and privileges into execution by performing for the first time in his life the evening worship, Sandhyā, which he must never afterwards omit, and this brings the ceremonies of the second day to a close.

The lad, as we have seen, has been passing through various stages on his road to the status of complete manhood. First, he was, as it were, a Śūdra, a person of low caste, then he was called a Bātu till he actually received the sacred thread; now he has become a man of high caste, but he is a celibate (Brahmaçıri), and will remain in statu pupillari, until the third day’s ceremonies fit him for the marriage state.

In modern times the three days’ ceremonies are often all performed on one day, but supposing that they are spread over three, on this, the evening of the second day, the boy will have to live as becomes a disciple, that is to say, he must observe silence; in strictly orthodox homes he must sleep on the floor; he must avoid any food that has salt in it; he should worship the fire and his guru, begging alms for his preceptor, but begging only from worthy houses, and not eating any of the food given till he has shown it to his superior and obtained his permission; he must tell no lies, and eat no food that has been taken off the fire more than three hours, lest life should have been formed in it, and so he might be guilty of taking life; he should cleanse his teeth with speed, not dawdling or
spending an hour over that refreshing part of his toilet; nor must he during his hours of discipleship do anything befitting a gay young bachelor rather than a novice, to whom all 'swank' is forbidden, such as displaying an umbrella, wearing shoes, marking his forehead, using flowers or saffron or scent, swimming in deep water, dancing, gambling, or singing.

Of course all these rules date from the time when the period of discipleship was not merely a thing of a few hours.

The beginning of the third day finds him still in the position of a pupil. He pours clarified butter nine times into the sacred fire, and then begins the study of the Vedas. This is shortened and symbolized by the preceptor reciting a few verses from the Vedas, which the boy repeats after him, and whilst doing so, the lad again offers clarified butter to the fire.

Now follows an all-important bath (Vṛiddhi Snāna). The water for it is fetched by eight 'lucky' women in eight new water-pots. In the water they put grains of rice and of red powder made of turmeric and alum, and flowers.

This is poured over the boy, who thereby ceases to be any longer a student vowed to celibacy (Brahmacārī), but becomes an eligible partī, fit to entertain thoughts of marriage.

He is now termed a Snātaka, and his waistband of muñja grass is untied, and appropriate mantras are repeated; new clothes are brought, which he dons, being careful to take off the little cloth as he puts on the bigger loin-cloth, since no Brāhmaṇa may wear two loin-cloths.1

The boy then eats a little food, consisting generally of curds and red oil-seeds (black oil-seeds are so intimately associated with funerals and death ceremonies that they could never be used at an auspicious moment like this). As long as the boy was a Brahmaṇa, one particular toothpick was for ever denied him, but now he cleans his teeth with a piece of

---

1 But though no Brāhmaṇa may wear two, he must always wear one piece of cloth, tied at the four corners; so that even under modern European trousers ancient India still lurks, in the form of a small loin-cloth.
Udumbara wood, the length of which should be the breadth of twelve fingers for a Brähman, ten for a Kṣatriya, and eight for a Vaiśya.

He then bathes again in the ordinary way, his forehead is marked with saffron and sandal-wood, and he puts on the clothes provided by his maternal uncle. These clothes are brought in procession by male relatives and servants from the uncle's house, carried on brass and wicker trays, and as these trays may not be sent back empty, coco-nuts, areca-nuts, a few annas, or even presents of clothes are put on them. The same uncle has at this time also to give presents of clothes to the boy's mother and his brothers and sisters.

Before the boy puts on his new coat, he gives away the pieces of antelope skin which had been tied round his neck, and as soon as he is dressed, he gives away another symbol of his studenthood, the staff.

Here again there comes another touching ceremony, when for the last time his mother can treat her son as a little child. When a man in a state of great good fortune wishes to avoid attracting the influences of the evil eye, he puts a lemon somewhere in his clothing, but a little child is safeguarded by lamp-black, and so now, to mark the boy's transition, his mother steps forward and, for the last time, guards against the ill fortune his new clothes and general good luck might bring him by marking his eyelashes with lamp-black and making a smudge of it near his right ear. Henceforth, however dearly she may love him, the mother's love cannot protect him, she can only hope that he and his friends will not be careless about putting a lime in his turban or taking other grown-up precautions.

Whilst he was a Brähmačārī, the lad could never look in a mirror, but now he is presented with that prime necessity for a marriageable young man, and, for the first time in his life, he carries an umbrella, and, of course, puts on shoes.

We have seen that he gave up his student's staff; instead of that, he is given a green bamboo to use on the entertaining
little symbolic drama in which he is about to play his part; and to this bamboo is tied the yellow piece of cloth which he had worn before he put on the bigger loin-cloth.

The comedy of going on pilgrimage to Benares is now enacted with appropriate staging.

The boy makes as though he were about to start on a long journey, and, as provision for the way, he takes in his hand a ball of sweet-stuff tied in a piece of cloth.

Sometimes a copy of the Vedas is also wrapped in cloth and tied to his bamboo, and, with this bundle on his right shoulder, he leaves the house as though 'off to Philadelphia in the morning', and starts out, accompanied by his relatives and friends playing on various instruments.

The preceptor makes seven lines of water across the road to represent the seven oceans; when the boy comes to these, he worships them, offers flowers, nuts, and seven pice, and marks them with the auspicious red mark. The teacher asks him if he is quite determined to go to Kāśi (Benares), and warns him metaphorically of the dangers and difficulties that he will have to overcome, assuring him that there are seven oceans (i.e. great rivers) in the way.

When he insists that, in spite of every obstacle, he really is determined on going, the guru tells him to run. But the ever-watchful maternal uncle has already gone on ahead, and is lying in wait for the lad, and he now catches him, takes him up in his arms, and either seats him on a horse, or else carries him back home.

In some other parts of India the drama varies a little, and the uncle, instead of actually carrying the boy home by main force, endeavours by bribes to beguile him from his purpose. First, he offers him five rupees, which the lad refuses; then a gold ring, which is also declined; but finally he promises to marry him to his own daughter if only he will give up the project, and this often the boy accepts.¹

¹ In Kāthiāwār not even in fun would a Brāhmaṇ maternal uncle offer to marry his daughter to his nephew, for this would be playing with incest, so
However, this bringing home of the lad by his uncle, in whatever way it is done, is the modern symbolic form of the ancient Vedic Samāvartana, the return home of the student.

The boy is now a full Brāhman, and accordingly inherits the six privileges of a Brāhman: studying the Vedas, teaching them, performing sacrifices for his own benefit, performing them for the benefit of others, receiving alms, and also giving alms.

Certain Brāhmans, however, will not make use of some of these privileges, which they consider derogatory; for instance, a Nāgara will never act as a priest, or receive alms, a Nāgara Brāhman will only consent to officiate as priest for Nāgara, and will only receive alms from them. An Audīca or a Sārasvata Brāhman, however, can officiate as priest and receive alms without loss of dignity.

As a full Brāhman, too, the boy will daily perform the religious worship we shall describe later (ch. X).

After his return from his interrupted journey to Benares, the goddesses, &c., are dismissed. A little rice is given to them to send them away happy to their homes, and they are requested to return on another auspicious occasion.

Before the ceremony began, the wife of the Sun Rannā Devī (or, as she is popularly called, Randela Mātā) was probably installed; she is generally represented by a picture stuck on

abhorrent to them is the very idea of such cousins marrying, though it is permissible in certain other districts. Sins differ geographically in India as elsewhere, and the Brāhmans themselves have a caustic little proverb on the same subject which runs:

'In the Deccan Brāhmans marry the daughters of their maternal uncles,
    In the East they eat fish,
    In the North they eat meat,
    In the West they drink water drawn up from the well in a leathern
    bucket.'

Showing that in each of the four corners of India the Brāhmans do something which the strictly orthodox elsewhere would consider defiling and caste-breaking.

1 Of these privileges, a Kṣatriya has three: studying, sacrificing for his own benefit, and giving alms.

2 For the sake of those who do not know India it may be as well to explain that a Nāgara is of even higher standing than a Nāgara Brāhman.
a coco-nut, in front of which a lamp fed with clarified butter is burnt. Now that the ceremonies are over, she too if present is dismissed, the coco-nut is taken away and given to a Brâhman, but the little lamp is never put out, but allowed to go out of itself.

The boy is still called a Snātaka, and there are certain rules that he is expected to observe. He should not play or sing, but may listen to religious songs. If possible, he should never be absent from home for a night. He should never look down into deep water, such as a well or a big river, or look at his own reflection in water. Nor should he even climb a tree to get fruit. He must not walk along a highway or a lane in the evening, and he is forbidden to leap down from high cliffs or jump over deep pits. He must guard his lips and never speak unworthily, and night and morning he must look with admiration at the red glow of the sun. Though it is permitted on special occasions, as we have seen, yet as a rule a Snātaka should avoid all luxury and display, not holding up an umbrella even if it is raining, nor chewing areca-nut, nor adorning himself with flowers, nor wearing coloured clothes. (This last is an interesting parallel to the 'subfusc hue' insisted on for undergraduates by university rules in the ancient English universities.) He must never make fun of a woman, or spit towards the sun, and should avoid temptation by keeping away as much as possible from persons of low caste and from women. At night he should always have a light when he dines lest he should injure any living thing in the dark,¹ and (despite Dubois's remarks ²) he is ordered always to tell the truth.

There are three classes of Snātaka: the first (Vidyā Snātaka), who are more particular about studying the Vedas than keeping these and other minute rules of conduct that are laid

¹ If the light goes out, he must stop eating, for in the darkness food is no longer fit for human consumption, but only for ghosts. If any one persists in eating in the dark, he will undoubtedly become a cat in his next birth.
² Dubois, Manners and Customs, p. 171.
down for them; others (Vrata Snātaka), who keep every possible rule; and a third class, the best of all (Vṛdyā Vrata Snātaka), who keep all the rules and who also study the Vedas.

The boy is now somewhat in the position of an English undergraduate (would that custom prescribed for him the same interest in athletics!), but he has arrived at man's estate. No longer can he dine with the women, but he must eat with the men and sleep in the men's part of the house.

As a matter of fact nowadays the ordinary Brāhman boy does not study the Vedas with the assiduity that was intended, neither does he keep the sumptuary rules; according to his detractors, he has invented a fourth class of Snātaka that neglects both Scriptures and rules.

Still the Brāhmans have behind them a magnificent tradition of study and self-discipline, and whatever changes the future may hold in store for them, their friends can only, hope that the education of their boys may develop more and more along the lines, laid down in ancient days, of sound learning, self-control, and humility, since, for the East as for the West, Francis Bacon's great words still hold: Regnum Scientiae ut regnum Caeli non nisi sub persona infantis intratur.

The next Vedic rite also marks the boy's progress towards manhood. According to the Scriptures, when a boy is first shavened, a cow should be given to a Brāhman, but in modern times this gift is hardly ever made. The writer's friends, for instance, had never known it to be done. When the hair appears on a boy's chin, the family barber is called in—a barber, like a washerman, has a lien on a house—and charges a turban for shaving the son. Of course the chin only is shaved, since the moustache is only shaved off as a sign of mourning. ¹

A barber, it will be noticed, is called in, for as a rule (even

¹ If a senior relative on the father's side die, a man would get his moustache shaved off, but he would not sacrifice it for any one on his mother's side, save his mother herself; in the same way, if any of his wife's relatives die, it would be only for her mother or her father that he would shave his moustache.
amongst native Christians) an Indian does not shave himself.\footnote{1} A Nāgara would not cut his own hair, shave, or pare his own nails, and though some other classes of Brāhmans do at least cut their nails, the very orthodox amongst them will not do so. In any case they see that the hair and nail clippings are carefully taken outside the house and thrown away at some distance.

\footnote{1} Whilst discussing the subject of shaving we may notice that one class of Brāhmans, the Agnihotri (see ch. v), have their heads shaved, all but the sacred top-knot, twice a month, on new moon and full moon days. A Brāhman of this class at the time of his wedding brings fire from his father-in-law's house and worships it daily in the company of his wife, but if his wife die, he may not worship it until after he has married again; so during the time he is a widower he never has his head shaved.
CHAPTER III

BETROTHAL AND MARRIAGE PRELIMINARIES


The boy, having passed through all the ceremonies of infancy, childhood, and boyhood, is now a fit subject for marriage.

It is impossible for any one in England to realize what marriage means to an Indian. No early-Victorian old maid ever gave it the supreme place in her thoughts that it naturally seems to assume amongst Hindus. And no 'match-making mamma' ever inquired more meticulously into a young man's position and future than do the parents of both boy and girl in India; only, in the East, no money and no prospects are of the same importance as birth, or can make up for any bar-sinister or lack of quarterings. A man can offend against caste rules by eating meat, or by dining with men of other castes, and yet escape punishment by keeping his offence secret; but his marriage cannot but be known to all, and the whole caste feel that their blood is defiled if one member marry unsuitably. In fact, marriage is the real stronghold of caste; and though many a reformer does dine with men of other caste, very, very few have the courage to 'marry out'. In a native state, indeed, it is not safe to do so. If there be anything shady about the pedigree of a wealthy man, he will find great difficulty in obtaining a bride, and even a prince in such a case may have to go very far and pay very heavily for his wife.

The field into which a man may marry is extraordinarily restricted: for instance, a Nāgara gentleman may not marry
a Nāgara-Brāhman; not only so, but he may not marry into any other of the six classes of Nāgara, but must marry in his own. Even within his own class of Nāgara his bride may not bear the same surname as he does, neither may she be of the same clan (gotra). Every Brāhman believes that he is descended from one of the seventy-two great sages (Ṛṣi) of ancient days, and all Brāhmans claiming descent from the same common ancestor are said to be of that sage's 'gotra', and are considered to be too near of kin to intermarry. Neither may a Brāhman marry any cousin, even to the second degree, on his mother's side, or in fact any one on the distaff side who claims descent from a common great-grandfather.

Amongst some other Brāhmans, though it is not allowable to go a-courting amongst any other subsect or subcaste but your own, yet there is a movement on foot to join these sects and subsects together again and so enlarge the field of possible candidates; but this is not yet the case amongst the Nāgara of Kāthiāwār.

So that, with the area restricted out of which you may not marry, and with many of the candidates within forbidden as being really or artificially too near of kin, it is often very difficult to find a suitable spouse; and yet the matter is urgent, for every girl must be married, and that right early, and every boy should marry too.

The personal factor has also to be taken into account, and there are certain regulations—laid down in the Scriptures (Saṃskāra Bhāskara)—which the candidates must fulfil.

The bride should not have been previously betrothed;¹ she must be younger than the bridegroom, free from disease and bodily defects, of good fame and conduct; there must not be too much hair on her body; finally she must have living brothers, if not, it is not likely that she will bear sons (unless special and expensive rites be performed). This last regulation points to what is, quite frankly and naturally, the object of every Indian in marrying, and of every parent in arranging for

¹ For this may involve the payment of a fine.
his children's marriage: that it may result in the birth of sons; and the very simplicity of this desire is often very beautiful and sacramental.

The bridegroom on his part must also be free from bodily defects, disease, and vices: even his nails should be perfect. Neither should the bridegroom have an unmarried elder brother, or the bride an elder unmarried sister, at the time of the marriage.

As is well known, it would not be according to Indian etiquette for the bridegroom to propose to the bride directly. (So ingrained is this in the Indian mind that even amongst Indian Christians it is not yet practicable. There must be some go-between; and there is not one of the infinitely varied and amusing parts that a missionary is called on to play that the present writer has found more difficult to perform fairly and impartially than that of proposing to some charming orphaned girl on behalf of some very unprepossessing bridegroom.)

After all possible inquiries have been satisfied, the request for the bride is made by the bridegroom’s father, and the acceptance of the proposal and subsequent promise to give the girl in marriage is known as Vāgdāna, ‘gift by word of mouth’, and is conditional on neither party having any physical defects. Otherwise this exchange of promises is looked on as binding, and, as a matter of fact, an engagement is very rarely broken. If, however, an Audiča Brāhman should wish to break off the match, the penalty seems very extraordinary to any one recalling the procedure in an English case of breach of promise of marriage. For, in the first place, if it is the bridegroom who wishes to be free, no fine at all is inflicted; and if it is the bride’s father who breaks off the engagement, he too is not liable; but the parents of the new boy to whom the girl may subsequently be betrothed will be the people to pay up. If the girl’s father is prudent, however, he will consult the caste, and if his motives are approved by them, all will be well. The reason why the fresh candidate’s parents have to suffer is that, when a betrothal is broken, the
sārīs already given are not returned (though the presents of gold and silver are given back), and, as the new lover is saved the expense of providing these, it is he who has to pay the fine (if any) arising out of the breach of promise, which may amount to as much as five hundred rupees. But supposing that all goes well, and that, after the promise, the parents of both children are more and more satisfied, the next step taken will be the betrothal.

The paternal aunt of the little bride arrays herself in a red sārī and a green bodice and, accompanied by one servant and the little children of the family, goes to the bridegroom’s house. Arrived there, she makes the red auspicious mark on the boy’s forehead and puts some grains of rice on it. The family priest then blesses the boy, and his parents tip everybody all round. These tips are neither shyly given nor stealthily received: every one expects to be given the exact present *per tariff*. The aunt will be surprised, in the case of people fairly well-to-do, if she gets less than seven and a half rupees; the priest expects two rupees; and the servant and the children one each. They then all dine at the bridegroom’s house, and return to give full reports to the bride’s mother. In the evening the bridegroom’s friends all go to the bride’s house to express their thanks for the honour done, and the future father-in-law sees the bride’s face.

But now the bridegroom’s people are all anxious to see the future bride, so, on some auspicious day, she is invited to dinner at the bridegroom’s house. The bridegroom himself must not see her face, but his father and all the female members of the house watch her most narrowly, though, as she is so much younger, she is probably made less self-conscious by their veiled inspection than is her English sister when visiting her fiancé’s people! Her future father-in-law makes her a present of clothes and of sweetmeats, but care is taken that these sweets are made of milk and not of flour.

The boy, in return, is asked to dine at his future father-in-
law's house and is given a turban or a cap before he leaves. Some time may elapse between these preliminaries and the actual wedding day, but in the intervening time presents are made to the bride on all auspicious occasions, and on the great days of Divālī and Holi she is given clothes.

The age of the betrothal and of marriage vary so much with different Brāhmans that it is impossible to say how long a time will elapse before the actual wedding; but there are certain fasts and festivals that unmarried girls observe with great care in order to obtain a kind husband; and one or more of these are fairly certain to be kept by every betrothed girl during her engagement.

In the month Phālguna girls worship Pārvatī, the wife of the god Śiva. They make a square in the compound of their house, smear it with red clay and mark it with different colours. In the centre of the square they put a ball of red clay to represent Gaurī or Pārvatī, and for about eight days they worship this ball by offering flowers and a red thread to it. On the eighth day the girls have a feast (called in Gujarāṭī Gunāgora), to which only the unmarried may come; they worship Gaurī very much as they did during the past seven days, but on a rather a larger scale: the square is bigger and the markings larger, they offer more flowers, and all the evening they sing songs together: it will be remembered that Śiva's wife, Pārvatī or Gaurī, is one of the seven ideal wives or satī, and she it is who has the power to endow her worshipper with unending good luck. So, whilst worshipping her, the girls ask that their future husbands may be good and kind, and that they may experience nothing but happiness in their married lives.

So great is the power of this goddess Gaurī over the happiness or unhappiness of married life, that she is also worshipped by girls on every Sunday that falls within the

1 The seven ideal wives are: Satī (whose other name is Pārvatī), Sitā, Mandodari, Tārā, Ahalyā, Draupadī, and Sāvitrī (only worshipped after marriage).
the month of Jyeṣṭha (May–June). They go to the river
bank and offer salutations to the sun, and then proceed to
worship Gaurī. To represent her they make five small heaps
of sand, and put five small pebbles on each heap, and offer
each one a sopārī-nut and a reddened cotton thread; they
then give the goddess leave to go in the usual way by throwing
grains of rice on each heap.¹

Then they return home and keep a fast, but it is not
a fast that breaks the heart of any child, for, although they
must sit in one place and eat no cooked grain or rice,² they
are allowed mangoes and unlimited sweets made of milk from
the bazaar. In the evening, when they have broken this fast,
they go to the temple and sing.

But the greatest of all the girls' festivals is Molākāta,
or the festival of 'sitting-in-one-place-and-eating-nothing-salt'.
What Christmas is to an English girl, Molākāta is to her
Brāhman sister. It occurs in the sowing season, indeed the
monsoon season in a ritual sense is said to begin with
Molākāta, and the monsoon, as every one knows, is not
only the most religious period of the year, but also the
precarious season on which the prosperity of India depends,
so that then, if ever, it is important to propitiate the powers
that be. The monsoon, as we shall see later, rather resembles
the Christian Lent in the way people promise to keep it by
fasting every so often, abstaining from favourite dainties, and
reading sacred books. Anyhow, it begins with this girls'
festival of Molākāta and lasts, ritually speaking, till eleven
days after the great Divāli, ending on Deva Divāli.

As has been said, Molākāta coincides with the sowing
season. On the sixth day of the Hindu month of Āṣādha girls
fill earthen dishes with loose soil from an ant-heap mixed
with dry powdered cow-dung, and in this they sow wheat or
barley seeds, so that by the time the holiday has come, that is

¹ Nāgara girls, who do not go out as freely as other Brāhmans, do all
this at home.
² Some Brāhmans do allow cooked food.
on the last five days of the bright half of this month of Āṣāḍha, the seed should have sprung up. Unmarried girls begin to take part in the five days' festival of Molākāta when they are about seven, and observe it every year for five years, till they have reached the marriageable age of twelve and put away childish things. During the festival the girls may not clean their teeth with the ordinary twig of bāvala wood, but instead use white millet straw, stripping the sheath off it, and using the straw immediately underneath as a tooth-stick.

In the morning the young girls meet and go off to the river to bathe, and to make the five heaps of sand in honour of Gauri, as they did before. They return home singing, and sit in one particular place in their homes, where they may eat millet, wheat, rice, or any pulse, provided only that it be cooked without salt. They may use sugar and clarified butter, but not treacle which contains salt. In the evening, under the guidance of a Brāhman, they worship the growing seedlings, the girls offering the sixteen-fold worship to the plants, whilst the priest recites appropriate mantras. Every evening for five evenings this is repeated amid great rejoicings and much merry-making, from which, however, all boys are carefully excluded. But the last day of Molākāta is the most important and the merriest. In the evening as usual the seedlings are worshipped, but mirabile dictu they are then thrown on to the head of the presiding priest. (Imagine the surprise of a curate officiating in an English girls' school, if this were done to him.) The girls keep awake the whole night through and go about the streets singing. When a girl has observed Molākāta for five years running, she may do so no more, but, to mark the end of her last Molākāta, five perfectly healthy Brāhman girls are

1 The writer's pandits gave several examples of sprouting seeds being worshipped (for instance, during the Durgā festival in other parts of India, and Navarātra in Kāthiāwār). During Dāserā (or Vijaya Daśami) she noticed that growing sprouts were exchanged as people wished each other prosperity.

2 Nāgara girls do not observe Molākāta, but towards the close of the monsoon season they worship sprouting seeds in their own houses and do the sixteen-fold pūjā to them.
invited to her house, and she feeds them. Their little hostess
is now considered ready for marriage.

It is extremely difficult to say anything that cannot be
immediately contradicted about the age at which girls and
boys are usually married; for in every subcaste, in every
district, and in every family the customary age varies, and
this again will be affected by famine and pestilence, good
harvests, or a rise in prices. As a rule, amongst Nāgara the
bridegroom is five (or, better still, ten) years older than the
bride, who is usually about eleven or twelve years of age, but
who may be married as early as nine if there be war or unrest
in the country. In normal times, however, Nāgara do not
like their daughters to marry before the age of twelve, and
they may keep them unmarried till fifteen.

The idea is that a girl must have gone through the wedding
ceremony before she attains physical puberty. The men say
that it is not they but their wives and mothers who are most
anxious that the girls should be married young. If a girl
does reach this stage in her life-history before the wedding
day, the fact is carefully hidden, for the saying is that, with
every step an unmarried girl takes after puberty, sin accrues
to her mother and father. One idea certainly is that, if the
girl, after she is physically capable of bearing a child, does
not do so, her parents are guilty of, as it were, destroying the
life that might have been born. Another important factor,
however, that makes a careful mother anxious to get her
dughter married early is the abominable way in which any
enemy of the family will spread reports about the
unchastity of an unmarried girl, without having one tittle of
evidence to support the story. The most conclusive reply
that the injured family can urge is that the girl has not
attained puberty, and until the law of libel is strengthened in
India, most mothers will continue to marry their daughters
erel they lose the ability to make that reply. Another reason
in favour of early marriages is that after attaining puberty an
unmarried girl would have to make atonement by offering
clarified butter to the sacrificial fire and making gifts to Brāhmans. As a general rule then, amongst Nāgara the bride is eleven or twelve, and the boy about sixteen or seventeen at the time of the wedding, but enlightened opinion and the desire for education is steadily raising the age. Amongst some of these Brāhmans the girl after marriage remains in her own mother's house till she attains physical puberty, and this custom is approved by other Brāhmans, even when they do not follow it. Perhaps the line of least resistance for agitators against the proved evils of child-marriage would be to try and popularize this practice, which, though it may not go to the root of the matter, does something to guard for a little girl her sacred right of an uncurtailed, innocent childhood, and to protect her and the community against the harm caused by immature mothers bringing forth sickly infants.¹

For a boy studying at the University, whose mind in those dawn-golden days ought to be filled with thoughts of books and examinations, with splendid (if quite impracticable) ideals about the reform of everything in heaven and earth, and with athletics and open-air ideas generally, to be burdened with too early fatherhood is a real catastrophe. Indeed, it is hardly less pathetic to see a boy robbed for ever of his jolly, nonsensical, irresponsible youth, than to see a girl deprived of much of her childhood and of her entire girlhood.

All Brāhmans agree that a girl should not marry until she is six years old, for till then she is under the guardianship of the gods. For the first two years of her life she is the ward of Soma. Soma may mean that mysterious plant which bears leaves only in the bright half of the moon, and whose exhilarating juice only a Brāhman can digest. This plant is unidentified in Kāthiāwār, but it is believed that some years ago in the south it was discovered and used in sacrifice. In this case, however, the guardian Soma seems only to mean the moon.

Some Indians, such as Kadavā Kaṇabīs, actually betroth children before they are born, but they are not sent to live with their husbands till they are sixteen, and sometimes twenty, years old.
From two to four the child's guardian is the god Gandharva, the god of song. Lastly, she is ward to Agni, the god of fire.

It is interesting to notice that each of these three gods is a Vedic deity; it is also interesting to notice the anger caused amongst Brāhmans by the unlucky translation in the 'Sacred Books of the East' (S. B. E. vol. xxix, p. 218) which seems to imply that the girl, instead of being the ward, has been the wife of each of these three gods. Nothing gives one a clearer idea of a Hindu's detestation of the very idea of a second marriage in the case of a girl, than his wrath at the implication that each of his virgin daughters has been married three times before she comes to her human marriage at all.

There are eight kinds of marriage, the Scriptures say, some of which are good, and some very evil.

First, there is the Brāhma marriage, when the father gives his daughter to a bridegroom of good character and learned in the Vedas, and the wedding ceremony is performed by Brāhmans. This is the most usual form of marriage.

Then there is the Daiva wedding, when a ruling chief, a Kṣatriya, gives his daughter to some famous Brāhman priest invited to perform a special sacrifice. As none of these particular sacrifices are performed nowadays, the gift of a chief's daughter as a reward for performing them is in modern times an unusual form of marriage!

Ārṣa is the name given to a wedding when the father exchanges, or, to put it bluntly, sells his daughter for, say, a couple of cows and seventy-five rupees. This form is detested by Nāgara, who, lest they should be accused of making a profit out of the sale of a daughter, will not even drink water in their son-in-law's house. As therefore no Nāgara father-in-law, mother-in-law, or elder brother-in-law can stay in the bridegroom's house, for fear of this reproach, the little bride will have to content herself with entertaining her younger brothers and sisters after her marriage.

In Gujarāt many of the Nāgara make money settlements on their daughters, and in Kāthiāwār, though they do not do
this, they give them jewellery to the value of at least five hundred rupees, which becomes the bride's personal property.

Some of the Audicā Brāhmans have taken definite vows against the sale of their daughters, a transaction which under some transparent disguise used sometimes to occur in their caste, as it does in fact quite openly amongst low-castes.

With certain Brāhmans in Gujarāt, as in Bengal and the Deccan, the father of the bride has to buy a son-in-law.

Amongst the Rājputs in Kāthiāwār the father always had to give a dowry with his daughter, and the size of this dowry led to the practice of female infanticide amongst them, or, as it was euphemistically called, causing-one's-daughter-to-drink-milk.¹

A fourth kind of marriage—Prājāpatya—is only a variation of the first type, when, at the close of the ceremony, the father of the bride, in true patriarchal fashion, calls the newly wedded pair to him and makes them promise that they will lead a meritorious life and act according to the Vedas.

An Āsura marriage is a very real sale of the bride, for whom the bridegroom may have to pay anything from two thousand to fifty thousand rupees. Amongst certain Brāhmans, as well as some Jaina and Bhātiā (especially in Kāthiāwār), this form of marriage, though much condemned by reformers, is still practised.

But the most interesting form of marriage, from the reformer's point of view, is the Gāndharva, when the bride and bridegroom make their own marriage for themselves. The pair fall in love, and then ask their parents' consent. This is a form of

¹ The writer is indebted to the late Rev. G. P. Taylor, D.D., for the following note: 'The Gujarāt term dūdra pītwā, or milk drinking, is not merely euphemistic, but also suggestive of the method which was generally employed in the taking of the infant's life. The mother, having applied opium to her breast, and thus having poisoned at its source her babe's natural sustenance, would see her offspring, whilst pressed to her bosom, sink into the sleep of death. Other expeditious too were at times adopted. The infant's head would be held down in a deep pail of milk: or a cloth, soaked in milk, would be thrust far back into the mouth so as to choke the child.'
marriage to which probably more attention will be paid in the future, for though hardly ever practised now, it yet has the sanction of the Vedas. It avoids the evils of child-marriage, and moreover allows the man and woman freedom of choice. Another great advantage of the Gândharva type of marriage is that there is no question of buying bride or bridegroom, and that it avoids all the endless fuss of a Brähma marriage. The man and woman simply call in a priest, exchange gifts, and are married by him, vowing fidelity to each other in the presence of the sun.

The remaining two forms of marriage are entirely evil. In the one, the Rākṣasa, the form amounts to marriage by conquest. It occurs when the bridegroom, either in war or in time of peace, with the aid of armed dacoits, overpowers or kills the parents and relatives and carries off the bride. This is the way that the god Kṛiṣṇa obtained Rukmiṇī, and that Pṛthivīrāja Čauhāṇa married his cousin Saṁyuktā.

The other evil marriage, Paiśāca, is marriage by craft, when the bridegroom overpowers an unconscious and perhaps swooning bride.
CHAPTER IV

THE WEDDING


The form of marriage which we are to study is the ordinary Brāhma ceremony, and tedious and multitudinous as we shall find its rites, yet it is worth while to study them carefully, if we really want to understand the thoughts of our Indian sisters, for they give us a perfect picture of the Hindu woman en fête. For hundreds of years the greatest fun of the high-caste Indian lady has centred round weddings. These are her dinner-parties, her ‘at homes’, and her concerts. In fact, a wedding is to a Brāhma lady what her London season is to the wife of the ordinary country squire in England. If we want to understand a Brāhma’s thoughts about the next world, we must study his funeral ceremonies; but if we wish to know how an Indian lady makes the most of this world, we must go to a wedding. Most Hindu men would fain curtail some of the endless ceremonies and expense (for an Indian gentleman dislikes the fuss of a wedding only a little less than does an Englishman), but the ladies of his family are going to have the times of their lives, and not one single item will they omit. All the world over one of the best touchstones of
a man or a woman's character is to be found in their choice of amusements and their idea of fun; at an Indian wedding we shall have abundant opportunities of studying both, and we shall indeed be dull-witted, if we do not gain some impression of the charm and the delightful gaiety of Indian women, and of the way their fun centres round their home. To many of us the fascination of Hindu ladies lies in this very 'homeness' and in the pretty interest they take in the home life of us exiles. A wedding is our chance to get a glimpse into the gladness of their homes.¹

The first thing to do, of course, is to fix the wedding day. This can never take place in the rainy season, for then Viṣṇu, the Protector, whose aid young married people specially need, is in the lower regions (Pātāla). The three gods take it turn and turn about to go there for a four months' course; Brahmā goes for the winter, Śiva for the hot weather, and Viṣṇu goes for the monsoon, to stay with Bali Rāja, whom he himself had driven thither. The auspicious wedding months are roughly from October to June (Kārttika to Jyesthā). But to find the actual day an astrologer is called in. He has not only to choose a lucky day, but also to avoid hitting on an unlucky one. The day must not be the last day of the month, or any day when the sun is in the ninth sign of the zodiac, Sagittarius, i.e. about December 14 to January 14, nor any day when the sun is in Pisces, the twelfth sign of the zodiac (Mīna Rāsi, February–March). No one may marry when neither Venus (Śukra) nor Jupiter (Bṛhaspati) is visible; and it is only safe to marry when the moon exercises a benign influence over both bride and bridegroom.

In the case of the bridegroom it is all important that the sun should be favourable, whilst in the case of the bride it is the influence of the planet Jupiter that matters most.

Well, the astrologer does the best he can and fixes the day,

¹ Contr. Monier Williams, Brahmanism and Hinduism, p. 380. 'It is out of the power of any European, to whom the inner apartments of Indian households are forbidden ground, to give a complete description of the entire marriage ceremonial.' This is only true for the mere man!
and a month before its advent both households begin to prepare for the fray.

A red square is made in the compound of the bride’s house, and on this are placed two wooden stools, on one of which the bride sits, and opposite to her a lucky woman. This woman now marks the girl’s forehead with an auspicious mark the size of a shilling piece (whereas the ordinary size is no bigger than that of a threepenny bit) and puts a necklace of gold round her neck. At the same time in the bridegroom’s home a lucky woman has been marking him and giving him a necklace.

Now the preparations are indeed begun, and amid a perfect cataract of arriving relatives and excited conversation clothes are discussed, ordered and bought, and some of the dry food, such as seva and pāpaḍa\(^1\) is prepared. The first pāpaḍa that is made is worked up into a rough image of Gañēśa (the god of lucky beginnings), and when the biscuits are put on the bedstead to dry, they are very careful that this Gañēśa biscuit shall be the first one put down. At this time, too, in both houses a feast is given, to which the relatives are invited, and amidst great rejoicings auspicious songs are sung, and every single aunt and cousin is given a present of molasses before they leave.

From now right up to the wedding day amongst certain Brāhmans (not Nāgara for instance) both the girl and the boy are rubbed all over with finely-ground parched beans and turmeric mixed with sweet oil. The turmeric must be ground in a hand-mill turned by seven lucky women, who all put their hands on it at the same time. Every evening women now come and sing auspicious songs and are repaid in dates and betel-leaf.

Invitation cards are issued about this time to friends living at a distance. These always have the image of Gañēśa imprinted on them and are sent out in the name of the senior man of the household.

\(^1\) Seva resembles vermicelli and pāpaḍa are delicious wafer-like pancake-shaped lentil cakes or biscuits, which Brāhmans make better than any one else.
THE WEDDING

Now, too, wise folk begin to notice omens; no one, however severe a cold he may have, may sneeze aloud: the sneeze must be strangled heroically at birth; no child may use an unlucky word, or one that could even be made to bear an inauspicious meaning; the bride may not see a sweeper carrying away rubbish on his head, or look at the swept-up dust of the house, much less herself sweep; it is also considered unlucky if she sees a cat cross the road. But, saddest of all, no little widows may come to the house, or touch the marriage booth; and until one realizes how every Indian woman loves a wedding, one cannot understand what a deprivation this means. It is as though an English officer were forbidden to touch or see a horse.

The erection of the two marriage booths \(^1\) (which are run up five or eight days before the great day), like the reading of the banns for the last time in England, shows that the wedding is now imminent.

A booth is put up at both houses, but we need only examine that at the bride’s home.

It rests on four posts, but besides these four there are two other sticks, one a piece of bamboo (if possible it should be still green, not dry) and the second a piece of wood about a foot long, which are put in near one of the posts. The green bamboo is a symbol of auspiciousness and is put in with the wish that the family may remain green and prosperous. The twelve-inch piece of wood is called the Manikyastambha (or ruby pillar), and to symbolize the four faces of the god Brahmā two sticks are tied crosswise at the top of it; on this are placed pipal leaves, turmeric, reddened thread, and a madana fruit, and at the top of all, one of the bride’s ivory bangles.

A large hole is dug near one of the four posts supporting the booth, but near which particular post it will be dug depends on the season of the year; for, according to the

---

\(^1\) Some Brāhmans are particular that the booths should be put up on succeeding days and not on the same day.
position of the sun, it may be the most northern or the most southern of the posts.

You see, the serpent (Śeṣanāga) which supports the earth shifts his position in his sleep in accordance with the movements of the sun, and so the ruby pillar has to be inserted with great care, lest it should puncture him, for, all the world over, it is a wise course to let sleeping snakes lie!

But before this post is inserted, a small earthenware pot, filled with clarified butter, curds, milk, honey, and sugar, is put into the hole. Into the booth itself an image of Gaṇeśa is brought, and also the fifteen all-important goddesses. These fifteen are represented by lines of melted butter and a circle of red marks made on a low stool. All fifteen goddesses are first worshipped in the booth; then the stool bearing their symbols is removed to the last room in the house, and there on the back wall a pyramid of red dots is made, the bottom row of which represents seven special goddesses:

......

........

........

Cotton wool soaked in clarified butter is pressed against each of these seven dots so that the butter trickles down and makes seven lines which represent the Gotra-devī (the goddess of the special subcaste). The pillar is then inserted, and an auspicious śrāddha is performed.

This auspicious śrāddha (Vṛiddhi śrāddha) is a sort of insurance. The difficulty is that if some distant relative were to die, it would not only cause grief to his remote cousins, but

1 The writer has sometimes had the number of these given to her as sixteen, not fifteen.

2 Monier Williams does not seem to have understood that whilst certain śrāddha (like the one we are now discussing) are auspicious, others, as we shall see later, are inauspicious. Cf. Monier Williams, Hinduism, p. 65.
also reduce their house to a state of such ceremonial impurity (ṣūtaṅga) that no one would be able to drink or eat in it. But if once this auspicious śrāddha has been performed, no sūtaka can attach itself to the house (unless the person so inconsiderately dying were a very near relative indeed), and so without any harm people can feast there. Of course, if the death of a very near relative takes place, sūtaka automatically occurs, and the whole ceremony has to be postponed.

The size of the booth depends, in the bride’s house, on the length of her forearm, being either four or seven times the length measured from elbow to finger tip; at the bridegroom’s house his arm is used as the unit, and so Indian children, if they are wise, will grow as big and long-armed as possible, in order to reap the benefit on their own wedding day.

Until the actual marriage the bridegroom must never enter the bride’s wedding-booth, nor any other that may have been erected in the town.

At both houses now, for the five or eight days that intervene between the erection of the booth and the wedding, guests are entertained at midday breakfast and late dinner, and from this time the expense really begins. A Nāgara host, for instance, expects to entertain about a hundred guests for five days before and five days after the wedding, and to spend anything from six hundred rupees upwards in doing so. Of course for many people a wedding is the only time when they entertain their friends, and takes the place, for the ladies, as we have seen, of our dinners and dances and garden parties.

So the ladies get up about five in the morning, bathe and array themselves in their best clothes, which during all these five days are of silk and on the great day should be of gold brocade, and which may be of any colour save black. They all wear a great deal of jewellery, including ornaments in their noses, and have the auspicious marks on their foreheads.

It might be thought that, with so many guests coming to dine, the ladies of the house would be very busy cooking, or superintending the cooking, for that is usually the women’s
part in India as well as in England; but not a bit of it! The ladies, as we said before, are out for the time of their lives, so they set the family priest (at least amongst the Nāgara) and his assistants to cook; nor will they even dream of helping him, but, dressed in their best, they go off to sing songs and invite their friends to dinner. Imagine the awful havoc that indigestion would work amongst an English wedding party whose cakes and pastry had all been prepared by the heavy hand of a typical British rector.

The women of the house are specially careful to go personally to invite senior ladies and those but lately out of mourning, who will not come unless pressed. Meanwhile the family priest is busy making tennis-ball-like sweets (laddū) and sweets that look like twisted macaroni but taste quite different (jalebi), and heaps of other delicacies composed of gram or wheat flour, mixed in different ways with clarified butter, sugar, spices, and saffron. (Milk is very little used at wedding feasts, for fear of its turning sour.)

But, though during all the ten days the food is rich and rare, the biggest feast—the true bārā khānā—occurs on the third or the fourth day after the weddîng, when the bride’s father has to see that if possible a hundred dishes are provided. Fortunately for the father’s purse, pickles of various sorts each count as a dish among this hundred.

Before the wedding the priest not only cooks, but also has to find time to instruct the little bride with regard to her future duties. So day after day he reads to her from the Rig Veda concerning the conduct and behaviour of the perfect wife. All the time the little girl sits so sedately with her hands folded in her lap and her face cast down, that the onlooker would never guess that the child did not know a word of Sanskrit and had not an idea of what was being read to her. These readings should last for an hour and a half every day for a week, but, as a matter of fact, the feastings with which

---

1 If the bridegroom is a Vaiṣṇava, it will be on the fourth, otherwise on the third day.
they have to be accompanied prove so expensive, that the
priest is asked to read a little more every day and get it all
compressed into four or five days.

Whilst the reading is going on, a little lamp of clarified
butter is lit and put under a sieve, where it burns each day
till the reading is completed. The soot that gathers on the
sieve is considered very auspicious and used as a pigment on
great occasions.

About this time the priest bores the hard fruit of the _ma-
dana_ and ties it to the wrist of the bride and the bridegroom.
This fruit is sacred to the god of love, and its presence will
save either of them from the ravages of passion during the
next eight or ten days. (Three times in her life may an
Indian woman have this fruit tied to her wrist: now, at her
wedding; later, when she gains the happy certainty that she
will bear a child; and lastly, it is tied to her dead wrist if
she have been so fortunate as to die in the sunshine of her
days, unwidowed and leaving a husband to mourn her.)

After the priest has tied the madana fruit to the little
bride’s wrist, he is given presents, usually consisting of wheat,
coco-nut, clarified butter, dry dates, some money, and at least
two loin-cloths.

About this time also a picture of Gāṇeśa is drawn outside
on the lintel of the door of the house, for he is the presiding
deity at weddings; and then the gardener is asked to hang
up strings of mango and _āsoka_ leaves over the doorway.
Also, if it has not been done earlier, designs in liquid red clay
are drawn on the walls of the compound and inside the house.

Some morning before the wedding a potter is asked to take
certain pots from his own house and put them in a temple
near the bride’s house; and sometimes all the women go and
worship the potter’s wheel. (Some Hindus consider this
a fertility rite, and if the child born of the marriage is deformed,
they say the potter’s thumb must have slipped.)

Anyhow, the women bring the pots either from the potter’s
house or from the temple and place these in the back room,
near the stool that bears the symbols of the fifteen goddesses. The pots are covered and put one on each side of the stool, and the bride (or her father) says: ‘I give these two earthen pots to the sisters of my forefathers’. After the wedding is over, the living aunts may claim these two pots, or give them to the priests. Meanwhile thirty-six pots of sizes varying from big to very little have now to be arranged. Twelve poles are erected so as to enclose a square, three poles being put close together at each of the four corners. In the centre of each of these groups of three poles the earthen pots are arranged in four sets of nine pots standing on each other. Each pyramid of pots is tied with a string which goes from corner to corner round the square. This enclosed square, as we shall see, is used on the actual wedding day.

The astrologer is now consulted again, whilst there is still time to combat malign influences. If he finds that the planet Mars exercises an evil influence over the bridegroom, the lad will be made to wear a gold ring, set with coral, on the third finger of his right hand. If the planet Jupiter is unfavourable to the bride, certain mantras are repeated as often as nineteen thousand times, and presents are made to Brāhmans of all sorts of yellow things, such as gold, a piece of yellow cloth, or a brass begging-bowl. If, however, it proves to be the sun that unfortunately is adverse to the bridegroom, a special mantra is said six thousand times, and a gift of white things, such as silver, muslin, aluminium, or diamonds, is made to Brāhmans. (The influences are frequently found to be adverse!)

It is thought better, as a rule, when arranging a marriage, that the bride and the bridegroom should not live in the same village;¹ but on the day before the wedding the bridegroom and all his friends come to the bride’s town. It is the prettiest sight to see in the early spring cartloads of merry children, all, like Mrs. Gilpin, on pleasure bent. The very oxen that draw the wedding cart are caparisoned with

¹ *Contr. Hopkins, Religions of India,* p. 270.
embroidered blankets. The wedding chariot is generally a shaky conveyance with a red-curtained dome-shaped top, and it is simply amazing how many children, all sitting cross-legged, can be packed into it. In any chief’s stables there are sure to be really wonderful wedding carriages; but ordinary villagers often adapt their workaday carts very happily, sometimes erecting red coverings over them, or else just packing them as they are, brimful of children, whose bright dresses and happy faces form the most effective of all decorations. Brāhmans, however, would probably have enough influence to secure a proper wedding chariot, and the bridegroom’s party usually drives up to the entrance of the bride’s village in state and there takes up a strategic position in some garden or shaded field.

In the evening¹ the bride’s father goes out to meet them in formal procession, and with much playing of instruments and singing of songs brings them to the lodgings that he has provided for them in the town.

The father of the bride provides the lodging (which must not be in his own home) and everything else the party needs, except food until the wedding. Once the wedding is over, the bridegroom and his friends come and dine in the lady’s house for four and a half days, taking nine meals there.

The all-important day dawns at last, and the very first thing in the morning the family priest of the bride, helped by the astrologer, sets to work to find out the most favourable moment for the actual ceremony. To discover this they write down the name of the bride and the bridegroom, their gotra on both sides, and their horoscope, showing the position of the several planets; and when they have found out the exact time that the planets will be favourable, they hand the paper to the bride’s father, who sprinkles it with red powder and wrote the word Śrī on it before receiving it. He then

¹ Some Brāhmans, as for example Nāgara and Śārasvata, go in the evening; certain other Brāhmans, such as Audiśa, go in the morning.
asks them to accept a little present varying from one to five rupees.

The bride’s friends go to the lodgings of the bridegroom and his friends and pay them a visit, but are careful not to accept even an areca-nut. In return, the bridegroom’s friends all come and call on the bride’s relatives, and each of them is given five areca-nuts and is besprinkled with scent, which they may take without fear of reproach. They bring with them presents, such as dates, clarified butter, copper-pots, and baskets, to the value of about fourteen rupees.

The bride’s maternal uncle now arrives in another procession, and he brings with him presents for his niece and her mother and the other children, such as ornaments and clothes of varying value. But whatever he forgets or remembers to give, one thing he must provide, and that is the ivory bangles for the bride to wear.

Now, if we are to understand the salient points of a wedding, particularly a Nāgara wedding, and not get confused by the multitude of minor ceremonies, interesting as each of them is, we must grasp the idea that on their wedding day, and for at least three days after, the little bride and bridegroom represent the god Śiva and his wife Pārvatī; and we must remember that it is the many-sided god in his character as the supreme ascetic that is represented. In conformity with this idea, the bride and bridegroom fast all day, and, as we shall see later, dress in accordance with the part. They themselves take no share in the visits and return visits, but sit fasting like sages (ṛiṣi) in their own homes.

These visits must all be over by twelve, for at noon the bride’s relatives ask all the little children from the bridegroom’s lodgings to lunch.

About three o’clock the bridegroom’s party come again to the house, bringing with them clothes and gold and silver jewellery. It is quite an understood thing in an ordinary

1 Other Brāhmans, even when they do not look on their bridegrooms as Śiva, nevertheless approve the Nāgara custom.
middle-class family that the clothes should be worth about three hundred rupees, the silver ornaments about twenty-five, and the gold about five hundred. (These presents are really the settlements made by the groom on his bride and become her absolute property.)

But, as on this day the girl is to represent an ascetic and can wear none of these beautiful things, the bridegroom's friends also bring a gold ring and a special sari of white muslin with a red border for the bride to wear during the ceremony. In order to represent Pārvati as completely as possible, she will wear no camisole\(^1\) and no skirt, but only this narrow toga-like garment of white muslin, about six to eight yards in length, which is wound round her in graceful folds.

The bride now bathes with hot water and washes her hair with *Kakkola* berries (*Myrtus Pimenta*), and (if she can be quite sure that there is no animal fat in it) she may also use scented soaps. Her hair is left loose, as it ill becomes an ascetic to adorn herself with braiding of the hair.

The water in which the bride has bathed is made the occasion for some mild horse-play. It is poured into pots, and, together with the rest of the berries and the soap (if any), is taken in procession to the bridegroom's lodgings. The women who carry it go singing all the way, and they must be accompanied either by the bride's father and mother or by the bride's elder brother and his wife. Besides the bath, they also take a piece of silver thread exactly the size of the Brāhmanical sacred thread, and (in allusion to his impersonation of the divine ascetic) sandals either of wood or metal, and most important of all, the loin-cloth of white muslin with a red border that the bridegroom will wear during the ceremony.

The bride's women friends have great fun in trying to pour the water from her bath over the bridegroom's head. He struggles, resists, and dodges, and, after a good deal of

\(^1\) On the second day she may or may not wear camisole and skirt, but she will wear the ring.
harmless and irresponsible ragging, all the bath-water is eventually poured on the ground over or near the big toe of the lad’s right foot. Then red powder is rubbed on him, very likely on his hand, and the thread, gold ring, and sandals are given to him.

As soon as the bride’s friends leave, the boy proceeds to get ready for another procession and bathes, probably using the bride’s soap. He puts on the muslin loin-cloth the bride has sent him and wraps a rich gold scarf about his shoulders, adding some gold ornaments and a gold ring, whilst garlands are hung round his neck, wrists, and elbows.

It is after his bath that the bridegroom begins actually to represent Śiva, and, as we have seen, the bride represents Pārvati, so that not only do the wedding guests have all the fun and frolic of a really first-class entertainment, but (oh, lucky folk!) at the same time that they are being thoroughly amused, they also acquire religious merit by venerating the gods and taking part in their wedding. As the god is being represented in his ascetic character, the bridegroom cannot wear a coat, so he confines himself to the loin-cloth, the scarf over the shoulders, and the sandals. On his head the boy wears a cardboard crown covered with gold and silver paper, on which the river Ganges is represented, as well as the half moon which the god obtained from the ocean when it was churned. The poison that Śiva drank is symbolized by a tight necklace round the bridegroom’s throat placed half-way down his neck, to show that the poison did not go the whole way. The garlands he wears represent snakes.

The bride as Pārvatī wears her hair loose and the white muslin shawl, but no gold ornaments, only the ivory bangles her uncle has brought her.

In the case of other Brāhmans, such as the Audića and Sārasvata, for example, though the Nāgara custom is much approved, their brides and bridegrooms do not represent Śiva and Pārvati, and so the girl wears a white sārī, white bodice, green silk skirt, and silver rings on her toes, but no gold
ornaments, and keeps her hair loosened. Amongst them also
the bridegroom wears full dress, with a lime and very often
a needle in his turban to keep off the evil eye. As the bride
has not to go out in the procession and face the glances of
all sorts of poor and wicked people, and as moreover she
is wearing no jewels, she needs no protection from the evil
eye.

But to whatever caste she may belong, her father gives
her an auspicious thread on which is hung one bead, generally
of gold, and this she will wear continuously during her
husband’s lifetime.

In England the bridegroom is supported by a best man, but,
in India, more sensitively than with us, it is customary for this
supporter to be himself married, so that he knows exactly
what to do. It is he who makes the red auspicious mark on
the bridegroom’s forehead, the black mark to avert the evil
eye, and three red marks, one on each cheek and one on
the chin.

Then comes the great procession. As a rule, if the family
do not possess a mare, they will be able to borrow one, or,
if not, a horse, from some chief. The bridegroom is seated on
this, and a coco-nut marked with red and a four-anna piece are
placed in his hand. (If it were the marriage of a ruling chief,
he would be mounted on an elephant.)

Behind the bridegroom sits one of his little nieces or cousins
of about eight or nine, holding in her hand a small jug. In
this jug are put things that will rattle, perhaps salt in rough
lumps, and small copper coins and millet grains. As she
rides, the little girl shakes this over the bridegroom’s head,
making a fine noise. The privilege of thus riding pillion
to a bridegroom is much coveted, for it brings all sorts of
good luck.

The bridegroom himself has as much attention paid him as
if he were a ruling chief; for an umbrella as an ensign of rank
is held over him, and the best man fans him, and attendants
walk beside the richly caparisoned horse, which moves slowly
round the town, its paces being so timed that the whole procession may reach the bride's house some twenty minutes before the sun sets. Very often the state band is lent, and all the folk in the procession give themselves up to the delights of music and singing.

Immediately behind the bridegroom's horse walks his own mother, carrying in her hand a stand of tiny lamps in which cotton seeds are burning. The mother wears two sāris, a thing which is only done on great days of high ritual, such as the times when śrāddha is performed, or some great sacrifice offered. Sometimes she scatters salt as she walks, in order that any harshness or roughness in the bridegroom's temper may from henceforth be dispersed.

After her come all the women relatives of the bridegroom, and even the widows, in some families, are allowed to join the procession, provided that they do not try and take a conspicuous part.

In due course the cortège with all imaginable music and rejoicing reaches the bride's house. There, in front of the door, a red square of plastered clay has been made on the ground, in the centre of which there is a wooden stool, and on this the bridegroom mounts.

The bride's mother, or, if she be a widow, the bride's aunt, comes out of the house, bearing a trayful of what look like children's toys. As a matter of fact, the tray holds models of all sorts of agricultural and domestic implements: a plough, a winnowing-fan, a yoke, a pestle and mortar, a churning-rod, a needle, a stalk of millet, and also four balls, two of which are made of ashes and two of rice.

The woman waves all these over the boy's head and gives the models to his mother, but the four balls she throws to the four points of the compass, in order to remove all the lad's cares and troubles.

The bridegroom is then worshipped as the representative of the god Siva. A lamp is brought filled with red powder and clarified butter, in which four crossed wicks are burning, and
this is waved three or four times in front of his face, whilst the priest recites mantras.

After receiving the models, the bridegroom’s mother has to retire to her lodging and wait there till the rites are completed and the feasting has begun. The reason for this retirement is that other people fear lest her overwhelming joy at seeing her dear son so happily married should drive her mad! (This precaution is not observed in England, where it is unusual for a mother-in-law to be so pleased with her son’s choice as to endanger her reason!)

As soon as the poor mother-in-law is banished, a curtain of any colour save black is brought and held in front of the bridegroom, and the maternal uncle of the bride brings her in his arms and deposits her on the other side of the curtain.

The bride may not see her groom’s face yet, but at this point she is allowed to see the big toe of his right foot, on which she promptly makes a red mark and so intimates that she is worshipping the feet of a god. Whilst this is being done, the priest again murmurs mantras.

Now it comes to the turn of the boy’s mother-in-law to make the red auspicious mark on his forehead and stick some rice grains on it. Boy or god, the mother-in-law is out for a lark (for nothing will ever make a Brähman lady a prig), and so, while she is doing this and moving her hand three times round the god’s face, she seeks an opportunity to pull that divinity’s nose.

Wise women in England say that the sure sign of a weak man is his terror lest in public (whatever may be the real case in private) he should appear to be ruled or even counselled by his wife, and, as our literature¹ shows, it has always been a matter, half of jest, half of anxiety, as to whether or no a man is the master in his own house. The old jest holds just as good in India, where a wife’s and mother’s influence (generally exercised against any innovations) is enormous, and

¹ Cp. The Proude Wyves’ Paternoster, The Taming of the Shrew.
a great deal of the by-play in an Indian wedding is directed
to finding out which of the young couple will 'wear the
breeches'. The bridegroom accordingly exercises all his
skill to defend his nose from his mother-in-law's assaults, for
if she succeed, he will just be a hen-pecked man for all his
married days! When the assembled company have had their
fill of this and similar jests, water is brought and sprinkled
before the bridegroom to purify his way to the wedding
booth. Two earthen lamp-holders tied with cotton and filled
with rice, betel-leaf, and pice have previously been coloured
red and placed beside his path, and whatever happens, the boy
must not forget to stamp on these and break them to powder,
for if he fail, it is a further sign of weakness, and his wife will
assuredly rule over him.

It is worth stopping here a moment to notice the costumes
of the parents. The bride's father or his representative is
dressed in a silk loin-cloth and wears a silk scarf over his
shoulders. The bride's mother has on a red silk sārī, which,
unless at another daughter's wedding, can never be worn again.
Over this she wears a scarf representing a second sārī, and as
much jewellery (nose-ring, bracelets, anklets, &c.), as ever she
likes.

Outside the wedding booth six seats are arranged. They
are really footstools, but the cushions on them must be
covered with wool, not cotton. These are reserved for the
special guests, even the bridegroom's father sitting on an
ordinary seat.

Standing opposite these six empty seats, the bridegroom
receives the great worship—the Madhuparka—which can
only be paid to six human beings: an ācārya (a spiritual
preceptor), the performer of a sacrifice, a bridegroom, a king,
a snātaka (a duly initiated Brāhman), or the most dearly
loved relative. So great is the honour conferred by this
worship, that, however often in the year a king or an ācārya
may come to a man's house, only once in the twelve months
can this homage be paid to him. (One shrinks from imagining
the emotions which the preliminaries of this worship would raise in the breast of an ordinary British paterfamilias, already sufficiently annoyed at parting with a favourite daughter and at the frequent calls on his purse.)

Nowadays the worship is somewhat as follows. The girl’s mother stands at the right hand of her husband, and beside her is the family priest. The bride’s father takes the coco-nut from the bridegroom’s hand and is then asked to meditate on Gaṇeṣa. This done, he says to the boy: ‘Taking water in my hand, I worship the bridegroom who has come to my house’; and after sipping the water, he throws it down into a copper dish. Then he says to the boy in Sanskrit through the priest: ‘Please take the seat most convenient to you, that I may worship you’.

The groom replies: ‘I will sit; please worship me’. Twenty-five blades of darbha-grass have been plaited together, and these are now handed to the boy, but, as they are passed to him, great care is taken that they do not point to the south, the abode of the god of death. The priest then says three times, still in Sanskrit: ‘Here is a seat’.

The father-in-law says: ‘Take the seat’, and the bridegroom replies: ‘I take the seat’, and goes on to make this astounding declaration: ‘I am the best of all persons of my age. I accept the worship’—(a sentence which in England would assuredly cost him his bride, if not his life! Though of course the poor lad only means to say: ‘You have not made a mistake in choosing me!’).

He then puts down the darbha-grass on the stool provided for him and sits on it, with his feet on the ground and his face towards the east. The bride’s mother and father also take their seats, and one corner of that lady’s sārī is filled with rice and pice and tied to the end of her husband’s scarf, which holds betel-leaf and rice.

Water is next poured into the auspicious cavity of the bridegroom’s hand (the hand is partly closed and filled with water poured as near as possible to the root of the third
finger of the right hand). With this water he must symbolize the bathing of his feet by washing, first his right toe, and then his other toes, and another plant of darbha-grass is then put under his feet.

A peculiarly shaped copper spoon, with a sort of trough running from ladle to handle, is filled with water, in which are mingled rice, incense, and either red powder or sandalwood. The priest says the word Argha (an offering) three times, and the girl's father offers the spoon to the boy, who says 'I take it', and receives it into his hands. He then raises it in both hands to his head, saying at the same time: 'O water, I send you back to the ocean from which you sprang. Remove all other difficulties lying in my path': and as he speaks, he pours the water from the spoon, which is still held between his joined hands, into a copper plate lying in front of him.

The priest next repeats three times over the words: 'Take and sip this water', and, as he speaks, he takes water already sanctified by mantras from a cup, and pours it by means of a little spoon into the bridegroom's right hand. The boy supports this hand by sticking the first finger of the left hand against the fleshy side of the right hand that lies under the little finger, and drinks the water, saying: 'O water, give me fame, give me radiancy of face; may I be popular, the owner of cattle and free from disease'; and then he takes three more ritual sips.

All this, however, has only been preliminary to the essential Madhuparka, which now follows. To prepare for it, two smaller bronze vessels are placed mouth against mouth (so that they look a little like a dumb-bell), and put inside a big bronze vessel. In the lower of the two small vessels clarified butter and honey have already been placed, together with some curds and small silver coins. The bride's long-suffering

---

1 Other castes wash other toes first.
2 Of course in unequal proportions, since, if clarified butter and honey are mixed exactly 'half and half', the resultant mixture is a virulent poison!
father holds the big bronze vessels containing these two smaller pots in his hands, whilst the priest says three times: ‘Take this Madhuparka’. The bridegroom replies ‘I accept it’; but before actually receiving it, he is careful to take the couple of jars out of the big one and, putting the lower one on the top, he examines it warily, for, if there should be any ants or other insects in the honey, he would be committing a grave sin in accepting it. (Any old resident in India can bear witness how easily ants find their way into honey!) However, if there be no trace of insect life, he accepts the offering, and while doing so expresses as pretty a sentiment as any man, English or Indian, can feel on his wedding day: ‘I look upon you and everything that breathes as my friend. May they all look on me as their friend!’

He then takes the pot in his left hand and, holding a silver coin between the tips of the third finger and thumb of his right hand, he stirs the mixture. Three times he throws away some of the contents, and three times he eats some of it; bestowing some of the remainder on his younger friends, and throwing the rest away towards the east in such a manner that it will not get trodden on or hurt.

This is followed by the ritual sipping of water. Then the bridegroom takes some water in his left hand and, putting a little of it to his mouth with the fingers of his right hand, says: ‘Let there be good speech in my mouth’. His nose is next consecrated, and touching first his right nostril and then his left, he says: ‘Let there be breath in my nose’; applying the water to his ears, he says: ‘Let my two ears have the power of hearing’; touching each eye, he prays: ‘Let my two eyes have the power of seeing’; and applying water in the same way, he goes on to desire that his arms may have strength, and his legs power for walking; till finally, moving his hand from his head to his feet, he prays: ‘Let every part of my body have strength’.

The whole Madhuparka ceremony ends, as so many Indian rites do, with the gift of a cow. Sometimes a real live cow is
kept tied to the booth, ready to be presented at this point by the bride’s father to the bridegroom. If this be the case, the boy accepts it and says to the animal: ‘Go to my house and eat grass’. But what is more likely to happen is that the father-in-law simply gives the price of a cow, conventionally fixed at five rupees\(^1\) for an ordinary householder, and one rupee for a very poor man.

The Madhuparka ceremony being completed by the gift of a cow, the gift of the bride follows. In this, as in every other part of the proceedings, there are a good many local variations. The part of it that is especially interesting to English readers is that not only, as with us, does the father give the bride away, but that the mother associates herself with him in that gift; after all, the child is hers as much as his, and it is interesting to note that the Hindus recognized that fact before we did.

And now to examine the rite in detail: we saw that the little bride was brought in veiled in the arms of her maternal uncle, and seated on a stool beside the bridegroom, though separated from him by a curtain. The Śāstris say that her stool ought to be placed opposite to the bridegroom, so that she faces the west; but, as a matter of fact, the stool is nearly always put beside that of the bridegroom, so that she faces east. Again, according to the Scriptures, some eight special verses of blessing ought to be read to the bride and bridegroom at this point in the proceedings, and whilst they are being read rice\(^2\) grains should be thrown over the pair. Nowadays this seldom or never takes place at Nāgara weddings and is very rare amongst other Brāhmans.

Up to this a curtain has usually separated the bridegroom from his bride and prevented his seeing her,\(^3\) but now it is

---

\(^1\) This means nowadays a saving of anything from fifteen to forty rupees.

\(^2\) Hindus are always interested to compare with this the Western habit of rice-throwing at weddings.

\(^3\) The curtain is not essential: for instance the Nāgara do not ordinarily use it, but it is fairly general amongst other Brāhmans.
removed, and the happy pair look at each other, and if one of them takes a violent dislike to the other at sight, he or she can retract: the marriage is not yet indissoluble.

Whilst they are looking at each other, the priest puts a fire of burning charcoal into the square fenced in with the string and the earthen pots, to the north-east of where they have been sitting. During all the remaining wedding ceremonies this fire must never be allowed to go out, or some misfortune will happen. The Scriptures ordain that this fire should be kindled by rubbing sticks together, but as a matter of convenience it is actually just brought from the bride's house. In the old days some of this fire was taken to the young people's new home, and from it the fire on their domestic hearth was kindled; but this is done nowadays only by Brāhmans who are Agnihotri. At this stage, too, the special clothes to be donned by the bride and bridegroom used to be offered to them, but it proved so much more convenient for the young couple to put them on at the beginning of the wedding, that that is now almost invariably done, though the bridegroom still at this point says to the lady: 'O bride, wear this garment. May you live a hundred years. I, too, don my cloth for fame, long life, and wisdom.'

The anointing of the two used to follow, and some Brāhmans do anoint the pair at this point with yellow powder, turmeric, pulse, and scented oil.

In any case the washing of the feet now follows. The mother and father of the bride wash the big toe of the right foot of both bride and groom, first with water, then with milk, and then with water again; after which they dry them, mark them with the auspicious red mark, and put rice and flowers and red and white powder on them. All this is done by other Brāhmans as well as Nāgara, and they explain that they also are worshipping the couple as Śiva and Pārvatī

---

1 See ch. v.

2 Here again it is interesting to compare the reverence done in India to the big toe with that shown to the toe of the Pope at Rome.
at this point, even though the two are not distinctly dressed for the part, as they are with the Nāgara.

The homage is continued, for after they have washed their feet, the parents apply drops of the water used for washing¹ to their own eyes and put it on their heads. This done, the mother and father must wash their own hands (since they have touched feet), and then they make the red mark on the foreheads of the pair and put grains of rice on the mark.

They next present the boy and girl with certain vessels, which they will find useful in their new life. The biggest is usually a great pot of copper or German silver for holding bath-water, and there is another for milk, besides several smaller ones for ordinary purposes. Sometimes the bride and bridegroom exchange garlands, but this is not done amongst the Nāgara.

The father now takes water in his right hand, and holds it in the cavity below the second and third finger, keeping his first finger bent and his little finger stuck stiffly out. The priest recites the day and date by saying: ‘On Wednesday (or whatever the day may be) of the bright half of the month (so and so) of the (astrological) year (Śālivāhana) in order to perfect my gift of the bride I give these things to the bridegroom’, and as the priest speaks, the father holds the water in his hand, and then pours it into a brass vessel. This is called the Golden Śrāddha (Hiranyāsrāddha).

Meanwhile the mother puts her hand on the right shoulder of the father to show that they jointly make the gift. Now follows the actual gift. The father takes water in his hand in the same way as he did before, and the priest again recites the date, but then goes on to say (and the father repeats the words after him): ‘This girl, being adorned according to my ability, wearing ivory bangles and no metal, having tied the madana fruit, giving fruits, making provision for her with gold accord-

¹ In the same way devotees during their evening worship in temples often put drops of water in which the idol has been washed to their eyes or to their lips.
ing to my power, she being healthy and possessing the features, &c., prescribed in the Scriptures, in order to elevate my one-hundred-and-one families as long as the sun and the moon continue to shine, and for the purpose of begetting children, I bestow such a bride on the bridegroom who resembles Prajāpati.' Whilst saying this, the girl's father puts the right hand of the bride, which is filled with rice, silver or gold, water, and darbha-grass, on to the right hand of the bridegroom 'as though on to a throne'.

The bride's mother, putting rice and red powder into a bell-metal pot, which she is about to give to the bridegroom, says: 'I also give', and until she says these words, the bride is not given. Meanwhile the priest recites the gotra of both bride and bridegroom to prove that they are not within the prohibited 1 degrees. He mentions the great-grandfather, the grandfather, and the father of the boy and of the girl, and then says: 'I bestow the bride on the great-grandson of so and so, of the . . . gotra of the . . . Veda and of the . . . Śākhā'.

With certain Brāhmans the gift of the bride must take place at sunset and be completed before the sun has passed more than half-way down to the horizon. A man is specially stationed to watch the sun, and he rings a bell when the exact moment comes for making the gift.

The rest of the proceedings are not supposed to be so entrancing as to endanger the sanity of the bridegroom's mother, so at this stage the bride's mother is dispatched to bring her. Arrived at the lodging, the girl's mother embraces the boy's mother, and then salutes her by bowing down to her feet. 2

This formidable dame comes wearing a sort of crown made

1 Once, at least, within recent years in Kāṭhiāwār, when the gotra were recited, it was perceived that the pair were near of kin, and amidst endless fuss the wedding was broken off, but the bride was not considered a widow.

2 Another point of difference between East and West that always interests Hindus is that with us it is the bride's mother who is the mother-in-law to be feared, conciliated, and revered; with them the alarming lady, 'the SHE-who-is-to-be-obeyed', is the bridegroom's mother.
of plantain leaves decorated with gold paper and tinsel. It is usually round or triangular in shape, and in the case of wealthy people the crown is often adorned with real pearls.

When she sees her daughter-in-law, she takes off the extra sari of ceremony and presents it to her.

Some Brähmans hold that of all the multifarious ceremonies that can be performed in connexion with a wedding only ten rites are essential; these are: the feet-washing, honey-sipping, rice-throwing, date-naming, present-making, clothes-donning, bride-giving, oath-taking, seven steps, and feeding. It will cheer even the most industrious student of modern Hinduism to count up how many of these ceremonies we have worked through, for by now we are in the middle of the bride-giving and have arrived at the important point of thread-girding.

A string is prepared made of twenty-four threads of white cotton, each of which is in length four times the length of the bridegroom’s or the bride’s forearm, and this the priest puts like a chain round the neck of both bride and groom. (Precisians say that a twofold strand of cotton ought to be wound seven times round the waist of the bride and groom and five times round their necks, and this is still done by certain Dakhaṇi Brähmans.) Once the bride and groom have taken their seats, they ought not to move at all till the priest gives permission, so the priest is supposed to look at them when they are seated, measure with his eye the distance they are from each other, and then make the thread exactly the requisite length. As a matter of fact, however, the cord is prepared beforehand, and they do gently move nearer or farther apart to suit it.

We have noticed the bride and bridegroom’s costumes; at this point, whilst he is arranging the thread, we may stay to observe the priest’s. He wears the auspicious red turban and has the red mark on his forehead, and his white loin-cloth has a red border. His coat is white, but his scarf of ceremony is very likely to be red, though it may be any auspicious colour,
such as pink or yellow, provided it is neither black, blue, nor white.

We saw the parents' clothes knotted together; in the same way one corner of the bride's sari, containing a small silver coin, some rice, and some red powder, is tied to an end of the bridegroom's scarf holding rice and areca-nut.

Then the bride's parents say: 'We give this daughter: you accept her'. The bridegroom says: 'I accept this bride. May you be blessed.' Here he uses the word Svasti, which, as it is the ordinary word used in returning thanks for a gift, is never employed by the Nagara, who never accept gifts, save on this occasion. Then the priest (in default of the bridegroom, who does not usually know the words!) says: 'O bride, you are given by heaven: let earth accept you'. After this the bride's father, joining his hands together, beseeches the bridegroom to act in unison with the bride in their religious duties, worldly business, passion, and all enjoyment. 'Do not', the father goes on to urge, 'act against her wishes, for she is the giver of all your welfare; but above all, perform all your religious rites together.'

The bridegroom replies: 'I will not act contrary to her wishes'. And the girl's father says: 'May I always have brides at my side, that by giving them in marriage I may attain salvation'.

This is followed by the blessing. The father kneels with the left knee bent and the right on the ground, and holding a copper vessel on his right shoulder. This vessel is filled with water, and in it are five mango or aśoka leaves, betel-leaf, rice, red powder, flowers, a coco-nut, and some silver coins. The

1 So particular are the Nagara never to receive alms, that teachers in schools are not permitted by the caste to receive even scarves of honour at the school prize-givings.

2 This refers to a very noteworthy custom amongst Brahmans, though but little known to Europeans, which compels a husband to do much of his worship with his wife at his side. It is a beautiful parallel to the Christian ideal of husband and wife being 'heirs together of the grace of life', that the Brahman wife is called her husband's Sahadharmatariṇī (She who helps in the fulfilment of duties). So necessary is a wife's presence when sacrificing, that Rāma, when he had sent Sītā away, was obliged to make a golden image of her to keep at his side when worshipping.
priest repeats mantras of blessing over the pair and sprinkles them with one of the leaves dipped in water. Then, turning to the bride, he says: 'Don't look at your husband with rage in your eyes,' get rid of such signs as give your husband pain. Take care of the cattle. Be of nice mind and of cheerful countenance. May your sons be brave. Be full of love to God. Bring good fortune to men and animals.'

Then, mentioning his wife's name for the one and only time in his life, the bridegroom says: 'May the god Hiranyaparna (an epithet of Viṣṇu) make Tārā (or whatever the wife's name is) devoted to me'.

The priest, in default of the bridegroom, says: 'Soma gave this girl to Gandharva, Gandharva gave her to Agni, and Agni gave her to me, together with wealth and sons. Wealth and sons Agni will give me'; and then turning to the fire, he says: 'May I treat her as my wife'.

Whilst under the guardianship of the gods, they believe, the ward was dowered by Soma, the god of the moon, with coolness, chastity, forgiveness, and moon-like beauty; by Gandharva, the god of music, with a sweet voice, skill to play on musical instruments, and a harmonious temper; whilst Agni, the fire, taught her to be as serviceable as is fire and endued her with its special qualities of brightness and quickness.

She will remain still under the protection of the gods for some three days longer, and so must observe celibacy at least for that period. As we noticed earlier, it was because the child was the ward successively for two years of each of these three gods that she could not be married until she was six.

This ends the gift of the bride. At its completion at least two fortunate women, one of whom is related to the bride and the other to the bridegroom, go up to the happy pair and wish them good luck and throw coloured grains of rice over their heads; and then, to take away any ill luck that may befall the

1 The Brāhmans are very indignant at Dr. Oldenberg's use here in his translation (S. B. E. xxix, p. 278, par. 16) of the term 'evil eye', which they declare never to be the property of a Twice-born.
THE WEDDING

couple, these women crack their knuckles against their own temples.

At the conclusion, the bride and bridegroom go into the house and enter that room at the back where earlier we saw Gaṇeśa and fifteen goddesses installed. Both girl and boy offer a coco-nut and a silver coin worth at least four annas. In the case of Nāgara, the priest then conducts the worship of these deities, which takes about fifteen minutes, whilst the couple sit on special stools in front. With certain other Brāhmans, the pair conduct their own worship. Seated in front of the gods, the bridegroom offers his wife some gold or silver; then they break the coco-nut, a few pieces are given to Gaṇeśa, and the rest to children.

This done, the bridegroom seizes the bride’s hand in such a way as to enclose in his own not only all her fingers but also the thumb (the inclusion of the thumb is most important, as it ensures the birth of sons!), and leads her to the square which had been fenced off by string and water-pots, and in which we saw the fire placed. The girl and boy circumambulate this fire once, and then sit to the west of it on darbha-grass. Then the bridegroom says: ‘I have received this girl as my bride; to confirm her as my wife, I shall now offer sacrifice to the Fire’. Thereupon the bride, as a true fellow-worshipper with her husband, puts her hand beneath his, whilst he makes the offerings to the fire. The priest repeats mantras, and the husband pours clarified butter into the flames; first to four gods: i.e. Prajāpati, Indra, Agni, and Soma; and then, to atone for any defilement accidentally acquired, or for any mistakes which have been made during the ceremony, he also offers melted butter to Agni, Vāyu, Sūrya, Agni-Varuṇa, Sāvītṛi, Viṣṇu, Viśvedevāḥ, Marutaḥ, Svāhā, and Varuṇa.

These preliminary offerings are followed by another series of sacrifices (Rāṣṭra-bhrīt-homa), whose object is to fit the bridegroom for the duties of a householder; he pours clarified butter into the fire in honour of divinities, such as Gandharva, Oṣadhi, and Apsarā.
A second series of offerings to the fire (\textit{Jaya-homa}) wins bodily strength for the young husband; and this is followed by a third succession of offerings (\textit{Abhyatana}) with the object of gaining the protection of certain gods, such as Indra, Agni, and Yama. It is a highly dramatic moment when the offering is made to the dread god of death and judgement. The bridegroom himself cannot perform it, but a curtain is drawn, behind which the priest makes the offering, and then water is sprinkled on the head of the bridegroom, to purify him and to protect him from the inauspiciousness that the very mention of Yama has created.

The succeeding set of offerings (\textit{Lajahoma}) is a beautiful symbol of that pure and passionless love which has been called the most disinterested of all affection, the love uniting a brother and sister. The bride's brother approaches and pours into his little sister's joined hands parched grains (\textit{lajà}), husked rice, and \textit{samī} leaves, the bridegroom meanwhile putting his arm round her shoulder and his hand underneath her hand. (Failing a brother, a cousin has to act.) Then, first looking carefully at the fire to see that it is not smoking, for of course no offering of any kind can ever be made to a smoking fire, the bride pours the contents of her hands by degrees into the fire three times.

The first time she says: 'May the god Aryamā never separate me from my husband'. The second time she prays: 'May my husband and my kinsfolk have long lives'; and she asks at the third offering: 'May we win the love of each other. May Agni grant it.' In the palm of the bride's hand are put an areca-nut, a betel-leaf, and four annas, and the bridegroom grasps it (again folding in the thumb to obtain

\footnote{\textit{Prospis spicigeru}. These are the leaves worshipped at the Daserā festival.}

\footnote{A girl feels it dreadfully if she has no brother to play this part, and her grief is pathetic if he has recently died.}

\footnote{Flames are the mouth in which Agni receives an offering, and until the names appear, the mouth of the god is not in the fire. Smoke, too, is the sign of the anger of the god, and when he is in that mood he receives no offering. \textit{Cf. Psalm lxxiv. 1}.}
sons), and together they circumambulate the fire, going towards the right to show that Lājāhona has been done.

Before the preceding sacrifice was begun, a large stone had been set up in the north-east of the enclosed square. Beside the stone on a low wooden stool were placed two pieces of cloth, a white one holding rice and a red one containing wheat; the top of the stone was reddened with red lead, and at its side two coco-nuts were arranged. This stone is believed, by the Nāgara at least, to represent Pārvatī. The bride now approaches the stone and touches it with her foot, or rather the bridegroom stoops down, and taking the bride's toe in his hand, touches the stone with it. This is a noticeable epoch in the life of the girl; hitherto she, like all other children, had freely touched the auspicious red powder made of turmeric, &c.; but now her toe actually comes into contact with the red lead which is on the stone, a substance she has never been allowed to touch before.

On the wooden stool beside this stone we must also notice a copper pot of water, into which have been put five different kinds of leaves, besides an areca-nut, a pice, unbroken rice, and some turmeric powder. This vessel and its contents represent Brahmā, Viṣṇu, Śiva, Lakṣmī, and Pārvatī, as well as the nine planets and the ten guardians of the quarters.

As the bridegroom touches the stone with the bride's toe, he says to her, after varying introductory sentences, the important words: 'I am strong, you are strong. I am the sky, you are the earth. We shall both wear the yoke\(^1\) of life together. Let us have many sons. May they be long-lived and prudent. May we be loved by all. May we have cheerful countenances and liberal minds. May our eyesight last a hundred years, may we live a hundred years and be able to hear good things for a hundred years. Be firm as a stone. Make a firm stand against the six interior foes.\(^2\) The four gods, Bhaga, Aryamā,

---

1. Before the ceremony commences, a yoke is placed near the seats of the bride and bridegroom.
2. These are: unbridled passion, anger, arrogance, infatuation, covetousness, envy.
Savitā, Purandhī, have given you to me that I may live as a householder."

Then the bridegroom and his wife walk round the fire till they reach their seats. It is worth noticing the precedence: as a rule, the wife walks meekly behind her husband, but on this (as on the occasion of every other religious rite) the wife precedes her lord. When their seats are reached, the bride stands to the right and the groom to the left, and verses of blessing are read.

Then twice more they circumambulate the fire, touching the stone and saying exactly the same words.

On the fourth round, the brother pours the rest of the parched grain out of a winnowing fan into the hands of his sister, and she offers it to the fire in absolute silence.1 This time, when the stone is reached, the bridegroom walks ahead of the bride till they reach the seat, when they change stools, the bride sitting where the groom had been, and vice versa; but they do not hurry to do this, for here again the old plaisanterie crops up. Whoever sits first will be the ruled over, and whoever takes his seat last is to be the dominant partner.

Before proceeding to study the next rite, the all-important seven steps, we might look for a minute at an interesting divergence of belief about the stone. We saw that the Nāgara held that it represented Pārvatī, but some other Brāhmans say it represents Gaṇeṣa, and others again the Guardian of Boundaries (Kṣetrapāla, an epithet of Śiva). These last say that, if the young couple do not hit it off well as the years go on, the reason for their quarrels must be that Kṣetrapāla has not given up his rights over the wife. So they all go to some field at the boundary of the village, and there they make four heaps of earth, enclosing a square, and put a reddened stone in the middle. The husband and wife, as it were, start afresh and circumambulate the stone four times, hoping thereby to propitiate the god.

This is an exceedingly shrewd way of making up quarrels

1 Contr. Oldenberg, S. B. E. xxix, p. 283, par. 5.
between young married people; and if it could be introduced into England should save many separations. Nobody is blamed; nobody even inquires into the reason for the disputes, and so nobody interferes between the husband and wife. The whole blame is put on a god outside the domestic machine, and the young folk are given the chance of an entirely new start. The objectivity of the ceremony would help them; at the same time the publicity of it all would make them not over-anxious to quarrel again.

Then follows the all-important rite of taking the seven steps. Until these seven steps are consummated, the bridegroom has no rights over the bride; indeed, if he died before they were all taken, the bride would not be looked upon as having been married, and therefore, not being widowed, could marry another man.

(It must be remembered that, as in the case of the honey-sipping, which we saw was not confined to a wedding, but was an act of profound homage that could be rendered on other fit occasions, so the taking of the seven steps is not only the making of a solemn bond of union between husband and wife, but is done when any two friends desire to swear eternal union. Students at college and boys at school, who want to be lifelong friends, nowadays take seven steps ceremonially round a fire, and the story runs in the Rāmāyana that when Rāma formed an alliance with the monkey king Suśrīva, they sealed the compact by stepping seven times round the fire.)

We shall see that after each of the steps they call Viṣṇu as witness. He is the protector of the Universe and takes more interest in looking after young married people than does the god Śiva, the usual deity of the Brāhmans. Seven small heaps of rice are made in a straight line from south to north of the fire (they are made to the north, because it is there that the seven Riśis are); and on each heap are arranged seven

1 It is because a king like Viṣṇu should be a protection to the earth that every ruling chief, on coming to the throne, is looked on as an incarnation of Viṣṇu, and so, whatever may be his own particular sect, on the day of his installation his forehead is marked with the symbol of Viṣṇu.
arca-nuts, seven pice, and seven dates. The bridegroom says: 'I will worship these seven heaps, which represent the seven ancient mountains, with the fivefold worship'.

In the old days the bride, accompanied by the groom, took seven actual steps from heap to heap; nowadays, however, whilst sitting, she contents herself with sticking out her toe and touching each separate heap after the appropriate sentence. For instance, the bridegroom says: 'Take one step with me, and I promise to feed you as long as you live: Viṣṇu is witness'; and the bride touches the first heap with her toe.

'Take a second step with me', the boy says again, 'and I promise to behave in such a way that your face shall always shine with inward health: Viṣṇu is witness'; and the girl touches the second heap.

'Take a third step with me, and I will give you wealth, prosperity, and the luxuries that can be bought with wealth: Viṣṇu is witness.'

'Take a fourth step with me; I will be answerable for your well-being: Viṣṇu is witness.'

'Take a fifth step with me; I will see that you have cattle: Viṣṇu is witness.'

'Take a sixth step with me; I promise to pay you my dues as your husband at the right seasons: Viṣṇu is witness.'

Then finally and beautifully he says: 'O friend, take the seventh step with me and become my friend in reality and follow me'.

At the time when the rite of the seven steps is being performed, a Brāhmaṇa stands to the south of the fire, holding a water-vessel, and when the ceremony is completed, he sprinkles water from it over the young husband and wife with a mango leaf; or sometimes the husband himself sprinkles it over his wife, whilst the priest recites mantras of blessing.

1 All the pundits whom the writer has consulted disagree with Dr. Oldenberg's translation of the sūtra concerning the seven steps: 'One for sap, two for juice, three for the prospering of wealth, four for comfort, five for cattle, six for the seasons. Friend! be with seven steps (united to me). So be thou devoted to me.' S.B.E. xxix, p. 283.
THE WEDDING

If the wedding takes place by day, the newly made husband asks his wife to look at the sun; if it is not over till the evening, at the pole-star. Whilst they are gazing, they each hold in their hands a silver coin and a coco-nut marked with the auspicious dot.

If it is the sun that they are looking at, they say: 'May we be able to gaze at the sun for one hundred autumns; the sun which is the eye of the Creator, which does good to gods, and which rises brilliantly in the east. May we live and hear the praises of the sun for one hundred years. May we never for one hundred years need to beg from others, and may we live for more than a hundred years.'

If, however, they are gazing at the sky at night, the husband says to his wife: 'Look at the pole-star.' Whether she can see it or not, she must say: 'I see the star,' on which the bridegroom asks: 'Are you sure that you have seen the pole-star?' The Sanskrit word for pole-star means 'firmly fixed' or 'faithful', so it would be unlucky for the bride to say that she could not see it; accordingly, whether she has distinguished it or not, she again says that she sees it.

The bridegroom replies: 'Thou art faithful; I regard thee as faithful; be thou faithful to me and to those whom I provide for. Brihaspati gave thee to me; gain children through me, your husband, and live for a hundred autumns.'

After they have looked at either the sun or the pole-star, they return to their seats, and the bridegroom, putting his hand four times on the right shoulder of the bride, repeats four different sentences. At the end of each of these sentences he lays his hand on his own heart (in strict accord with the best histrionic tradition!).

1 I am indebted to Dr. Griswold for the following references:
1 'Grant unto us to see a hundred autumns.' R.V. II. 2710.
1 'Give us a hundred autumns for our lifetime.' R.V. III. 3619.
1 'A hundred autumns may we see that bright eye.' R.V. VII. 6618.
1 'May they survive a hundred lengthened autumns.' R.V. X. 18.
1 'A hundred autumns let him live.' R.V. 8519 (from the great wedding hymn).
1 'Live waxing in thy strength a hundred autumns.' R.V. X. 1614.
The first time he does this he says: 'In every vow I take I shall consult thy heart'; the second time: 'Let thy mind follow my mind'; next: 'Willingly and lovingly obey my words'; and lastly: 'May Prajāpati unite thee to me for the sake of children'.

This done, the husband says to the 'lucky women' who are standing near: 'O happy women, go to my bride, look at her and wish her good luck'. Four different times different women circumambulate the young wife, carrying husked rice in the corner of their sāris. When one has completed the first round, she gives the girl a little rice and whispers in her right ear (being very careful meanwhile not to put her hand on the bride's head): 'May you experience the good fortune of Indra and Indrāṇī'. The girl in return gives the lucky women five areca-nuts. Then another woman steps forward, and after having walked round the bride and given her the rice, whispers: 'May you have the good luck of Kṛisṇa and Rukmiṇī' or 'of Viṣṇu and Laksīmi', and receives in her turn the five areca-nuts. The same process is repeated in the case of the third woman, who whispers: 'I wish you the good fortune of Brahmā and Sāvītṛi'; and the fourth woman prays that they may know the happiness of Śiva and Pārvatī.

It is interesting to notice that no one wishes them the happiness of Rāma and Sitā, because, through her husband's mistrust, poor Sitā experienced terrible unhappiness,¹ and some also say that because Rāma is the god called on at the time of death, it would be unlucky to take his name now at a wedding.

Next, the bride's mother brings a bronze plate, containing some red powder, wheat, and sugar, in the one hand, and in the other some clarified butter in a sort of teapot. She puts both hands loosely together, and then dribbles four handfuls of this red mixture out between her little fingers² on to an empty plate which was in the special square.

¹ This is the reason why so few Brāhmans call their children Sitā.
² It must always be remembered that gifts to men are thus given from
THE WEDDING

The bride's mother is wearing on her head a triangle of plantain leaves decorated with gold, and she now holds an auspicious lamp in one hand, makes the auspicious dot on the forehead of both husband and wife, and sticks rice grains on to it.

At this point the young couple should properly take their seats on a red bull's hide, but as this is the Degenerate Age (Kaliyuga), they just have to do the best they can and be content with seats of darbha-grass.

The husband puts some of the mixture from the plate into the fire, saying: 'Take away whatever vices there may be in my wife'.

Then he takes another morsel from the plate and asks his bride to eat it. This is noteworthy as being the only time in their lives when husband and wife can share the unifying sacrament of a common meal. Unfortunately in some parts of India the bride is so closely veiled all through the ceremony that she cannot do more than make a feint of eating; but amongst those Brāhmans who do not veil their brides so closely the wife does really eat now with her husband, and continues to do so for the three or four days of the wedding festivities.

However, whether the bride actually eats or only pretends to do so, the husband, as he offers the first mouthful, says: 'I give you this morsel and unite my life with yours'. With the second morsel: 'I unite my bones with your bones'. Then: 'I unite my flesh with your flesh';¹ and again 'I unite my skin with your skin'. So closely does this symbolized feast unite them, that the wife is considered to be the half of her husband's body. It is not at all difficult therefore for a Brāhman to understand the Christian mystic belief in the union wrought by the great Common Meal of Holy Communion.

between the two hands; gifts to gods are poured out from the flattened palms over the finger tips; and offerings to the dead are poured outwards by the side of the thumbs.

¹ Cf. 'This is now bone of my bones and flesh of my flesh'. Genesis ii. 23.
The bridegroom then touches the bride's right shoulder and, putting his hand back to his heart, says: 'O Lady of the sweetly divided hair, I know the tenderness and the moon-like purity of your heart. May that heart know my heart.'

The wife then in silence gives four morsels to her husband to eat.

The plate which has held the material for the common meal is now cleared, and some milk and red powder (the gulāla used at Holi) are sprinkled on it, and the priest, in order to intimate that (as at Phil the Fluter's Ball) the guests may now contribute to the funds, proceeds to recite some such verse as: 'Any present given on any of five occasions—marriage, the fourteenth of January, an eclipse, the birth of a son, the extra day of a month—brings eternal merit.' This scarcely-veiled hint is promptly acted on, and all the friends and relatives hasten to put some money on the empty plate. Anything that the married daughters and sisters give is received and then returned; with regard to the other presents, no concealment of value is attempted: a friend of the family carefully notes down the name of every donor and the amount that he or she gives, so that exactly that amount, whether it be one or two rupees, may be given in return when there shall be a wedding in the donor's family. The collection is then handed over to the young couple.

Amongst certain Brāhmans it is at this point that the gift of a cow is made. Any one who is willing presents the young folk with a cow by the easy and inexpensive process of putting anything from a rupee to four annas on to another plate. But, simple as the method is, so much merit is acquired that even a casual passer-by is often anxious to contribute.

The priests—there are very often five—who have been officiating, share in the general present-giving. The old rule was that a Brāhman should give a cow, a ruling chief a village,

1 The reference to the hair is made because amongst many Brāhmans the hair is never parted till a girl's wedding day. At the commencement of the ceremonies some 'fortunate' woman usually makes an auspicious mark on the bride's forehead at the beginning of the parting.
and a merchant a horse to the priest who married his daughter; but it is usual nowadays for the alms to be given in cash.

At this point the father and mother, who now realize that their daughter is actually married and going to leave them, are permitted, nay rather encouraged, to weep. It would have been unlucky to have had any tears shed earlier in the proceedings.

The thread or cord which has encircled and united the necks of the newly married husband and wife is now taken off by some 'happy' woman and put round the neck of the bride alone, who will wear it for four or five days.

The bridegroom takes his little wife in his arms and holds her up so that she may take down one of the uppermost of the earthen water-pots fencing in the square.

She puts it down and scatters rice grains over the square, thus dismissing Agni and the other gods who had taken up their abode there.

Afterwards they go and bow to Gaṇeśa and give him a coco-nut and four annas, to thank him for having allowed everything to pass off successfully without playing any of his mischievous pranks. In many families they next go and bow to all their seniors and offer each of them a coco-nut and some coins. The bride and bridegroom are then given a piece of sugar, which let no man say they have not earned!
CHAPTER V

AFTER THE WEDDING


The bride’s father, even when the young couple are safely married, has not yet finished with his expenses, for among the Nāgara, at any rate, he has to provide nine more meals.¹

At these feasts the young bridegroom is given the most prominent place, even his own father playing a subordinate part to his. At each meal he sits on a painted stool and should, if possible, eat off silver plate and drink from a silver cup; not only so, but his palate is consulted as to the dishes provided. As a rule, laḍḍu and other sweets are given, but, if the young husband so desires, mangoes and a sort of milk pudding are substituted.

When the gentlemen have withdrawn, the ladies come to dine. The dishes used by the men are removed, and water sprinkled to purify the ground, after which the ladies take their seats and begin, the bride being seated at the same place, and, if possible, on the same stool, that her husband had sat on. Every morning of the four or five days that the feasting lasts the bridegroom’s sister goes to the bride’s house and plaits her hair and gives her flowers, cardamom seeds, and spices.

¹ The Oxford undergraduate who took for the motto of his college career Poor Fa Pays has much in common with his Indian brother; with the latter, however, it is the father-in-law who has to ‘fork out’.
It will be remembered that amongst the Nāgara the young bride and bridegroom were looked on as incarnations of Śiva and Pārvatī1 (hence the religious merit derived from worshipping them), and for three nights, at the very least, they have observed celibacy and abstained from salted food. Nor is this all, but during the days when they are representatives of the deity they must not bathe, so after the bath of ceremony taken on the wedding day they can bathe no more for three days. In the same way, the white cloth which each put on when they began to play the part of the great ascetic and his wife must not be taken off night or day till these three days have elapsed, but, on the third day after the wedding, they take off the cloth and bathe, so washing away their divinity. Even then they do not become ordinary mortals, for they are looked on as a king and queen till the end of the festivities, and as such the groom wields a sword.2 A Brāhman, however, only holds the sword (which other bridegrooms keep all the time) for an hour or so. The respective fathers-in-law provide each of the happy pair with a new dress to put on after the bath, the bridegroom's being of red silk with a gold border, and the bride's of any coloured silk, or the parents may compound by giving them each five or ten rupees in cash.3

The biggest feast of all (the Gaurava) takes place on the third day with the followers of Śiva (and on the fourth with the followers of Viṣṇu), when about eighty or a hundred dishes are provided.

At this big dinner the bride is usually given very handsome presents in gold or cash by her father-in-law and other relatives.

Though now married, the husband and wife will sleep in

---

1 By the twice-born castes other than Brāhmans, and even by some of the low castes, the bridegroom is looked on as a king, not a divinity.
2 No permission from the state is needed for the bridegroom to hold this sword, so agreed is every one that for the time being he is a king.
3 When cash is given in lieu of the actual thing, the full equivalent in value is never paid.
different rooms for three nights, during which time they should not eat anything salt or acid. Of course, if the bride is very young, she will not go to live in the house of her mother-in-law for some time; but even if older, they should not begin their married life together, the Scriptures say, for a year, or, if this is not possible, for twelve nights, or for six, or, at least, for three.

As we saw, the wife is called the half of her husband's body. It is interesting to notice that the left side of a married man is supposed to be a form of his wife. A wife can sit on her husband's left knee, but never on his right. A daughter or daughter-in-law can never sit on his left.\(^1\)

At the end of all the feasting on the fifth day the bride's father calls all the relatives of the bridegroom and gives every one a present, usually turbans to the men and sāris to the ladies; whilst to the bridegroom he gives a complete and very handsome new suit: loin-cloth, gold-edged turban,\(^2\) silk shirt, silk coat, shoes, and even watch, chain, and gold ring.

The groom was reckoned a king from the time he bathed and washed away his divinity; now he is dressed like one. Meanwhile the bride puts on her best dress and is sent with her husband in a procession to visit the temples and offer coco-nuts and small silver coins to the gods. With some Brāhmans (not Nāgara for instance) this going to the temples is followed by the departure of the wife on a visit to her husband's house.\(^3\) If the visit is to be paid now, when the

---

1 In the Mahābhārata, for instance, King Pratīpa was performing penances in the forest by the side of the river Ganges, when that river herself came and sat on his right knee in the most forward manner and asked him to marry her. He told her that she could be his daughter or become his daughter-in-law, but as she had sat on his right knee (instead of his left), she could never be his wife; so without more ado she just married his son.

2 If the bride's father is a poor man, he only gives a turban and not a whole suit.

3 In any case she would not go to her husband's house now to stay for more than a month. She would then return for six months to her own home before the final departure.
bride is ready to leave, the ladies of the house sing on her behalf:

'I am now going to another family;
Now, if you can afford it, give me anything you can;
I ask that you shall always speak lovingly of me.
I am like a sparrow living in a green forest:
As it dries up, I fly away.'

Whilst this is being sung, her father and mother and brothers all weep.

Then follows a rite which must bear a close resemblance to the farewell a sati took of her home when going out to mount the funeral pyre. The happy bride (like the heart-broken widow) goes to the gate of the compound and stands there, holding a plate of a mixture of turmeric and alum, red in colour. Her relatives all come and, bowing down to her feet with joined hands, wish her happiness, and in return she throws rice grains on their heads and blesses them. This done, she dips her hands in the red mixture and imprints them on the wall. (As each part of the hand is indwelt by a different god, these red hands printed on the wall are equivalent to saying: 'May Viṣṇu and Lākṣmī dwell in your house and bless you'.) The bridegroom marks the wall with the print of his red hands exactly under hers, and among certain Brāhmans red auspicious marks are made on the bride's dress as the young couple get into the cart, and the boy's scarf is tied to the girl's sārī.

A special jar of provisions is now prepared, and into it are put rice, coco-nut, tennis-ball-like sweets (laḍḍus), and the wafer biscuits which were got ready before the wedding. On the top of the jar a small vessel is placed, and the whole thing is covered with green silk and put in the forefront of the cart that is to take the bride to her husband's house. Arrived there, the contents of the jar are distributed by the bride amongst her new relatives, though she is careful to keep some of this food for herself.

1 This is not done by Nāgara.
The bride is probably quite young, about eight or nine, and so is only going now for a month's visit to her husband's house; but before she leaves home, the wheel of the cart must be worshipped. The bride's mother comes out of the house, wearing the crown of plantain leaves and the additional ritual sārī, and goes to the cart, while the priest stands beside her. Water is poured over the right wheel of the vehicle, and then clarified butter, and it is sprinkled with red turmeric and rice grains. The bride's mother then throws pulse over the wheel, to show that it may start. A coco-nut, meanwhile, is carefully chosen and inspected, to make sure it contains milk, and if it looks satisfactory, it is thrust under the wheel in such a way that the first revolution must crush it.

The wheel, always a sacred object in the East,¹ is amongst Brāhmans regarded as a symbol of Viṣṇu, and so, by worshipping it, the mother (poor anxious soul!) seeks protection from the Protector-god against danger from robbers, obstacles, and bad roads for her little daughter, who is about to pass out of her loving care.

If the coco-nut prove to be bad, it is indeed an evil omen, foretelling some sad catastrophe that will befall the girl. If, however, the coco-nut be as good as the mother's anxious care had hoped, the broken pieces are given to the little bride to keep in her sārī.

As we saw with regard to this visit, the customs of the Nāgara, for instance, differ from those of many other Brāhmans. For, whilst with Audīca and Sārvasvata Brāhmans, the bride, after elaborate farewells, goes for a month's visit to her father-in-law's house, with the Nāgara this is not done; but after the procession to the temples, the young couple separate, the bride going to her own home and the bridegroom to his. If, however, the two houses are in the same town, the bride, before they separate, goes to her husband's house and bows to her mother-in-law, her father-in-law and any

¹ In the old days soldiers similarly worshipped the right wheel of their chariots before going into battle.
other elderly ‘in-laws’ who may be present, places a coco-nut before the household god, and then goes home alone. A Nāgara bridegroom, though he sleeps in his own house, might go and dine in his wife’s house for a month, and she might similarly go to meals in his home for the same month.

With the Nāgara, the wedding booth is taken down at the end of the month, as a sign that everything is completed. The priest is called and says a few mantras over it, and then, throwing rice on it, gives Ganeśa leave to go. The bride’s father invites all the bridegroom’s relatives to a feast on that day, and with that the whole wedding ceremony ends.

With Brāhmans other than Nāgara, as the bride passes the wedding booth when starting for the visit to her husband’s house, she takes into her hands a winnowing-fan filled with pulse and throws some of the grain from it on to the booth, thus giving the gods leave to go. The booth is soon after pulled down, with the exception of the so-called Ruby Pillar, which, in the case of both Nāgara and other Brāhmans, is left standing in the compound until the rain falls on it at the beginning of the monsoon; it is then taken into the house, to wait till the river shall be in flood. As soon as the water is considered high enough, it is taken out of the house and flung away into the stream.

But to return to the bride, who is about to visit her husband’s house: her relatives escort her as far as the first river or tank; this, according to the Scriptures, they must not cross; so the mother fills a cup of water and gives it to her daughter to drink, to calm the girl’s sorrow and emotions, and then she herself goes weeping home.

Perhaps here we might record another custom, which, though more usual amongst Baniās than Brāhmans, is so full of the shrewd objectivity characteristic of Hindus as to be worth our studying.

With the Baniās, at all events, it is usual to put in the cart, along with the bride, an earthen-ware pot filled with
areca-nuts, rice, and dates, and covered with a yellow cloth. When the cart reaches the boundary of the township, this yellow wrapped jar is put down and left. With this jar all hurt feelings, touchiness, and grievances are also symbolically deposited. If the bridegroom’s party has been hurt by any accidental slight, or coolness of welcome, or failure of hospitality; or if the bride’s friends have been bored by the pretentions of the bridegroom’s sister, the airs of his mother, or the stupidity of his own jokes, all remembrance of slights or boredom is left behind with the jar. Think of the comfort some such custom would be in England! It would be a real heip if, every time that a bride felt irritated at the memory of how her ‘in-laws’ had tried to ‘boss’ her wedding, or dictate as to her honeymoon, she could say to herself: ‘I threw all recollection of that away for ever in the old jam-pot, which I flung out of the carriage window on the way to the station’! One never passes one of these yellow jars on the outskirts of a village without appreciative laughter and inward applause for the people who so markedly left their squabbles behind them, determined to carry no pettiness over into their new life. Certainly the peace-pot should find a place in the wedding ceremonies of the Christian Church in India, as should also many other of the really beautiful symbolic customs we have studied.

To return to our bride once more. When the cart reaches the entrance to the bridegroom’s village, the wedding party waits till evening, and then forms a procession and goes with beating of drums and loud music to the bridegroom’s home. Before the young husband enters, he is offered the four balls, plough, &c., by his mother or sister, just as his mother-in-law offered them to him on his wedding day. The bride is sometimes lifted over the threshold by her mother-in-law, or led by her into the house by means of the wedding thread she is still wearing round her neck. The wife and husband then go and worship Gâñesa.

This done, they sit opposite to each other, and no less than
twenty-two things are thrown over them; seven cowrie shells, seven dates, seven areca-nuts, and, most important of all, a gold ring. Four times these things are flung at them by the priest or the bridegroom's sister, and each time there is a great scramble as to who shall get the ring; for the ancient jest never stales, and the one who seizes the ring most frequently will prove to be the real ruler of the house. Now the knot that tied the husband's scarf to his wife's sāri is undone, and also the fruit that was bound on their wrists to guard them from the assaults of passion, the bride loosening that on her husband's wrist, and vice versa. The sāri and scarf, however, are untied by the husband's sister or aunt, who probably charges about five rupees for the service.

Then the bride salutes the feet of her mother-in-law and expects a present in return. The bridegroom salutes his father and uncles in similar fashion, but he gets no present.

The bride's visit lasts for a month, during which she is treated as a guest, doing no hard work, not sweeping or cooking or fetching water, but eating specially dainty dishes and sleeping in her husband's room, after the mindala has been taken off. When the month is over, she returns to her own mother's house and stays there generally for six or eleven months; if, however, owing to mourning or any other reason, she stays for more than eleven months, she will have to stay on twenty-five months, for she cannot leave in the second year.

Before the bride leaves her own home to go finally to her husband's and take up her abode there, an astrologer is always called in, to ensure that the departure shall take place on an auspicious day.

High-minded Brāhmans, whatever their sect, are nowadays most anxious that this final leave-taking and the girl's entering the state of wedlock should be postponed until she has attained physical puberty. Otherwise, as they say, the things that happen are too terrible to dwell on. There is nothing more pathetic than the sight of a little girl, treacherously
cheated out of her childhood, playing with her own immature baby, when she should still be playing with her dolls.

If, however, the young wife has married into an enlightened family, she will remain with her mother till the age of puberty is reached. Amongst certain Brāhmans, especially those who have come from the south, a festival is sometimes held at her father-in-law's house to celebrate her attainment of womanhood. The women-neighbours and friends come singing in procession and fill the corner of the girl's sāri with a coco-nut, green pulse, and areca-nuts, and then mark her forehead with turmeric.

Two gods and two goddesses should, according to the Scriptures, be worshipped at this crisis in the girl's development: Indra, Indrāṇi, Bhuvanesvara, and Bhuvanesvari (Śiva and his consort); and nine other deities: Mercury, Mars, Venus, Jupiter, Saturn, the moon, the sun, and the moon's ascending and descending nodes (Rāhu and Ketu). And if any of these seem inauspicious, they are propitiated by offerings.

As a matter of fact, all that generally happens nowadays is that for four days the girl is considered impure and may not cook, or grind, or worship, and if possible should not go outside the house. She sits on sacking or deer-skin, and may only sleep on a string bed, not on a mattress. She may use vessels of brass, but not of copper. After the fourth day she bathes in the house or courtyard, and puts on a green bodice and red sāri, her mother puts some molasses in her mouth, and she goes to visit her mother-in-law. That lady gives her a better bodice and sāri, of the same colour, but made of silk, and feasts her on molasses and sweetmeats. The daughter-in-law on her part worships the mother-in-law's feet and offers her two rupees. Once the bride has attained puberty, the completion of the trousseau is hurried on, and as soon as it is ready, the auspicious day is fixed for her to go to her husband's home.

As is well known, the young people do not go to their own home, but have to live with the bridegroom's parents. Two
or three men and women come to the bride's house to fetch
her; they are feasted there for a day or two, and then she
returns with them.

We saw that, with some Brāhmans, such as the Nāgara, the
bride does not pay the month's visit immediately after the
wedding, as is the usual custom with many other Brāhmans;
but the visit is only deferred, and when a Nāgara bride is
about fourteen or fifteen, she pays it, but always some months
after attaining puberty. Her father gives her ornaments and
clothes, and her parents-in-law receive her as an honoured
guest. She can order any food she likes, and all her wishes
are consulted in every way; her room is well furnished, and
(oh, crowning joy!) she wears her best clothes all the time.
Her school days generally end with this visit, but she may
play any indoor game she likes, and as she is bothered with no
housework, she can spend as long as she likes sewing or reading
or gossiping. In the evening her mother-in-law takes her out
calling on her different friends, and she displays her most
elaborate toilettes.

Among the Nāgara, she still goes back home after this visit,
but for a shorter period, generally only five or six months, and
then goes, not as a visitor, but as a wife, to take up her abode
permanently in her father-in-law's house.

After the final going to her husband's house, to show that
she is indeed a wife and not a visitor, the bride helps with the
cooking. The first meal she prepares is made the occasion of
a high festival. All the friends and relatives of the family are
invited, and the young wife triumphantly serves on silver plate
what she has cooked. It is an expensive meal (as a young wife's
first attempt at cooking usually is!) for each of the guests has to
bring her either money or jewellery when they come, and after
they have dined, they all put money on the silver dish, the
father-in-law, if wealthy, pleased and generous, leading the
way with one hundred and fifty rupees or a gold ornament,
but if miserly or dyspeptic, he has been known to give as little
as five rupees.
As a rule the elderly relatives will keep the cooking in their hands, and only allow the girl to help, but if they were ill, she would have to undertake it alone. If she have married into a poor family, she would probably have to get up at four to grind, and would go out morning and evening to the village well to fetch water; but a Nāgara lady, however poor, is never permitted to fetch water, to grind, or to sweep the house; so they often have to spend money on keeping a servant that they would far sooner expend otherwise.

Sometimes she goes home again for a short visit, and then comes back to her husband’s house, which henceforth seems her own. It is interesting to compare these visits to her old home with the English saying: ‘Ne bride ever feels really settled in her husband’s house till she has been home and seen that her old niche there is filled’.

But, whereas the English mother often whispers to her daughter: ‘Remember that the first year of married life is not the happiest’, thinking of the two strong wills that have to adjust themselves; the Indian mother’s whisper is: ‘Do not be as sweet as sugar, or they will overwhelm you with work, nor as sour as a nim leaf, or they will spit you out’; for she is thinking more of the child-wife’s position in a household of strange and often nagging women.

‘If it was the mother-in-law who broke it’, runs a proverb that throws much light on a young wife’s fate, ‘the pot was earthen; if the daughter-in-law, it was golden.’ ‘O mother-in-law’, is the pathetic appeal of another proverb, ‘be merciful: have you not also a daughter?’

The whole subject of wedding customs is engaging the attention of the reformers amongst the Brāhmans. The men, almost without exception, are anxious that the enormous expenses should be curtailed and the capital more profitably invested, but the women do not wish to be docked of any of their amusement. High-minded gentlemen, too, are very anxious that the vile and obscene expressions in many of the wedding songs should be expurgated, but India still awaits its Spenser and his Epithalamion.
AFTER THE WEDDING

After his wedding it is open to every Brāhmaṇ to choose whether he will be an ordinary householder, content at most with the full sixteen rites, or become an Agnihoṭri and observe forty-eight rites. If he choose the latter course, it will cost him some fifty thousand rupees, and he will probably ask the ruler of the state to grant him an annuity to defray his expenses in return for the merit he brings to the country. (Whether he gets it is another matter!)

There was recently a Nāgara in Rājkot who was an Agnihoṭri, and though he himself was a very rich man, two important ruling chiefs gave him annuities, and he was treated with the highest honour, as though he had been a great noble.

An Agnihoṭri brings the fire from his father-in-law’s house when he marries, and this is never allowed to go out as long as the wife lives. (This particular gentleman married again after his first wife’s death, and brought the fire afresh from his new father-in-law’s house.)

The fire is kept in a special room, which is closed all day, and only opened morning and evening for special worship (Homa). The room is so sacred that no one but the worshipper and his wife ever enter it, and relying on this sanctity, it is sometimes used as a secure hiding-place for treasure, for the average Hindu still distrusts banks. Twenty years ago an Agnihoṭri died in Rājkot, and the sacred fire was allowed to go out; when the sons came to dig up the altar, they found that a great deal of money had been buried beneath it.

Another rule the Agnihoṭri must observe is never to leave the town in which he lives, and above all never to cross the sea, or he will assuredly die. (Strangely enough, this was literally fulfilled in the first case we quoted, for that Agnihoṭri, being summoned by the ruling chief who was his patron, crossed the sea to go to him and died there.)

As a matter of fact, owing to the expense, very few Brahmins elect to become Agnihoṭri, but ordinary Brāhmaṇs do reverence to the fire, and offer five oblations to it, at least
before their first meal in the morning, if not before their evening one. In this book we shall choose for our study an ordinary Brāhmaṇ and not an Agnihotrī.

In Kāṭhīawār, at all events, the Vedic rites (of Garbhādhāna and Puṇīsavāna), to procure offspring and to ensure that it be male offspring, are not usually observed, but the newly married wife will have to keep certain fasts to gain either long life for her husband, or a son. (The horror of being left a widow gives colour and direction to all a Hindu woman's prayers, rites, and thoughts; and only second to that is her fear of barrenness.) All these fasts fall in the monsoon, that specially sacred and specially unhealthy period of the year.

The first fast (Tāpi Sātāma) occurs during the first month of the rains, usually on the seventh day of Āśāḍha. The previous day the wife is careful to make a specially big meal, for on the day itself she must neither eat nor drink, but spend the whole time praying for a long life for her husband. In the evening she and several other newly married wives go to the house of some gentleman of position and sing special songs (Rāsāḍā). All night they must keep awake, and, as they may not eat, they spend the whole night singing or dancing; next morning their host provides a repast of fruit and milk (which seems a particularly good-natured thing of him to do, as they must have kept him awake all night!) and at about eleven they go to their own homes and have a substantial feast. The good-natured host will have his sleep disturbed in this way once every year for some time, as the young wives observe this fast once a year for seven years from their wedding.

We have already discussed Molākāṇa, the great occasion in a girl's year. Married girls may not observe it, but they do not want to keep away from it, so they go to show off their new dignity and to guide, with great importance one may be sure, the little girls.

Wheat grains are worshipped on Divāsa, the last day of the
month Āṣāḍha. Nine days before the fast earth is brought from an ant-hill, mixed with powdered cow-dung, put into a shallow earthenware pot, and then sown with grains of wheat. When the actual day arrives, young wives get up early and go and bathe in a river (or, if Nāgara, bathe at home), and on returning home they light an earthenware lamp of clarified butter, which, whatever happens, must not be allowed to go out for the thirty-six hours during which the fast lasts. All that time the young wife keeps awake and may only take one slight repast of fruit, sweets, and uncooked food, which must be provided by the husband’s kin, even if the girl is still living in her mother’s house.

In the evening she worships the wheat. The pot in which it is growing is tied round with red cotton and put on a low stool marked with the svastika, and then the bride offers it the fivefold worship, as though to a god, marking it with the auspicious mark, offering flowers, incense, light, and fruit. After the fruit has been offered, the young wife herself eats it; then, wearing their best clothes, she and other young wives go to the same good-tempered man’s house that they visited before, and sing and dance all night. Of course their host gains both merit and good luck from their presence, which may partly reconcile him to these sleepless nights. The next morning the girls return home, but they do not seem to do anything very special that day (possibly because they are both tired and hungry) until the evening, after the cows have come home from grazing, when they break their fast and allow the lamp to go out at will. The object of this fast is, they say, to gain children, and long life for their husbands.

Every year for five years it is repeated, but there is a slight variation at the end of the fifth year, for then on the last day they invite five ‘fortunate’ women (none of whom, by the way, should be expectant mothers) and feast them. After the women have finished their treat, they are each given half a coco-nut and half a coco-nut kernel, some cardamon seeds, some cloves, an areca-nut, and a silver or copper coin.
The young wife, whose whole forehead is besmeared with red turmeric and rice, next washes the left big toe (not, as one might expect, the right) of each of the five women, first with water and then with milk, and afterwards makes the auspicious mark on the toe. Sometimes, if the young wife has no children, she observes this fast every year, even after the four years are past, until at last her desire is granted.

Many Brāhman ladies once a year, on the third day of the moonless half of the month Śrāvana, called ‘The Dumb Third’ (Mūṇiṛ Tṛīja), observe a day of absolute silence and fasting. They may grind and sweep and fetch water, but must not speak one word the whole day through. So terrible an austerity is naturally expected to bring a great reward, and the object of this silent fast is to gain a son, or long life for that son when one is born. If a son is born and dies, this fast cannot be observed till another son is born.

In the evening, still maintaining absolute silence, the wife goes and selects a little twig of pipal, on which (strange resemblance to St. Patrick!) three leaves are growing, side by side. These three leaves represent the three goddesses: Gaurī, Sāvitri, and Lākṣmī. On the central leaf the woman paints a svastika, or the word Śrī, and on the other two she makes the auspicious red mark. Then she herself dons a necklace of sixteen threads (which she considers to be equivalent to thirty-two, as there are sixteen strands on both sides of her neck), and ties sixteen knots in it. Next she lights a lamp of clarified butter, not in the shell but in the kernel of a coco-nut, and in order that the nut may not catch fire, she sprinkles it with wheat flour. This she arranges on a small heap of white millet, and, in front of the lighted coco-nut, before she breaks her own fast, she makes seven heaps of the food she is going to eat: half-crushed wheat, molasses, or sugar. The leaves have still to be worshipped, which the lady does by sprinkling them with turmeric and water, and then, and not till then, may she eat and speak. Afterwards she takes off the sixteen-thread necklace she has worn and
puts it away safely, knowing that she will want it again; for
next year, when she makes her new necklace, she takes out
this old one and puts it round the trunk of a pipal tree.
Finally, when she has finished her meal, she picks up the
coco-nut lamp and the three divine leaves and takes them
to the nearest temple of Śiva.

A wife begins to observe this fast when she is quite young,
and year after year she observes one painful day of silence,
until not only she herself, but also her son’s wife bear a son;
then the relieved grandmother takes off the thread necklace
for the last time and presents it to her daughter-in-law, with
the happy knowledge that from now on the only restraint
her tongue need know the whole year round will be that
imposed by absolute fatigue! Henceforth she may chatter
at will, till she can talk no longer!

The Nāgara ladies do not have to submit to this discipline of
silence; instead, they observe a fast called ‘The Dark Third’
(Kājaṭi Triya). In the evening they go again to that same
long-suffering gentleman’s house and sing, and, on returning
home, they eat fruits and sweets and keep awake till one in
the morning. Their object, like that of the other Brāhman
ladies, is to gain a son, and long life for their husbands, but
they only have to observe this fast for three days.

We shall study the other women’s fasts when we come to
the Brāhman sacred year; here we have only noticed those
that threw special light on the early married life of the
imaginary couple whose life story we are studying. One of
the aims of the fasts is to obtain offspring, and, supposing
that desire to be fulfilled, we can now turn to notice how an
expectant mother is guarded.
CHAPTER VI

THE DESIRE FOR A SON

Prenatal Care — Fifth Month Ceremony — Rules to be observed by an Expectant Mother — Offering to the Invincible Goddess — Hair-parting (Simanta) — The Horse Dance — DISAPPOINTMENTS — Remedies: Story of Kṛṣṇa — Planet Placating — Marrying a Calf to a Bull — The Worship of the Five — The Worship of the Three — Thirteen Black Pots — Seven Days' Reading of the Seventh Book — Co-MARRIAGE — ADOPTION — The Smelling of the Head.

If there are plenty of men folk in the household to which the young wife is going, and if her husband has both elder and younger brothers living, and all the sisters-in-law are the happy mothers of many children, the risks for the new wife are not so great.

But if there are no brothers-in-law and no children in the house, she is very much afraid of what a barren widowed sister-in-law may do to injure her unborn child.

Afraid or not, however, as soon as she is sure of her happy prospects, her own mother (if it so happens that she is still in her old home) sends word to the mother-in-law, and the girl goes to her husband's home, carrying a coco-nut and areca-nuts in the corner of her sārī.

On the way there, and after her arrival, she is on her guard against bewitched grain. For a jealous sister-in-law sometimes takes some grain to a religious mendicant, who mixes it with turmeric and says mantras over it; then, when the young wife's attention is distracted, the sister-in-law will contrive to stand opposite her and throw the fatal corn over her and so ruin all her hopes.

For fear of attracting the evil eye, the bride now gives up oiling her hair and wearing gay-coloured sārīs. She is sur-
rounded by kindness and thoughtfulness, but also by restrictions. She may not climb a hill, or go in a cart, or laugh or cry immoderately. She is fed on milk, rice, and wheat, and should avoid all highly spiced things. She is not allowed to see a dead body, or anything that might suggest death to her, such as a Muḥammadan tābut, or rope-dancers. She may not see anything unpleasant, such as a miser or a leper; and another restriction forbids her going to a house where a baby has been born. All the young wife's wishes must be fulfilled, or the child will suffer: for instance, if she covets an ear-ring, and it is not given to her, the chances are that the child will be born without a lobe to its ear.

In the fifth month an expectant mother goes through a special rite of preservation (Rakṣābandhana, the Binding of the Protective Thread) to ward off the evil eye, illness, or jealous spells. As a rule this ceremony is only performed before the birth of a first child, but, if any harm befall it, this and the seven-month ceremony are sometimes repeated before the birth of a second child. The astrologer is summoned to choose some auspicious day, generally a Sunday, Tuesday, or Wednesday, and all the near women-relatives of both bride and bridegroom are invited to the ceremony.

The expectant mother, wearing a red or green sārī with a gold border, which has been specially brought for the occasion, and which must not have one black spot on it, sits on a low stool in the centre of a red-besmeared square of ground. No men are allowed to be present, but all the ladies sit round her and sing songs, whilst the husband's sister smears turmeric and rice all over the young wife's forehead.

If she be a Nāgara, the guard (rakṣā) is tied on to her wrist by the same sister-in-law without more ado (it will probably be a silver or gold bangle with little bells). But, in the case of Sārasvata or Audīcā Brāhmans, the expectant mother first goes to the nearest well or river and fills a small pot with water. On her return, a 'lucky' woman stands on the threshold of her house and takes it from her head; this is
repeated five times, and after that the wife never fetches water again till the child is born.

The guard, too, with these Brāhmans, is quite different. It consists of dust taken from the junction of four roads and mixed with the black oily substance that has accumulated on Hanumān's image. (The monkey god, as any one might guess from his being constantly depicted with his foot on the demon of pain, is the great overcomer of evil spirits.) The dust, together with a cowrie shell and an iron ring, are tied up in a piece of dark blue indigo cloth.

The husband's sister, if she be a virgin, or if she be married and her children and husband are all living, ties this little bundle to the right wrist of the expectant mother, and so guards her absolutely from all fear of the evil eye. Once this ceremony has been performed, the rules that she has to observe are far more stringent; before, it was wise to observe them, now it is imperative; for, as Hindu men say, there are two great Scriptures, Jōśī and Dośī—the astrologers and the old wives—and both should be obeyed.

After the fifth month, a young wife should never sit on a threshold, or in the depression in the floor which is used as a mortar, neither must she ever wield a pestle. She must not sit in the winnowing fan, or use the fan to winnow corn.

She should not bathe in a flowing stream, climb on an ant-hill, dig in the ground with her nails, or write on the ground.\(^1\) with stick or pencil.

Nor must the expectant mother sleep any longer than her usual custom by day or night, or take any exercise at all, or visit unholy places, like burning-grounds; or quarrel, or stretch when yawning. She should not loosen or oil her hair, and,

\(^1\) This last action is forbidden as being one of the signs of a fool. The unmistakable 'notes' of a fool are: To eat whilst walking; to laugh whilst talking; to brood or grieve over what is past; to boast of kindnesses one has shown to others; to walk up unsummoned to two persons talking privately together; to tear grass into small pieces; to smack one's knees; to write on the ground.
after the seventh month, she will refrain from washing it, for fear of enraging that dread snake, Śeṣanāga.

She must not sleep facing the south, or with her face downwards; she must not speak inauspicious words, or eat at twilight, or sit under a tree in the half dark. Every day she should worship Pārvatī and give something in charity. We have seen that she ought not to cross a river, but now from the fifth month she must not go and see one, till the child is a month and a half old.

The husband, too, has to comply with certain restrictions: he must not shave completely till the child is born; he must not cross the ocean, or go to a foreign country; he has to give the wife whatever she asks; and he may not take part in a funeral or a procession.

As the days go on, there is another rite which, though the Nāgara, for instance, do not observe it, is believed by some other Brāhmans to be very efficacious.

On some auspicious day about the seventh month, the expectant mother, together with her mother-in-law and several other elderly ladies, goes outside the town to worship a Śamī tree,1 for Aparājitā (the Invincible), the sakti of the god Agni, lives in that tree.

The young wife wears silk clothes, and her forehead is besmeared with red powder and rice. She worships the tree by marking it with the auspicious red mark, and then arranges seven heaps of powdered white millet, and seven of oil seeds mixed with crushed molasses, and places a lighted lamp of clarified butter in front of it.

When all this has been arranged, she circumambulates the tree four times, pouring water round it as she walks, and finally bows to the tree and offers it a coco-nut, which she breaks in front of it. When she goes away, the little lamp is left behind and allowed to burn itself out, as it would be unlucky to extinguish it.

1 Mimosa Suma.
The writer has been assured that, besides guarding the unborn child, this rite also keeps it warm.

One of the old Vedic rites—Simanta or Hair-parting—which sanctifies the mother and protects the child, is still performed, though others, as we have seen, have fallen into disuse.

An astrologer is called in to choose an auspicious day, but his choice is limited, for the ceremony may only take place on a Sunday, Tuesday, or Thursday, and never on the fourth, fourteenth, or last day of the month. It should be in the seventh or eighth month, a day in the eighth month being most usually chosen.

On the previous day, the parents of the expectant mother are invited, and five or ten 'fortunate' women who have never lost a child are also summoned to the house to sing songs, but they are not allowed to clap their hands. The foreheads of these women are besmeared with turmeric, and the young wife's parents give them oil for their hair, a thread to tie it, a mica āṇḍalo (auspicious mark) for their foreheads, and five or ten areca-nuts each.

The next morning the wife of the Sun (Rannā Devi, or, as she is popularly called, Rāndala Mātā, or Randalā Mātā) is invoked. She is represented by two brass vessels, on each of which a coco-nut is placed, whilst a thread is tied round the neck of the vessel. Some say that as a rule only one coco-nut and one vessel represent Rāndala Mātā, but as uneven numbers stand for daughters and even for sons, everything now is done in twos, fours, or sixes, not in odd numbers.1

In villages the representation is made more complete by the priest drawing two faces on paper and putting them on the coco-nuts and placing ornaments round the necks of the vessels.

On this day seven 'lucky' women are summoned for each Rannā Devi, so fourteen in all are invited. They must be free from any bodily defect, and either virgins, or else mothers who

1 Others say that Rāndala Mātā must always be represented by two or four vessels.
have husband and child living, but they themselves must not be expectant mothers.

It is interesting to notice that they are invited in a special way, being summoned by the expectant mother herself, who goes to their houses and marks their foreheads with turmeric, if she finds them in; if not, she makes the same mark on the lintel of the door. Such an invitation is tantamount to a royal command, for the invited guest may not refuse.

The fourteen women, whether married or not, are looked on as an incarnation of the great mother-power, Jagadambā, so the expectant mother worships them. First she washes the big toe of each of their right feet with water, and then with milk; next she makes the auspicious red mark on it. This done, she touches their toes and then her own eyes (so conveying their holiness to her eyes), or else she puts to her lips one drop of the mixture in which she has washed their toes.¹

After making the auspicious mark on her own forehead, she seats the women on low stools, and food is brought and offered, first to the two goddesses, and then to them. The food is specially dainty, but, whatever else is or is not provided, a sort of rice pudding and bread are always prepared. Each of the fourteen women offers their hostess a spoonful of this special pudding and some bread, which she eats, regarding it as consecrated food (*prasāda*).

The astrologer has not only fixed the day for this ceremony, he has also declared the exact moment when the young-wife must bathe, and in whose house she must take that bath. So now she goes to whatever house he dictates (it is a comfort that the house indicated by the horoscope is generally that of a near relative or friend!) and bathes at the exact moment the stars have commanded. She also washes her hair with milk, molasses, and turmeric, then with arīṭhā-nut, and after the

¹ This is the usual method of showing special honour to religious teachers, family priest, kings, or to parents after a long absence from home. As all rivers meet in the sea, so the sanctity of all places of pilgrimage dwells in the right toe of a Brāhman, whether man or woman.
bath she puts on the special new clothes given by her own mother, consisting generally of a red sāri, green camisole, and green petticoat, often trimmed with lace. (The mother sometimes sends a turban for the husband at the same time.)

A whole company of women, who have attended her to the bath, now escort her back to her mother-in-law’s house in a great procession. The expectant mother wears on her head a crown made of dried plantain leaves (or, in the case of some Brāhmans, of grass). Over it she wears a piece of red or white cloth about five yards long, while another piece of cloth of the same colour, but much longer and cheaper, is spread for her to walk on, so that she may never tread on the ground. (As a matter of convenience, they try and arrange that the two houses shall only be about twenty steps apart.)

Over her head children hold a canopy of green cloth tied to bamboos, which keeps off the evil eye, and prevents anything like evil charmed grains dropping on her head.

The young wife walks very slowly, and at each step she takes, a little brother or sister-in-law puts down an areca-nut or a coco-nut, and a coin varying from a pice to a rupee, which a sister-in-law picks up and keeps when the young mother has passed by. (It is the expense of this, which falls on the wife’s parents, that sometimes nowadays prevents the ceremony being performed at all. With certain other Brāhmans the ceremony is obligatory, but the expenses are curtailed.) Great care is taken at this time to guard the young mother from the evil eye and from black magic. Her own mother walks close beside her holding a sour lime; in the corner of the young wife’s sāri a coco-nut is placed, and on her finger she wears an iron ring. But the special danger that besets her is that a barren woman may stealthily cut off a piece of her dress, and so cause a miscarriage, and to prevent this, her closest friends make a ring round her as she walks and allow no one to break through their ranks and touch her.

When the little wife reaches her mother-in-law’s house, she is welcomed by a ‘lucky’ woman, who waves a brass vessel of
THE DESIRE FOR A SON

water with a coco-nut on top of it round her head, whilst a priest—the only man allowed to be present—recites mantras.

The water is then thrown on the ground, and a little of the mud it makes is smeared on the expectant mother’s head, near her ear, to save her from the evil eye. After this she goes into the house and sits where the two goddesses have been installed.

The lamp in front of them will have been lit on the previous night, and the greatest care has been taken ever since that it shall not go out. The prayer recited when it is lit runs:

‘O lamp, you are a form of the Śakti Devī, you are a witness to the due performance of this ceremony, you are a remover of obstacles, so burn steadily till this ceremony is completed.’

The lamp should not face south, and the earthen vessel which holds it should not rest on the ground, but on a stool or a stand. (A lamp is only once put on the floor, namely at the time of a death.)

It is in the presence of the goddesses, and with this lamp as witness, that the expectant mother now sits for the actual hair-parting which has given its name to this ceremony.

Her sister or her sister-in-law selects a pōrcupine quill having three white stripes on it and therewith combs the young wife’s hair, and then parts it with a spindle, on which threads of cotton have been carefully left. The hair is then oiled, which, as we have seen, has not been done for a long time.

All this time the fourteen ‘lucky’ women have been sitting near at hand, and now the young mother’s parents arrive bringing presents (ornaments, clothes, &c.). They come singing in a procession, having timed their arrival for this exact moment.

We have already seen the importance attributed to the corner of a woman’s shawl (the kholo of her sārī). It seems to represent her powers symbolically and is considered specially sacred, doubtless from the shape it assumes when
filled. If a woman makes a request, lifting that corner of her shawl to her face, it is a dangerous thing to refuse it, and it is by so lifting it that she worships either god or man.

When a Brāhman is blessing a man, he throws grains of rice on to his turban, wishing him long life, success, and strength; but it is into the corner of a woman’s sāri that he throws the blessing for her, wishing her eight sons and no widowhood. It is no unimportant point to receive the blessing of a Brāhman correctly, seeing that he has magical powers at the end of each of his five fingers!

The expectant mother makes a big depression in this all-important corner of her shawl and stands opposite one of the ‘lucky’ women who has never lost a child. Into her sāri is put one and a quarter measures of rice (the unit of the measure may vary, but it must always be one and a quarter of some unit) and seven areca-nuts, all of which are given by the wife’s own mother. This is all transferred five times over from the corner of the young wife’s shawl to that of the ‘lucky’ woman, the most meticulous care being exercised that not one grain of rice fall to the ground, for that would foretell certain disaster to the child.

Very often at this point a sister-in-law binds a gold ‘guard’ set in a silver bangle, or even one studded with diamonds, to the young wife’s wrist.

The wife then sits on a low wooden stool, and her husband’s younger brother comes forward, having smeared his hand with red turmeric, and slaps her once on the right cheek. The Hindus say that, as a stumble prevents a fall, and the prick of a needle wards off a hanging, so this slight inconvenience will prevent a greater one; but there is a shrewd saying that the brother-in-law who slaps too hardly is a fool, for his sister-in-law, being the wife of his elder brother, will not lack opportunity to get her own back. For the present, however, her parents give him a rupee or four annas for his pains!

Either before or after the slapping, a little baby boy of perhaps six months, but at any rate under a year old, is put
into the lap of the expectant mother, and she talks to it and caresses it and plays with it, hoping all the time (poor little soul!) with desperate earnestness that her baby, too, may prove to be a boy.

A feast is given that night, and, whoever else sleeps; the young wife and her mother watch, to see that the lamp lit in front of the goddesses does not go out.

A most exciting interlude now takes place, especially amongst village Brāhmans. When the lamp was lit, a tiny heap of grain was put beside the goddesses, and to-night this will be examined to see what omens it bears. A woman comes in, a medium (Guj. bhūī) or devotee, through whom the goddess who was installed in the brass vessels is supposed to speak.

That goddess, Rannā Devī, the wife of the Sun, once grew weary of her husband’s burning caresses and left him to seek peace and quiet. Enraged at her desertion, he turned her into a mare, and then, as his anger cooled, he repented and, himself taking the form of a horse, he went to seek her in the forest. Overjoyed at finding her, he danced round her, and it is this dance which is now imitated.

The woman devotee dances like a horse, and proves that she is a true bhūī and no fraud by passing a pretty severe test. She puts an earthen vessel on the top of a brass one, and in the upper one she arranges four lighted wicks; the whole erection is then placed on her head, and she has to dance so skilfully on one leg that nothing falls down, and the lights are not extinguished. No wonder the bhūīs claim that this horse-dance can never be performed save by the genuinely ¹ inspired. Before she attempts the horse-dance, the power (sakti) of the goddess enters the devotee on this wise. She lights a stick of incense from the lamp of ghti (clarified butter) and inhales the incense. As she inhales it, she begins to shudder and to shake, and this quivering is accepted as a sign that the goddess has entered her. (In the same way, when non-Brāhmans are

¹ If any one were to sham inspiration and attempt the horse-dance, the belief is that he would be attacked by leprosy.
about to offer a goat at Daserā, the shaking and quivering of the goat is a clear sign that it is acceptable.)

The devotee, being now inhabited by the goddess, examines the grain to divine from it if all is well. Three times she takes up a few grains and, spreading them before the goddess, counts them; if three times following they are an even number, or if three times they come to an uneven number, all will go well; what is dreaded is that once or twice they should be even and once uneven. It is a breathless minute whilst they are counted, and then, if the goddess is pleased, the bhūī holds up one finger in silence, if displeased she holds up two and rubs them together.

Of course the anxious relatives cannot sit down under the goddess’s displeasure. Something has to be done, and sometimes the devotee, sometimes a Brāhman, decides what steps must be taken. It may be that a yard of black or green cloth has to be put on a metal plate, waved round the head of the expectant mother, and then given to a Brāhman. Sometimes, even if the goddess is pleased, it may prove advisable to feed five Brāhmans!

The next morning the ceremony ends. The goddesses are dismissed in the usual way by throwing rice grains on them, and the priest takes the coco-nuts. The bhūī is fed, and the ‘lap’ of her sārī is filled with green or black pulse. Sweet food is offered to the family gods, and either the mother or the mother-in-law plaits the hair of the girl.

After this ceremony has been performed, the expectant mother is free to go to her own mother’s house on any auspicious day. The astrologer will be careful, however, to choose one when Venus will either be on her right or left as she walks home, for she may not go when it faces her directly.

As we saw in the first chapter, if all goes happily she remains in her mother’s house till after the birth of her child; but, seeing that the poor young wife’s attention has been so continuously directed to the chances of all not going happily,
but of herself or her unborn child being injured through evil spirits, the malice of the living, or the jealousy of the dead, it is not to be wondered at if a terrified immature mother is only too often disappointed.

Purely from the eugenic point of view it will be of the deepest interest to note the difference that will take place in the physical and mental stamina of the Indian race, when an expectant mother's mind is filled with the thought of the Love of God encompassing and shielding her, instead of being taught that sinister influences continually surround her, ready to pounce on her out of the dark. Even as it is, an Indian mother can understand perhaps better than we do the underlying protection of the thought: 'He shall gather the lambs in His bosom, and gently lead those that are with young'.

In the first chapter we have studied a normal case; now we must see what remedies are adopted, after one disappointment has occurred, in order to prevent another.

If the miscarriage happens early, the young mother is only reckoned impure for four days; if after five months, it is treated as a confinement, excepting that the mother is not given such nice food and is not allowed to touch clarified butter or wheat (which are classified as 'cold' things), but treacle and oil and green millet, which are considered 'warm', are given to her. The mother is considered ceremonially impure for about fifteen days, but if the child has never lived at all, sūtaka (or ceremonial defilement) would not attach to any other members of the household.

The disappointed young father and mother would feel sure that it is owing to their evil karma that the child has not been born, so they would perhaps study the book called Karma Vipāka, which prescribes appropriate remedies, or more probably still they would consult an astrologer and act as he advised. He will probably tell them to try one out of seven possible remedies.¹

¹ There are, of course, many more than seven possible remedies, but these are the most usual.
1. Sometimes he tells them to pay a Brähman to read the Harivaṁśa aloud to them, in the hope that hearing the stories of Kṛṣṇa which it contains may free them from the sin which has destroyed their unborn child.

2. If the astrologer found that the father was adversely affected by a planet, such as Maṅgala, he would order him to repeat a particular mantra (the Gopāla Santāna Pāṭha, which contains a prayer to Kṛṣṇa for children) one hundred thousand times.

3. But, if the astrologer suspects that the trouble is owing to the anger of ancestors dissatisfied with the śrāddha offered to them, or to the jealousy of some brother who has met an untimely death by serpent bite or other accident before he had any children, or who, though he may have lived to a good age, never succeeded in having any children; then he will ordain that a young bull be married to a heifer (Nilotsarga). On the appointed day the two animals are taken round the fire four times, the would-be father holds their tails in his hand, whilst the presiding priest (the ācārya) pours water on the tails one hundred and eight times, repeating each time, as he does it, a different verse from the Matsya Purāṇa. As no one is sure exactly which ancestor has been offended, the name of every one of them is mentioned separately, and the priest, on behalf of the young couple, beseeches them to be reconciled 'through the tail of the cow'.

Then an elaborate offering to the dead is made. One large ball of rice (called the Dharma Piṅḍa) is placed on darbhagrass near the spot where the right forefoot of the male calf is resting, and around that the young husband arranges one hundred and seven balls, saying: 'I put these here, in order that my ancestors may ascend to heaven'.

So efficacious is this offering considered to be, that the whole one hundred and eight balls are called 'the Fort of Gayā', after the holy city in Bengal where the most effective of all śrāddha can be offered to male ancestors (just as the best of all śrāddha to female ancestors can be offered at
Once a man has performed a śrāddha at the city of Gayā, he need never offer another, and so it is hoped that this sort of Gayā will also settle the ancestral dissatisfaction once and for all.

The male calf is then marked, with red turmeric, on the right thigh with the trident (trisūla) of Śiva, and on the left with the wheel of Viṣṇu, and is turned loose. The belief is that the ancestors who have been so troublesome will remain quiet and good in the heavens for as many years as there are particles of dust adhering to the bull’s horn whenever it digs in the earth. The heifer is named ‘The-one-married-in-the-presence-of-the-Sun’, and it can never be sold, but is given to the Brāhman performing the service. Not only can he never sell it, but he may never sell its milk, which must be drunk as it is by him and his family, for butter may never be made from this cow’s milk, unless it is going to be used in sacrifice.

4. Another way of propitiating the dead is to worship the spirit of a dead ancestor (Tapuruṣa) together with the gods Brahmā, Viṣṇu, Rudra, and Yama.

This rite, known as Nārāyaṇa Bali, is generally performed in the Hindu months corresponding with our October to November, April to May, or August to September.

Five copper water-pots are taken to represent the gods, and in each one is placed a different image, representing one of the five gods: the image of Brahmā must be of silver, Viṣṇu’s of gold, Rudra’s of copper, Yama’s of iron, and the dead ancestor’s of lead. These are worshipped in the fivefold way; and in honour of each of the five, separate collections of five mantras are repeated.

Then the gods are given leave to go, and it is worth while noticing exactly how this is done; for while hitherto we have studied chiefly auspicious rites, we are now on the threshold of those dealing with dark powers.

As leave is given, each god is touched with the point of the

---

1 It was at Siddhpur that Kapila preached to his mother with such effect that she became the river Sarasvati.
darbha-grass, but the spirit of the dead ancestor is dismissed by touching his representation with the root of the grass. But, most marked of all, no rice is scattered over the gods, as is done on auspicious occasions, and though they are thus ceremoniously dismissed, they are not asked to come again.

Mortals are treated on the same plan, for when a man pays an ordinary call, his host gives him permission to depart, by saying: 'Do come again'; if, however, he is paying a visit of condolence, he receives his congé in the bare word 'Go'.

5. Another remedy (Tripindi) is often resorted to, specially by women, not only when no child is born in the family, but also if there is constant sickness and ill luck in the household. Frequent worry, or this special disappointment, convinces them that some dead ancestor is angry, and must be pacified by the worship of the three gods: Brahmā, Viṣṇu, and Śiva. To represent these three, three Brāhmans are called to the house and fed, and given clothing costing about fifty rupees for themselves and their wives.

Sometimes, instead of inviting three Brāhmans to the house, clothing is just sent in a bamboo basket to one Brāhman. If the women feel sure it is a female ancestor that is hindering the birth of a child, or tormenting them all by her malice, then the basket is filled with female attire and all things dear to the heart of a woman: bangles, mirrors, combs, &c. In the same way, if they suspect a male ancestor, they send a scarf, turban, loin-cloth, and anything that he specially liked in his lifetime.

6. If, however, the annoyance be very severe, or the disappointment very great, the last ceremony (Tripindi) will be performed in a more elaborate and impressive form.

Thirteen Brāhmans are invited, not to the house, for the ceremony is to propitiate the dead, and inside the home is the last place where they are wanted; but to some river bank, if possible to a temple, if not, to a pipal tree growing there. The rite consists of a sacrifice (Homa) offered to the fire, and three balls of rice representing Brahmā, Viṣṇu, and Śiva are
placed near it. Thirteen black earthenware pots filled with some black seed, for instance black oil-seed, or black pulse, and also containing the more acceptable gifts of a silver coin and a piece of cloth, are given to the thirteen Brähmans. Each of the thirteen pots has a thread tied round it and a red mark made on it and is looked on as a god presiding over the alms-giving.

It is easy to say these thirteen pots are to be given to thirteen Brähmans, but the whole affair is so black and, occurring as it does on the blackest day of the month (the day of Amāvāsyā or new moon), is so sinister, that it is sometimes extremely difficult to find Brähmans to accept it. All Nāgara, to begin with, are debarred from receiving any gifts, and the most respected Brähmans of the other classes often decline to accept any alms connected with śrāddha, so inauspicious are all such offerings to the dead. (In some parts of India there are two distinct classes of Brähmans: those who direct marriage and other auspicious rites, and those who preside over and receive offerings to the dead.)

Learned Brähmans consider many of these remedies superstitious, some of them being, as we have seen, based on the idea of presenting balls of rice. The necessity for that offering arose in the following way: The Sun always needs the protection of Brähmans against the demons that attack it. (We shall see this idea expanded in the chapter on a Brähman’s Daily Worship.) One day the Sun called on the Brähmans to protect him in the usual way by reciting mantras, but unfortunately they made a mistake in their recitation. This lapse enabled the demons to rush in upon the Sun, who only escaped their onslaught by promising them that henceforth they should catch the souls of the dead. It is to persuade the demons to loosen their grip on these dead and let them go quietly and comfortably to Mokṣa that the balls are offered.

7. But, though the preceding remedies may have been tainted with superstition or black magic, there is a seventh way the
reading of the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, which is absolutely unimpeachable, and yet efficacious, as the following story shows.

Once upon a time a Brāhman called Gokarna (who was miraculously born of a cow) was much worried by the ghost of a bad dead foster-brother. To lay the ghost, he performed the Gaya śrāddha, but got no relief from the unwelcome ghostly attentions; so at last he caused the seventh Purāṇa to be read aloud to him, and on the seventh day a bamboo in the courtyard suddenly broke, and so showed that the bad brother's ghost had ascended by means of it to Mokṣa. Ever since then, when making preparations for the reading, harassed relatives are careful to place a bamboo in their courtyards, as a sort of Jacob's ladder, whereby undesired ghosts may climb to heaven.

The reading is a great affair and is carried out on this wise. On the first day, Gaṇapati, Viṣṇu, and his wife Lakṣmī are worshipped. Then in the evening relatives and friends and caste-fellows all come in to hear a Brāhman read the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, which contains the gist of all the other Purāṇas; this reading will be continued for seven nights, and if only the Brāhman can manage to get the whole Purāṇa read through in that time, the malicious ghost will be laid without a doubt.

One Brāhman reads aloud, and five others sit round, and at the end of each mantra tell a bead on their rosaries and ejaculate: 'Salutation to Vāsudeva'.

On the seventh day the reader is presented with clothes and also with a copy of the Bhāgavata, on which there should be placed a lion fashioned of gold, though, to tell the truth, this lion is seldom given now. But, even if he lack the golden lion, the reader makes a good thing out of it, for every one of the relatives and friends who come in to listen gives him something. For instance, a Nāgara gentleman had this ceremony performed not long ago in Rājkot and summoned all his four hundred caste-fellows, who each paid from a rupee to eight annas to the reader.

At the end of the reading a procession is formed: the reader
and his wife (who has also been presented with clothes) are seated in a carriage and pair, and so taken in triumph to their own house. The young wife, whose desire to bear a living child has been the occasion of the ceremony, walks in the procession carrying the Bhāgavata Purāṇa tied up in a silken cloth; and later on, if her wishes are fulfilled, she will make a big present to the reader.

The following day a number of Brāhmans, varying from twelve to a hundred, are fed, or, if the husband be very rich, the whole of the caste may be invited. The rite ends with the repetition of the thousand names of Viṣṇu. It should be noted that this ‘Seven-Days’-Reading’ is not only employed when a disappointed mother desires a child, but is also used sometimes within a year after a funeral, that the spirit of the departed may rise to Mokṣa easily. (Incidentally this also guards the family from the unwelcome attentions of the new ghost.) It is also done as a sort of insurance, when a family is enjoying an unusual run of good luck and prosperity.

We have seen the eagerness with which a childless wife tries to propitiate the unfriendly dead, whom she believes to be hindering the fulfilment of her heart’s desire. One reason for that eagerness lies in the fact that, since a man’s salvation depends on his having a son to carry out his obsequies, he is allowed to marry during the lifetime of his first wife, if after eight years of wedded life no son is born.

With the Nāgara barrenness is not attributed to the harassing of dead ancestors. Neither do they ever take a new wife during the lifetime of the first.

Again, if a wife has leprosy, consumption, or any incurable disease, or is mad, her husband may marry again. A wife can be put away and replaced amongst the Brāhmans for unfaithfulness, but she can never marry again, as they allow no divorce.

But of all the reasons that may lead a man to take another wife, the most common is that first mentioned, the desire to

1 A Nāgara would never put his wife away, even for unfaithfulness.
possess a son. Sometimes the wife herself urges the husband to marry again, but more often it is her mother-in-law and father-in-law who persuade him. (Sometimes the mother-in-law out of sheer dislike and desire to spite her daughter-in-law persuades her son, even if he has a boy born to him, to marry again.)

The rites of a second marriage closely resemble those of a first marriage, so (as even the most industrious student will be delighted to hear!) we need not work over them all again. Sometimes there is less glitter, pomp, and feasting, but if the marriage were at the desire of the husband’s parents, they will see to it that even these are not lessened.

The result of a second marriage is often disastrous. Of course sometimes, if the husband distributes his favours equally and shares their rooms in turn, a modus vivendi is arrived at, which amounts, at best, to a state of armed neutrality; but when the old wife is discarded and treated as a cast-off servant, or when, perhaps, the new wife falls into disfavour, and is thus flung defenceless on the tender mercies of her once defeated but now victorious rival, the atmosphere is more like hell than home; with the awful addition, that the two who hate each other most are condemned to lifelong imprisonment together, hearing all the tittle-tattle of the servants, who carry tales from one part of the house to the other, while the mother-in-law is always at hand to stir up strife and cast fresh fuel on its flames, in an atmosphere, too, shut up and cut off even from the healthy influence of outside opinion.

These endless bickerings and strife and jealousy, leading at last to open quarrelling and sometimes secret poisoning and murder, are making the most enlightened men see that, for their own sake, if they want any rest and healing and joy from their home life, the higher course is also the happy one.

1 The wives always have their husband’s portrait in their rooms, that his may be the first face they see in the morning, and they worship this if they cannot worship him.
A Brāhman could take three or four wives, but the custom of taking only one is growing steadily in favour amongst many of the Twice-born.

Though a Brāhman cannot divorce his wife, he can, as we said, put her aside for leprosy or insanity. Here again the scales are heavily weighted in favour of the man, for no woman can for a similar reason divorce her husband or take another.

Manu says: ‘She who shows disrespect to (a husband) who is addicted to (some evil) passion, is a drunkard, or diseased, shall be deserted for three months (and be) deprived of her ornaments and furniture’ (Manu IX. 78). On the other hand, it is extremely important that we Christians should make our own position quite clear about divorce, and explain that within the Christian Church divorce, except for the gravest reasons, is never permitted.

The standard that Queen Victoria set up of not receiving divorced persons at court wins the instant admiration of the Brāhmans.

ADOPTION.—We have seen that if, despite all that religious rites and ceremonies can do, a man still has no son, he may within certain castes of the Twice-born marry again and again. Sometimes, urged by the supreme need of procuring an heir to save his soul, a man will even marry five times. But if, nevertheless, no boy is born to him, in some communities the man is permitted to adopt an heir. The boy may be the son of his daughter or of his granddaughter, or may be related through the man’s father or mother, but never through his wife.

When all has been arranged, and the boy’s parents have finally given their consent, the astrologer is asked to name an auspicious day on which the rite of adoption may be performed. As soon as that day dawns, the adopter rises and goes through his morning worship. This done, he worships

---

1 S. B. E. xxv. 341.
2 It would be wise to add Adoption to the useful little list given on p. 260 of Notes and Queries on Anthropology, London, 1912.
Ganesa in the five- or sixteenfold way, and then offers a Vriiddhi Šrāddha to guard himself against sūtaka or any other impurity. Then the adopting father and his wife perform the rite Saṅkalpa together, though the man does all the talking. Holding water in their hands, they say: 'I, so and so,' (mentioning the man's name only) 'will perform the adoption ceremony, in order to pay the debt I owe to my ancestors, and to save myself from the hell called Pud'.

A special altar has already been erected in the compound, and in this the adopter now offers to the fire clarified butter, sesame seeds, and sacrificial wood. Then the priest recites appropriate mantras, and every one who can goes in procession to the house of the boy who is to be adopted, all the relatives and friends playing on musical instruments.

Arrived there, the priest (guru) of the adopting father asks the natural father of the boy to give him his son, so that he (the adopter) may be free of all his debts.

The natural father welcomes the adopter in the most cordial way, by making the auspicious dot on his forehead, offering him a seat, garlanding him, and presenting him with areca-nut. When the adopter is comfortably installed, the natural father summons his son and, holding water in his own hand, says:

'I, so and so, on such and such a day, relinquish for ever my rights as a parent and transfer them for ever to you, so and so,' (mentioning the adopter's name) 'in order that you through him may discharge your debts to your ancestors.'

Thus saying, he pours water from his hand into that of the adopting father. Next, taking the boy by his right wrist, he leads him over to the adopting father, who seats him on his own knee. Then, to show that the whole ceremony is complete, the new father solemnly, silently, and steadily smells his new son's head.

---

1 Or Put.
2 As the writer has found no reference in books on India to this custom
The head smelt, the new father solemnly goes through a rite which reminds you of St. Francis’s renunciation in the market square of Assisi of his father’s authority and of the clothes his father had provided, for he removes\(^1\) all the clothes the boy has been wearing, replacing them with new ones, and gives him new jewels, which he himself has brought.

The ceremony ended, the adopting father takes the boy to his new home in a procession, all the women singing.

As the boy enters the house, pretty rites of welcome such as are offered to a bride when she first enters her father-in-law’s house\(^2\) are gone through for him, including the waving of a jug full of water and the throwing of balls of earth in all directions.

Then he is taken inside the house and seated on his new mother’s lap, who takes all his troubles and removes all his ill luck by three times stretching out her hands towards him, and three times cracking her knuckles against her own forehead.

After this the day is given up to rejoicing, alms are given to Brāhmans, a feast is made to the caste or to relatives, and sweets are distributed amongst children. The whole ceremony is completed in a day, but the feasting is rather costly; so, to lessen expenses, the adoption of a boy is often combined with his investiture with the sacred thread.

The child thus adopted takes the name and family name of ceremonially smelling the head, she may perhaps here be allowed to put together the cases in which she has found it to be performed. If the father be present at the name-giving ceremony, he often smells the head of his child. If the son grows up and becomes famous in any way, or victorious in war, the father smells his son’s head on his return home from council or from war. When an ordinary man returns home for the first time after marriage, his father often does it. The Hindus explain this custom by saying that they intend thereby to remove every evil influence.

At every occasion on which a father smells his son’s head, his mother, who cannot do that, takes his worries and ill luck on to her own head by waving her hands towards him and then cracking her knuckles against her own forehead (Guj. *Ovaṛagāth levāth*).

\(^1\) In actual practice this is sometimes symbolized by slipping new clothes over the old ones.

\(^2\) See pp. 102 ff.
of his adopting father. If the natural father be dead, the mother gives her son away. The son, if there be no other, will perform śrāddha for both fathers.

The privilege of adopting children is a right of which ruling chiefs are very proud, since only those belonging to the first two classes can do so as of right, chiefs of lesser rank having to ask the permission of Government before adopting.

Some of the best-known Kṣatriya chiefs at the present day were adopted with the rites we have described.¹

It throws a most vivid light on a Hindu’s belief about the future when we remember that it is not only the ruling chief who is anxious to adopt in order that the succession to his state may pass on unbroken, but the ordinary Twice-born, who desires by so doing to save his soul from hell, the hopeless hell of the sonless and therefore śrāddha-less.

It is illuminating, too, to learn that nowadays in practice no Indian, be he chief, Brāhman, or man of low caste, ever adopts a daughter ceremonially, with the purpose of getting his śrāddha performed; for, no matter with what formality he might take her, she could never perform his funeral rites, or inherit his possessions. But so great is the merit acquired by giving away a daughter in marriage, that a daughterless man does sometimes adopt a girl in order to bestow her on a bridegroom. If he does so, the ceremony is very like the one we have described; he may, however, content himself with paying the expenses of some poor girl’s marriage, without formally adopting her, for the merit in both cases is the same.

A chief’s adopted son most kindly worked over these notes with the writer.
CHAPTER VII

DEATH

Premonitions — Preparation for Death — Last Gifts — Last Hours —
The Corpse — The Corpse Worshipped — First Funeral Offerings — The
Funeral Procession — The Widow’s Seven Steps — The Burning-ground
— At the Burning-ground — Lighting the Pyre — A Mother with her
Unborn Child — The End of the Pyre — Burials — The Women — The
Return — Food and Clothes — Condolence.

We have studied a Brähman’s life story from the day that
his birth brought a veritable rapture of gladness to his mother
‘that a man child was born into the world’. We have seen
him pass through all the happy ritual of second birth, be-
trothal, marriage; and now we have to follow him through
the dark valley of death.

Once, long centuries ago, as the wise men of Northumbria
sat in solemn conclave, to decide whether they would follow
the new religion or cleave to the old, a sparrow flitted across
the brightly lit hall; an old ealdorman arose and, pointing
to the bird, asked if the teachers of the new faith could throw
light on the beginning or end of the soul, which, like a sparrow,
lingered but for a moment in the light and heat of the hearth-
fire, before flying out again into the wintry darkness whence
it had come. ‘So tarries for a moment’, said the old noble,
‘the life of man in our sight; what was before it, what shall
be after, we know not. Can this religion tell us aught of
that?’

And never since have the echoes of his tremendous question
died away. Of each and every faith we ask: can this religion
tell us aught of the life beyond the grave?

We have now to propound this question to a modern
Brähman, and, as we listen to his answer, we shall find that,
though we have made friends with him in his rejoicing, we get to understand him better in his sorrow, for (with him as with us) the dark valley leads into the secret fastnesses of religion.

Through all his rites and rejoicings a Hindu has been preparing for death, for, as we have so often noted, the thread that strings all the ceremonies together is the imperative desire that the funeral offerings should be perfectly performed.

When a man finds grey hairs appearing close to his ears, he realizes with awe that they are nothing less than the advance messenger of the terrible god of death whispering to him of the approach of his end and warning him to perfect his preparations.

If a man's karma be good, he may, even after these grey hairs have appeared, live for twenty-five years, but if, on the other hand, he should have accumulated evil karma in a previous existence (and he is tragically ignorant whether it be good or bad), his end is near.

The length of a man's life absolutely depends on karma; good actions in a previous life would enable a man to live one hundred and twenty years in most parts of India, but only one hundred and eight in the trying climate of Gujarāt or Kāthiāwār. An evil past is responsible for the death of all little babies and young children, who come into this world so weighed down by their own past sins, that they may die in three weeks, three months, or three years. Moreover (as we shall see later), it is this inheritance of their own hoarded evil that is responsible for the death of all the golden boys on the fields of Flanders, who, in the karmic, not in the Shakespearean, sense, 'home have gone and ta'en their wages'. It was their maleficient karma, and not their gallantry or their unselfishness, which decided that they were to be killed in leading their men, or in trying to rescue a comrade.

Once, however, grey hairs appear, a man should be on the look-out for other signs which will tell him if death be near. Of course there are obvious indications, such as ill health,
failing strength, loss of appetite and of sleep, &c.; but there are other less obvious but more important ones. Before death a man’s disposition, as well as his constitution, entirely alters: if he has been sweet-tempered (the most admired of all virtues amongst Indians), he now becomes irritable, and if formerly irritable, he is now good-tempered.

A still clearer sign is that the different gods inhabiting a man’s body take their leave. Their absence can be at once detected: if a man puts his fingers to his ears and hears no buzzing inside his head, that is a distinct token that the god reigning over the ears (Vāyu) has departed from him; in the same way, there are tests to see if the god of the eyes (Sūrya), of the nose (Aśvinī Kumāra), of the hands (Indra), of the feet (Viṣṇu), and of the mind (Candra) have all left their thrones.

Another sign that tells a man death is at most but six months off is, that when he looks at the sky at night, though to others it is plain, yet he himself cannot distinguish Arundhatī (one of the seven stars of the great Bear, and the wife of the great sage Vasiṣṭha).

Further, when a man who is about to die goes to bed, he dreams that he is embracing dead bodies, or putting on a garland of red flowers, or travelling southward toward the abode of the god Yama; or that he has no clothes on, or is perhaps besmeared with oil.

Another way of ascertaining whether death is threatening a man, or any member of his household, is for the head of the family to stand right out in the marvellous Indian moonlight and examine his shadow. First he looks at the throat of the shadow cast on the ground, and then, repeating a mantra, gazes at the sky, where he will see the shadowy outlines of a huge figure. If this figure lack the right hand, his brother’s death is near; if the left hand be missing, his own wife’s death is foretold; but if the figure cast on the sky be a headless one,

\[1\] Alcor.
let him make all haste with his preparations, for his own death is at hand.

Portents will not be lacking in the daytime either: for instance, if, when a man puts his wrist to his nose, it appears quite thick; or if, when he squints, he cannot see the tip of his nose, he is frightened, and with reason, for it is death that is bending his nose.

It is impossible to exaggerate the horror with which a man gathers from these or any other indications that his time is short.

When warned of the approach of death, a wise man frequently repeats the word AUM.¹ This monosyllable, without which no mantra is efficacious and no rite complete, is the shortest form in which a Hindu can think of Brahma (the Paramātman). He is without form, without name, without qualities, but mortals needed something to represent him, and so this word was given. Later, men found in it three letters connoting the Vedic triad: 'A' representing Brahmā, 'U' Viṣṇu, 'M' Śiva, and the mark over it all representing the female counterparts of these three gods.

A man should often repeat the name, in order that, however suddenly he dies, it may be the last word on his lips, for that ensures his spirit's passing direct to Mokṣa, without any delay or detention. In Vedic times they say a Brāhman made other preparations for death; for, as soon as his son's son was born, he began to think it time to retire as a hermit or anchorite (Vānaprastha) to some forest,² and would ask his wife whether she wished to accompany him.

¹ A Hindu says that, if deep breaths are taken, with the hands so arranged over the face that the ears are closed by the thumbs, the eyes shut by the first fingers, and the nose with the second fingers, wondrous sounds are heard: First, the tolling of bells, then exquisite music, and last of all the mystic syllable Om (AUM) is breathed. If a man be bereaved, or injured, or worried, and he hear this word, all his unhappiness disappears.

² Nowadays few Brāhmans retire to the forest; and, on asking the reason, the writer was told that it was partly because nearly all the forests, which used to be full of custard-apples and other delights, had been cut down; but partly, too, lest the Forest Department should ask fees for the
DEATH

In modern times it is more usual for a householder (Grihastha) to pass straight to the fourth stage of mendicant (Sannyasi), and omit the third or hermit period.

There is no doubt that a Brähman (like a Jaina) gains great advantage by becoming a mendicant before he dies, and his relatives will in that case not have to offer any funeral offerings for him to secure his happiness after death. One reason for this is, as we shall see later, that he had already offered his own śrāddha when he died to the world; another reason is that, when a Sannyasi dies, the very fact of his being a mendicant ensures that his soul will pass out through one of the upper apertures of his body, such as nose, eyes, or mouth. But it is better still if the soul leaves the body by the Brahmarandhra (the soft part of the skull, which is the last to join up in the case of infants), and so, after death, the Sannyasi’s skull is often broken there by a blow from a conch-shell; indeed it is sometimes so broken when the ascetic is in the throes of death! Such extreme measures will not be needed if a man has practised Yoga, or intense contemplation, for that by itself will have opened the soft place in the skull, and so the soul will quite naturally find its way out through that, the highest of all the orifices. But the soul of a wicked man passes out by the lower apertures of the body, and by so doing acquires such defilement that endless purifications are necessary.

If a man decide to become a Sannyasi on his death-bed, his head is shaved, and he dons the saffron-coloured robes, going through all the ceremonies of initiation, no matter how ill he is, and, as he must respond, the ceremony must be complete before the dying man loses consciousness. Such a death-bed ascetic is called an Ātura Sannyasi.

fruit on which the hermit would have to subsist, and for which (having left his purse behind him in the world) he would be quite unable to pay. Another reason, more generally accepted, is that nowadays men do not possess the power of endurance which would enable them to support the hardships of the ascetic life, such as living in water up to the chin in winter, or sitting between five fires in summer.
Even if the patient does not become an ascetic, as soon as the doctor gives up hope, the friends of the dying man make eight kinds of gifts on his behalf.

1. First, they present a Brāhman with cotton-pods. The explanation commonly given for this somewhat strange gift is that years ago cotton-pods were accepted as current coin, and so this is equivalent to a gift of money to the Brāhman.

2. It is easy to understand the reason for the second gift, iron vessels, for iron is supposed to keep off all the attacks of Yama, the god of death, and to ward off evil spirits.

3. The third thing that the relatives give is salt. Hindus call this the juice of all things, and say that, when they give salt, they thereby give everything. (It is this belief that salt is the best of all things that, as we shall see, makes Hindus rise at dawn on New Year's Day to buy salt, for they are determined that their first purchase in the New Year shall be the best possible, and so ensure that good luck shall follow them all the twelve months.)

4. Earth must next be given. If it were a rich man or a rājā who lay dying, he would give a field or a village to a Brāhman, but an ordinary man gives the Brāhman a piece of turf with a rupee or two.

5. The gift of grain follows. Pulse, wheat, rice of various kinds, may all be given, but it is interesting and important to note that neither now nor in any other ceremony is a particular kind of millet ever given to a Brāhman as alms. The word for this grain, bājarī, connotes also a span of life, and so the man who gave away millet would give away his life (which no one is willing to do even to a Brāhman!) and, should a dying man inadvertently give away millet, it is believed that at that very instant his breath would leave his body.

6. Clarified butter (that impregnable base of all Indian cookery) is the sixth gift.

7. The seventh consists of laḍḍus. These tennis-ball-like sweets are always as much to the taste of a Brāhman as a lord is to an Englishman.
DEATH

At this time, however, the laḍḍu given to the Brāhman is gilded, or at any rate contains a secret gift of a gold coin hidden inside it. Even the poorest man manages at this crisis in his life to put some piece of gold, however minute, into the laḍḍu.

8. But the last and eighth gift, that of a cow, is the most important of all. If a man could not afford actually to give a cow, he would strive his utmost to find the five rupees that conventionally represent its value, and if even that proved impossible, he would offer five annas. It is only by holding on to the tail of a cow that the dying man hopes to cross the horrible river of blood and filth, called Vaitaranī, which flows to the south between the earth and that abode of Yama to which every soul has to go after death. If an actual animal is given, it should be brought into the dying man’s room for him to see it. If possible, its horns should be adorned with gold, its hoofs with silver, and its back with copper. It ought to wear a woman’s sārī, or at least a piece-torn from a woman’s dress, and round its horns some green cloth should be worn; it should be further ornamented with a necklace of bells, and its tail should be bedecked with pearls, or, if these are not forthcoming (and they seldom are!), at any rate with beads. Above all, the cow must be without flaw in person or temper (that is to say, it may neither be lame nor a kicker!) and it must have its calf with it.

If the dying man has the physical strength, he should take the cow’s tail in his hand and present it, together with a tulasī leaf, to a Brāhman. (The leaf and the tulasī plant symbolize Viṣṇu’s consort, and any alms given should always be accompanied with the gift of a tulasī leaf, otherwise they may fail of their reward.) If the man is too desperately ill to stand the fuss of the actual cow being brought into his sick room, they quietly put a rope into his hand, the other end of which is tied round the cow’s neck outside the room, and he gives this to the Brāhman. Whilst the gift is being made, the family priest repeats the appropriate mantras, and the Brāhman who
receives the cow says: 'Svasti (may it be well [with thee]), as he takes it.

But besides these eight gifts, every Brähman who comes to the house whilst the man is dying receives special alms called Āmānna, consisting of wheat and clarified butter.

A lamp¹ is filled with clarified butter and burned beside the sick man (a lamp is always lit at the time of worship as witness), and the family priest is called and asked to read from the Bhagavadgītā or the Upaniṣad, or to repeat the thousand names of Viṣṇu.

All this takes place while the man is conscious, but when he seems to have only about an hour, or even less, to live, he is moved from his bedstead on to a bed made up on the floor. The belief is that, if a man were to die on a bedstead, he would return after death as an evil spirit, since the bedstead is high up from the ground, with space between earth and sky which demons inhabit. In the meantime the ground near the mattress is plastered with cow-dung and sprinkled with water from the Ganges, and on the space thus sanctified darbha-grass, barley, and sesamum grains are scattered.

When the man is evidently in articulo mortis, he is carefully lifted from the mattress on to this prepared space. Old and experienced people are always asked to be present at deathbeds, that they may decide when the exact moment has come to move the sufferer from the mattress on to the floor; for, though it would not be so terrible a thing as if he were to die on a bedstead, yet, if he were to draw his last breath from the mattress, he would still become a ghost or an evil spirit.

To guard still further against his becoming a ghost, the dying man's head has been previously shaved of all hair save the sacred lock (Śikhā).

When the expiring man is placed on the ground, his near relatives all offer vows in order to help him to reach Mokṣa and to provide him with food and water on his journey thither.

¹ This lamp may be on a stand, but is more likely to be on the ground. This is the only time a lamp may be placed on the ground.
Some promise to water pīpal trees, or to give a jug of water to a Brāhman; others promise to throw grains to pigeons, or to feed a Brāhman for a year, or to fast on the eleventh (Ekādaśī) of every fortnight for a year or more. (They will perform, or begin to perform, these vows after the thirteenth day, when the house has been purified.)

The dead man's forehead is smeared with white clay (Gopī āndava) brought from the sacred city of Dvārakā, or with sacred ashes, or in some cases a red or white mark of sandalwood paste is made on the centre of the forehead. (If a woman dies before her husband, and so escapes for ever from the supreme dread of every Indian woman, that of becoming a widow, she is considered so lucky that her face, and especially her forehead, is smeared with red.)

A tulasī leaf is put into the mouth of the corpse, together with a piece of silver and a piece of gold. So essential is it to have gold in the mouth at the time of death, that people often have some of the precious metal inserted between their teeth during their lifetime, to ensure its being there after death.

The corpse is now purified by having drops of water ¹ taken from both the rivers Ganges and Jamnā poured into its mouth, and, still with the object of purification, incense is burned. If the dead man were a bachelor of marriageable age, a red auspicious mark would be made on his forehead, and a fruit of the god of love (madana-phala) is tied on to his right wrist. In the writer's part of India all dead bodies are arranged so as to look to the south, i.e. with feet to the south and head to the north. (In some other places the opposite is the case.)

Sometimes, before this is done, to ascertain that death has actually taken place, a lump of concealed clarified butter is put on the forehead, and if it does not melt, it is taken as a sign that life is extinct. When this is certain, the syllable Om is whispered in the ear of the corpse by his son or near relative, others take up the word and say it more and more

¹ This water is usually, but not invariably, taken from the junction of the two rivers near Allahābād.
loudly, and it is the repetition of this word that announces the
death to every one in the house.

If a mistake has been made, and after the word Om has
been repeated and the death announced an old man should
recover, it is considered very inauspicious, especially for his
elest son, but if the mistake has been made in the case of
a young man, it is not nearly so unlucky.

It is thought auspicious if a woman die during the night;
for, as a corpse cannot be removed from a house after sundown,
it will have to remain in the house all night. The explanation
given to the writer was that every woman, living or dead, is the
incarnation of Lakṣmī, but especially after death; so it is
very auspicious to have Lakṣmī remaining in the house all night.

On the other hand, it is very unlucky if the father of a
family die during the night, and some misfortune is sure to
overtake his surviving sons; but it is fortunate for every one if
he dies in the morning. We saw that a corpse could not be
taken to the burial-ground after sunset, but if a man dies even
a few minutes before the sun goes down, the mourners take
the body there, though it may involve their sitting beside the
pyre, perhaps in the bitter winter cold, from seven o'clock to
midnight.

A dead body is holy, so cannot be touched by any one who
is unbathed, nor can it be wrapped save in a silk cloth, or, if
that is not forthcoming, in a newly washed and still wet one.
Such a cloth must be bought from the bazaar expressly for
the purpose, and when washed must be washed in holy water,
i.e. running water (even from a pipe), not water stored in the
house in jars. The body of an old man who has died between
sixty and eighty years of age is wrapped in white cloth, that
of a middle-aged man of forty or fifty in red, whilst the corpse
of a dearly-loved young man is sometimes clothed in rich
brocade. They wrap the body of a married woman who is so
fortunate as to die whilst her husband is living in rich red, or
bright green, or any other gaily-coloured material, but a widow
in white, blue, or black silk.
Whilst the body is in the house, it is looked on as a god: Lakṣmi, in the case of a woman, Viṣṇu, if it be a man who has died; and now they pay it divine honours. The children, widow, or husband come in and bow to the corpse, and then circumambulate\(^1\) it three times. It is important to notice that this circumambulation is done in the auspicious direction with the right hand nearest to the dead body, and that, as we shall see, when the corpse is on the pyre, they do it with the left hand nearest; just now the uppermost thought in their mind is the divinity of the corpse, not its inauspiciousness. Lamps filled with camphor are sometimes burnt at this time in front of the corpse.

Another note worthy of detail is that the face of the corpse is not covered, even if it is that of a young woman, and that none of the young women who walk round it veil their faces either.

Male members of the family who are senior to the dead man or woman do not circumambulate the corpse, but simply go up to it and, standing reverentially, look down on the still upturned face. All this takes place in utter silence, for no one may weep or mourn aloud for some half-hour or so after the actual death, by which time this worship will have been completed.

After all the household have done the dead man reverence, they pass silently out of the room, all but one man of mature age and such strong nerves that he is not afraid of being left alone with the dead. His special duty is to guard the holy body from the approach of any unclean animal, and in particular to see that no cat enters the room by stealth, for, being an unclean animal, its merest touch would pollute the sacred corpse.

From this point in the ceremony the body is looked on as an offering to Agni. The women of the household now begin to weep and to wail and to beat their breasts, and servants are sent out to tell the news to the members of the caste. These now begin to arrive in funeral dress, the men wearing no coats, but

---

\(^1\) This is not done if the woman has died in child-birth; see below, p. 151.
only a shirt, a loin-cloth round the waist and another over the shoulders, and, instead of turbans, short scarves wound round their heads. The women come clad in black sāris and black bodices, with no flowers or nose-rings or auspicious marks on their forehead. The first person whom the servant tells is the priest, and to him, as to every one else, he only says: ‘So-and-so is very ill’, to avoid giving a shock.

In the meantime some members of the household go to the bazaar and buy the following articles: a piece of white cloth, two thick bamboo poles, a black earthen pot in which to carry fire, string, cotton thread, coco-nut, and sandal-wood weighing about a pound. (When these particular things are bought, the sellers know the purpose for which they are wanted and never ask for money, for haggling at such a time would be most unlucky. After a week or two some member of the family goes and pays for them, but if they are not paid, the shop-keepers simply write them off as a bad debt; for if the family is too poor to pay for them, the shop-keepers feel that they must help with the funeral.) After the things are purchased, the members of the family make a ladder-like arrangement of the two bamboos and the string.

In the meantime the priest is engaged in making the first of the numerous funeral offerings. This ceremony is called Pathika (lit. the traveller) and consists of offering five balls made of wheat flour and water beside the dead body. The first ball is offered to the spirit of the plot of earth on which the corpse is now lying. The second is offered to the spirit of the threshold over which the dead body is to be carried. (As a rule, the corpse is carried through the ordinary house door, but if a Vedic sacrifice or a wedding is going on when death occurs, a new door has to be made in the wall, since auspicious festoons are hanging over the ordinary door.) The third ball is offered to the spirit of the cross-roads of the village through which the corpse will be carried. If the village does not contain a junction of four roads, then this ball will be offered to the spirit of two cross-roads. On the way to the funeral
pyre the bearers rest the corpse on an appointed platform (Viṣrāma), and the fourth ball is dedicated to the spirit of this temporary resting-place. The fifth ball is offered to Agni in the funeral pyre.

It sometimes happens that darbha-grass too is offered. In every month there are five consecutive days on which it is inauspicious to die (the dates of these days differ every month), and if the dead man has passed away on one of these days, five knotted blades of darbha-grass must be placed in the piece of cloth in which the balls are tied up before being placed on the bier and carried with it to the burning-ground.

The body is now dressed for the funeral. In the case of a man, only a new loin-cloth is left on, together with a rosary of one hundred and eight tulasi leaves, or of ten Rudrākṣa berries (‘the eyes of Rudra’), or just one Rudrākṣa berry. He is also made to wear a new sacred thread on his left shoulder, the old one having been thrown away after life was extinct and a new one put on in its stead.

A dead married woman is clothed in her best sārī, bodice, and skirt, and adorned with some gold ornament; a widow is robed in black silk.

Six or more men lift the corpse on to the bier. Whether it be that of a man or a woman, the two big toes are tied together, the legs arranged to lie straight, and the arms straightened and put close to the sides. The body is then tied tightly to the bier and so placed that it is carried out feet foremost. The eyes have been carefully closed before death and so remain.

As they lift the bier up, the bearers all say ‘Om’, and they keep on repeating this sacred word till they reach the gate of the compound. After that is passed, they and all the followers cry: ‘Rāma! Rāma! Call on Rāma, brothers’. (When the writer asked why followers of Śiva call on Rāma and not on Śiva, she was told that Rāma’s name might be employed in every case, even if the man were unholy, whereas Śiva’s name is sacrosanct.)
In order to purify the ground over which the bier must be carried from the touch of the countless low-caste feet that have trodden it, men go ahead and sprinkle the road with water from the Ganges, and if it is a young man or woman who has died, milk is also sprinkled immediately in front of the bier.

All the bearers of the bier have bathed, and wear no shoes (out of reverence to the holiness of the corpse), no turbans, shirts, or coats, but only wet loin-cloths.

And now to look for a moment at the whole procession. The first thing one sees is the man sprinkling water over the road; then, perhaps, the man sprinkling milk; next comes a man carrying the fire (that has been taken from the dead man's house) in a black earthen pot; and immediately after him the bier, for nothing may ever come between the dead body, which is an offering to Agni, and Agni itself, which is carried in the earthenware jar. The frail bier is carried shoulder high by the sons, the nearest relatives, or other members of the same gotra, all crying Rāma, Rāma bolo, bhāi,¹ and followed by a crowd of men.

There are no women in this crowd, for they are not allowed to follow the procession to the burning-ground; but before the cortège leaves the compound, the wife of the dead man performs a most pathetic rite. In memory of the seven ritual steps that she had taken amid all the jubilant rejoicing that surrounded her wedding, when she was looked on as almost divine, she, now a broken-hearted widow, with nothing to look forward to during the rest of her life save sorrow, again takes seven steps, this time following the lifeless body of her bridegroom, as witness even in her sorrow that she has performed the vows promised in her gladness. It would be impossible to describe a contrast that more tears the heart-strings.

In most towns there are several burning-grounds; for instance, where the writer lives there is one for the family of the reigning prince, another for the Nāgaras, and a third for high-

¹ A Nāgaras does not say bolo bhāi, but only Rāma.
caste Hindus, including other Brāhmans, another for such folk as Bhils and Kolis, and a fifth for outcastes (Sweepers, Dheds, &c.).

In the writer's town the corpse may be carried out to the burning-ground through any of the city gates, but this is not always the case. In certain towns particular gates are prescribed for the passage of the dead, generally the gate to the south of the city.

It is the State which decides where the burning-grounds are to be fixed, and if any one desires to burn their dead in another place, express permission has to be obtained from the State.

If the dead man was a Nāgara, the cortège would pass directly to the burning-ghāṭ without rest or re-arrangement.

But with certain other Brāhmans, it halts when it reaches the little masonry platform called the Viśrāma, and there four coco-nuts are taken from the bier, to which they had been tied, and are broken. The bier is then turned round, so that the head of the dead is carried first.

On reaching the burning-ground, the body, which sometimes is and sometimes is not washed with water in the house after death, is now purified by being immersed in water up to the knees. Stones are specially arranged on the river bank to support the body during this baptism after death.

Then the pyre is built. The ground is swept and purified by having Ganges water sprinkled over it, and one copper coin is put on it as rent for the use of the ground. Heavy logs (preferably of bāvala wood) are first laid on the ground to the height of a foot and a half, and upon this less expensive ordinary wood is laid, till the whole pyre is about seven feet long and two and a half broad. If it could be afforded, the

1 Very often Bhils and outcastes cannot afford to burn the whole body because of the cost of the wood, so they content themselves with burning the right toe and bury the rest of the body.

2 The old Kāṭhi chiefs of Kāṭhiwār, however, are not burned at the river bank; any Kāṭhi who is of princely blood can be burned in his own garden, and afterwards a temple will be raised on the spot, the ashes of the dead man being used in the foundation of the temple.
upper part of the pyre would be built of sandal-wood, but as this is too expensive for any but ruling chiefs, the pyre is generally made of ordinary wood with the addition of about one pound of sandal-wood.

On this the body is laid, arranged, in the case of most Brāhmans, so as to face the north, but in some parts of India to face the south. Appropriate mantras are said and balls of wheat offered.

The body is covered with cow-dung cakes, and a heavy log is placed, on the chest of the corpse if that of a man, and on the waist if it is that of a woman. In the case of an Agni-hotṛi the ceremony is more elaborate, and articles of worship, such as pots, spoons, &c., are burnt with him.

The nearest relative who bears the dead man’s surname lights the pyre by setting some of the fire that has been brought from the house against the dead man’s thumb, repeating, as he does so, the sacred word ‘Om’. The caste-fellows and other spectators sit about two hundred yards off, only closest relatives remaining near the pyre. In actual practice it is nearly always the eldest son of the dead man, or the husband of the dead wife, who lights the pyre, but if a ruling chief dies, his eldest son cannot attend the funeral, neither can a king ever go to a burning-ground, and in such a case a younger son lights the fire. The reason is that a king or a ruling chief is too holy ever to be affected by sūtaka (he cannot even wear a white turban as a sign of mourning), for in himself he possesses divinity, having the power of the guardians of the eight quarters and some of the essence of Viṣṇu. If there are no relatives, any one who is desirous of earning merit may offer to bear the expense of the funeral (altogether it would cost, including śrāddha, from one hun-

1 As a throne may never be empty, the son of a chief is proclaimed immediately on the death of his father, and a short ceremony of installation is performed before the corpse is removed from the palace.

2 A most notable exception to this was made by H.H. the present Thākor Sāheb of Gondal, who, to do honour to his old friend and tutor, Dr. Argyll Robertson, not only attended the funeral, but himself lit the funeral pyre.
dred and fifty to five hundred rupees); for a man who, from motives of pure charity, burns a corpse gains merit equal to that acquired in the ancient rite of horse sacrifice.

If a man die away from home in such a way that no corpse can be found, being perhaps drowned, blown to pieces by a shell, or devoured by a tiger, the relatives, after waiting for some little time, make a body of darbha-grass, generally about the size of a doll, and burn it with precisely the same rites as we have described. Strictly speaking, the grass body should have been made at the house and carried in procession through the town; as a matter of actual practice, however, it is nearly always woven at the river-side near the place where it is burnt.

If a woman die in child-birth, her body is not considered holy until it has been bathed at the burning-ground. The ground over which the procession passes is not purified by sprinkling with Ganges water or milk, but Brāhmans go ahead scattering mustard-seed, or rice in the husk, and unground white millet.1 The men who lift and carry the bier and the men who follow wear ordinary clothes (not wet ones) and keep on their shoes. As the corpse is unholy, it cannot represent Lakṣmī, and there is no circumambulation of it in the house.

Arrived at the burning-ground, the bearers bathe the corpse, dressed as it was at the moment of death, one hundred and eight times, and then, with most Brāhmans, the ordinary ritual is performed, and the mother and her unborn child are burned together.2

With the Nāgara, however, if the child is still unborn, a most tragic rite has to be performed before the dead body can be burned, and no one who has heard a Nāgara describe it could doubt that, though the body of the mother and her unborn child is regarded as ritually unholy, yet it is neither unloved nor unreverenced. A screen is erected near the

1 White millet is also scattered on the ground before the body of a chief or important landowner.
2 Rigorists say, however, that the Nāgara procedure ought to be observed.
burial ground, and behind it the husband, if he can bear to do it, if not, some close relative, opens the dead body and takes out the dead child. Even if the husband is too heart-broken to perform the whole rite, his hand must be the first to touch the body with the knife. The operator does his dread task with the greatest reverence, trying as far as possible to work with closed eyes.

The little baby’s body is taken away to be buried at some child’s cemetery, but the mother’s body, after being bathed one hundred and eight times, is considered ritually pure and burned in the ordinary way.

If the mother has died after the child’s birth, but before she was ritually pure, her body is bathed immediately after death one hundred and eight times in the house, and is then carried in the ordinary way to the pyre.

In any case, however, the pyre is lit by the chief mourner, and burns usually for about three and a half hours. At intervals during the time clarified butter is poured on, and mantras are repeated. As the fire goes out, the chief mourner circumambulates the pyre from left to right (the inauspicious direction) four times (the inauspicious number).

He finally extinguishes the embers, when the body and the wood have been burnt up, by throwing water on them. The ashes are then collected and thrown into the river. Any tiny fragments of bone that remain are carried back to the house, and later taken to Gayā or Siddhpur, or thrown into some other sacred water, such as the Dāmodar Kuṇḍa near Jūnāgadh.

A ball of wheat is offered to these one or two fragments, and the black earthen pot which originally held the fire is broken in pieces with a stone.

After this every one bathes, repeating as they do so the word ‘Om’, and being careful not to choose that place where the dhobi washes the clothes, since that is impure. Still wearing their wet clothes, they go back to the spot where the body has been burnt and pour water on it from their hands, with
their right thumbs down. They then change into dry clothes. The actual bearers of the bier, who, it will be remembered, had to walk from the house unshod and in wet clothes because of the holiness of the corpse, change into dry clothes directly the pyre is lit. These, however, bathe again now with the other mourners, and again change their clothes.

If the family is rich, they will perhaps arrange for a cow to be milked over the exact spot where the body was burnt for thirteen days.

When a ruling chief dies, his finest war horse follows in the procession immediately in front of the bier; when the corpse has been burnt and the ashes collected, the horse is given away to some Sweeper (Bhangī).

Before observing what the women do whilst the body is burning, we may perhaps pause here for a moment to notice one or two cases in which a corpse is not burned, but buried.

We have already seen that a little child of under eighteen months is not burnt but buried, and that an ascetic is buried in an upright position, his body being surrounded with salt; but it is not so well known that, if a leper dies, or a man suffering from smallpox, he is not burnt, but buried with salt, only in a recumbent posture. The writer was told that the diseased corpses could not be burnt for fear of infection,¹ and that they were buried lying down because of their sins and the amount of evil karma that they had accumulated.

If a man breaks caste by becoming either a Muḥammadan or a Christian, he is treated as though dead to the family. His senior relative places a black earthen pot on his right shoulder, throws it to the ground, and thus breaks it, just as we saw was done at the conclusion of the ceremony at the burning-ground. All the relatives then bathe, to show that the man is dead to them, and after that never mention his name again. On the great annual Śrāddha days an

¹ As a matter of fact, even the corpses of smallpox or leprous patients are often burned nowadays, though rigorists do not approve.
extra ball of rice is offered for a man who has so broken caste.\(^1\)

But now to return to the house. After the men have left, the women all go to the nearest bathing-place and try approximately to time their bathing to the moment when the pyre is lit. They then return home and sit and weep. (We shall study later the special mourning of the widow.)

As the men approach the house on their return from the burning-ground, the nearest relatives to the dead say ‘Om’, and the women reply ‘Rāma’. (Women do not usually repeat the word ‘Om’.)

The funeral party then sit outside the house of the dead man and weep and console each other till the new head of the house gives them permission to go. Before entering their own house, every member of the funeral procession washes his hands and his feet, and, if it is one of the five inauspicious days of the month, also bathes completely and washes his clothes.

Now, and only now, is the son or chief mourner, on whom all the responsibility for the funeral rested, allowed to weep.

If the death has occurred early in the morning, there is no time to cook, and so near relatives who are also under sūtaka would ask the mourners to eat in their houses.

They would not eat wheaten bread, or milk, or much clarified butter, and some would not take rice. On the actual day of the funeral they would not drink tea, and strict people would not take it or anything sweet for thirteen days.

The rules vary with different families, some not eating rice and pulse in the evening, and others refusing various favourite dishes for these thirteen days.

The mourning dress for women in certain parts of India is black, for young girls blue, sārīs, whilst men wear white turbans. In some princely families a white carpet is spread during the time of mourning.

\(^1\) This is not, however, done when a man joins the Brahma or Ārya Samāj.
Women do not wash their hair, and neither they nor men make the auspicious mark on their foreheads whilst sūtaka lasts, for, as we shall see later, no worship can be performed during sūtaka.

Any one is free to go to a wedding or not as he likes, when invited; but a funeral is far more formal, and not only is every friend, acquaintance, and caste-fellow supposed to go to the funeral, but he is also obliged to go and pay a visit of condolence; trade rivals, and even actual enemies, must do so too.

Every evening from five o'clock onwards the elders of the family sit for about an hour and a half and receive these visitors, the men going to the men, and the women to the women. Each visitor stays about five minutes, and, however much he may have disliked the dead man, he spends those five minutes praising him. As there is sūtaka, no refreshment can be offered to a guest, neither can he be given leave to go in the polite formula that asks him to come again; instead, his host indicates when he has had enough of him and his condolence by the blank command—'Get up and go'.

The women and their friends weep and bewail the dead during these visits.

Brāhmans (unlike Rājputs and Kāṭhis) do not hire mourners, but women of the family weep for nine days. Lest excessive grief should injure their health, a priest is called after the first day, who, to try and divert their minds, reads to them the Garuḍa Purāṇa, in which Viṣṇu tells the eagle of the condition of mortals after death, and which also gives directions for śrāddha. Both men and women come and listen to this reading and draw consolation from it.

1 These hired mourners are always women. They all dress in black and cover their faces. The leader stands on a platform and wails out such sentences as 'Alas! He died before he became a grandfather', 'He died before he gained fame as a soldier', and all the other hired mourners, standing round in a circle, respond 'Alas! alas!'
CHAPTER VIII
FUNERAL OFFERINGS

The Soul after Death—Sūtaka.
TENTH DAY ŚRĀDDHA—Removal of Sūtaka.
TWELFTH DAY: Rite of Union—Offerings to Crows.
THIRTEENTH DAY.—Pretā.

We shall understand the funeral ceremonies better if we pause here for a moment and examine the conflicting popular beliefs concerning the adventures that befall the soul after death, for it is these beliefs that decide the actual ritual. Immediately after death the soul of a man is not clothed in a physical body (Sthūla Śarīra), but in the Liṅga Śarīra, which, though it has in all seventeen senses, can neither eat nor drink, and is only the size of a thumb. The moment the thumb-sized vaporous soul leaves the body, two frightful servants of Yama seize it, carry it along for ninety-nine thousand leagues, and present it to Yama (this is, as it were, a preliminary going to Yama, to prove that the right person has been summoned and no mistake made), after which they bring it straight back again to the gate of its own house.

According to the popular belief, it is most important that the dead body should be burnt whilst the soul is away, lest it should re-enter its own corpse, and this is the reason why any delay in taking the body to the burning-ground is avoided.¹

¹ The Gujarāṭi saying runs: 'The soul is linked with the breath. O brother, after that has gone, do not keep the body a minute in the house.'
The little thumb-sized vaporous body remains at the door of its former house for thirteen days\(^1\) and, having no physical body, can take neither food nor water.

Some castes offer a śrāddha on the third day after the death, when they go again to the burning-ground and collect the ashes. But, though in former times the Brāhmans of Kāṭhia-wār also used to offer the first ball on the third day, with the object of forming a physical body and satisfying its cravings, they now wait till after the sūtaka, or ceremonial defilement, has been partially removed on the tenth day, before offering any śrāddha. Even the śrāddha that they offer on the tenth day is impure (*Malina Șođași*) because, as we shall see, they are not even then ceremonially pure from sūtaka.

We have already studied the sūtaka which accursed to the members of a family on the occasion of a birth, but the ceremonial defilement is far heavier when a death takes place. So heavy indeed is this death sūtaka (*Mrı̄taka Sūtaka*), that a Brāhman on the day of the death cannot immediately put pen to paper to say there has been a death and so account for his absence from his work and engagements, a fact which often leads to real embarrassment.\(^2\)

The defilement begins to be lightened on the ninth day after the death, when every member of the caste must go to the temple of Śiva. The men go first, and then the women; before entering the temple, they wash their faces and feet, and then go in, and, beholding the face of the idol (*darṣana*), they pray for the peace of the dead man’s soul.

The priest then offers a lamp of clarified butter to the idol.

Some Brāhmans,\(^3\) before setting out to visit the temples, chew a mixture of *nīm* leaves, areca-nut, and black earth, and

---

\(^1\) According to another belief, for the first nine nights the soul of the dead man is going on a fearful journey, sometimes over heated sand, sometimes through forests all on fire, and at other times through such dense forests that no ray of light penetrates their black depths. To light the soul through these dark glades, a lamp of clarified butter is sent to the temple for the first nine nights after the death.

\(^2\) He may write on his return from the burning-ground.

\(^3\) This is not done by the Nāgara.
when arrived at the temple scatter white millet grain before the idol.

In other Twice-born (though not necessarily Brāhman) castes this temple-visiting is done on the second or third day after the death. The whole caste goes to the temple, the chief mourner (who may be either the eldest or the youngest son), who lit the pyre, wearing on his shoulder a piece of white unwashed fringed cloth. The cloth is folded in four and marked with a red svastika, and the chief mourner has a straight vertical line on his forehead. They all wash their faces and feet outside the temple and 'behold the face' of the idol Śiva, just as the Brāhmans, we saw, did, and on returning home give millet to the pigeons. But, whilst feeding the pigeons, they perform a most symbolic act. They first fill the measure in the ordinary way four times, and then, holding the measure upside down, they attempt four times to fill it. They say that they do this to typify the departure of the dead empty-handed—that it was as impossible for him to take any possession with him as it is for them to make any millet grain remain in an upturned measure. They then take a slate and write the digit 4 (in Sanskrit 8) four times and then four times reversed thus 8. This digit four is called Black or Dirty Four. After this has been done, letters are written in black ink to relatives, telling them of the death and bidding them to the funeral feast.

On the tenth day all the younger members of the family have their moustaches shaved off, and the sūtaka presses less heavily than on the day before.

The chief mourner (who had lit the pyre) goes with the family priest to some place outside the town near a river and there performs the first śrāddha.

Śrāddha is perhaps the most important rite in Hinduism, and the desire to have it rightly performed for himself, and to perform it rightly for his own father, sways a Brāhman's whole life.

The horror of dying unshriven that coloured men's thoughts
in mediaeval Europe is faint compared with a Hindu’s despair of his future state if he have no son to perform the rite for him.

There are altogether three Śrāddha: the Impure (with two groups of balls, first six and then ten); the Semi-pure (in which the rice balls are offered in one group of eleven and another of five); and the Pure (in which the balls are offered in three groups of one, fifteen, and four); altogether fifty-two balls are offered.

**Impure Śrāddha (Malina Ṣoḍaśī).**

The first śrāddha, the Impure Śrāddha (Malina Ṣoḍaśī) is performed whilst the family are still in a condition of sūtaka. It consists of the offering of sixteen balls of rice, i.e. the six which were carried on the dead man’s bier and offered to the spirits of various places and to Agni, and the ten which will now on the tenth day be offered to create a different body (Vātanā Šarīra) as a cover for the soul, in its little thumb-sized vaporous body, or Liṅga Šarīra. The priest and the chief mourner, whom we will take to be the eldest son of the dead man, when they reach a suitable plot of ground at the river-side (which must not be the burning-ground) purify it by sprinkling water over it, and then scatter sesame seeds and barley on it.

They then seat themselves on two of the low stools which they have brought with them and place a third for Viṣṇu to sit on. (It is interesting to notice that these stools have no nails or screws in them, for that would be fatal to the object of the śrāddha, since cold iron frightens away not only evil but also good spirits, and neither the spirits of the ancestors nor the little thumb-sized vaporous body itself could come near, if there were any iron about.)

Viṣṇu is invoked, asked to take his seat on the stool provided for him, and then represented by a knotted blade of darpha-grass, which is placed on it.

Then the priest says on behalf of the son that the śrāddha is performed to provide a body (Vātanā Šarīra) for the father.
A tiny trench is made in the ground running from north-west to south-east and is lined with darbha-grass.

Ten balls of barley flour mixed with sesamum seeds, water, sugar, milk, curds, honey, and clarified butter are arranged in this trench, for they say that, as the body of the dead man was made of dust, the balls must be given to dust, and so they put them on the earth itself. As each ball is placed in the trench, a sentence is repeated; as the ceremonial defilement (Mritaka Sūtaka) is not yet removed, the holy words of the Vedas cannot be used, but they quote sentences from some treatise on funeral rites.

As the first¹ ball is offered, the priest says, and the son repeats after him: ‘May this create a head’; with the second ball: ‘May this create neck and shoulders’; with the third: ‘May this create heart and chest’; the fourth: ‘May this create a back’; the fifth: ‘May this create waist and stomach’; the sixth: ‘May this create thighs and entrails’; the seventh: ‘May this create legs as far as the knees’; the eighth: ‘May this create knees’; the ninth: ‘May this create legs, shins, and feet’; the tenth: ‘May this create power of digesting, and so satisfying hunger and thirst’.

Each ball contains four parts: one part is for Yama, an awful-looking deity; two are for the five elements, which compose the new body (the Vātanā Śarīra); and the fourth for its nourishment.

This new body which now encloses the thumb-sized Liṅga Śarīra is about eighteen inches long, the size, that is to say, of the arm from finger tip to elbow joint.

When all the ten balls are laid in the trench, water is sprinkled on them, and a long cotton thread is laid over them to provide clothing for the new body, this thread, too, being sprinkled with water.

A mark is made on each of the balls, but it should be noticed that this mark is made not of rice, which is always

¹ Contra. Monier Williams, Brāhmanism, p. 293.
auspicious, but of sesamum seeds. The flowers, too, that are laid on the balls are interesting, for they are sesamum flowers, ¹ a blossom called agasty a, and tulasi leaves; no other flowers may be given.

Then comes a ceremony called Śantānjali, when one hundred drops are given to the balls. To perform this rite, water and milk are mixed together in a conch-shell, and drops from it are poured on the balls in the following manner: one drop on the first ball, three on the second, five on the third, seven on the fourth, and so on, till the whole hundred have been dropped.

After this rite has been completed, the son, holding a tulasi leaf, prays silently to Viṣṇu to deliver the dead man ‘from being a departed one in the power of Yama’. He then offers the leaf as the symbol of bhakti (loving devotion) to the blade of knotted darbha-grass representing Viṣṇu. The grass is unplaited, and each knot untied, and Viṣṇu takes his leave, but the polite formula asking him to come again is not used, as this is not an auspicious occasion. The balls are next picked up from the trench and thrown into the river, the son bathes, and the ceremony closes by gifts of grass being made to cows, of laḍḍu sweets to Brāhmans, and of loaves to dogs.

It will be remembered that the object of this Impure Śrāddha (Malina Śoḍaśī) was to provide a body for the disembodied spirit. If this were not done, that spirit (preta) would become a malignant spirit (bhūta), but if this Śrāddha of the Tenth Day has been successful, the departed now possesses a physical body, subject to hunger and thirst, the length of a forearm (Yātanā Śarīra), covering the little thumb-sized vaporous body. This new Yātanā Śarīra remains unchanged near its old home, while the Eleventh- and Twelfth-day Śrāddha are offered, and it accepts and eats the offerings. On the thirteenth day it leaves this world and sets out on its twelve months’ journey to Yama’s kingdom, holding on to

¹ Sesamum flowers can only be offered to dead ancestors (pilaras). never to the gods.
the cow’s tail to cross the river Vaitaraṇī. This journey is
a very terrible one and much worse than the hurried first
journey, and, as we shall see later, special śrāddha are
performed to help the soul on its way. Here we need only
note that at the end of the year it reaches the abode of Yama
still in the body (the Yātanā Śarīra) it has received as the
result of this Tenth-day Śrāddha. It is this Yātanā Śarīra
too which goes before the judgement seat of Yama, who pro-
nounces sentences of heaven or hell according to its accumu-
lated past actions. When its term in either heaven or hell
is served, it will have to take another body, Kāraṇa Śarīra,
and the form of that body will entirely depend again on the
accumulated energy of the soul’s past actions (Karma). It
may be that of a worm, a plant, a god, a demon, a cat, or
a man, but, unlike what the Jainas believe, whatever body the
soul inhabits it inhabits as sole tenant, not as a tenement lodger.

On the tenth day after the completion of the Impure
Śrāddha, the sūtaka or ceremonial defilement is lightened.
(It is quite ended for distant relatives, but in the immediate
family in which the death has occurred it lasts for twelve days.)

The sūtaka is heaviest on the first day of the death before
the body is burnt, when the family cannot touch pen or paper.
All day long they have to wear funeral dress, and so cannot
go to their business. In some parts of India they are not
allowed to touch bed or bedding, but in Kāṭhiawār this is
permissible, though all the bedding used during sūtaka is
sent to the washerman on the eleventh day.

Similarly they have on the tenth day a great cleansing of all
the vessels used during sūtaka, the metal ones being cleaned
with ashes and the earthen pots thrown away. (They do not
have to purify grindstone or pestle and mortar, for these may
not be used till after the tenth day.)

As the rice for the impure funeral offerings was cooked on
the hearth, it also is considered impure, so on the tenth day
the old hearth is dug up and a new one built and plastered
with cow-dung.
The prohibition against hearing music outlasts sūtaka: sometimes the mourners decline to hear it till two months have passed, occasionally even for six, if the man who died was quite young.¹

On the tenth day every member of the family bathes in the house, the men have their moustaches shaved off, the women wash their hair, all the garments that have been worn during sūtaka are washed, and the floor and walls of the house are re-plastered with cow-dung. After all this has been done, though some sūtaka still remains, outsiders can now touch the mourners and can sit on the same carpet with them, but on the morning of the eleventh day they bathe again, and after that day any defilement that remains is chiefly connected with food.

There is another very important aspect of the defilement that we should notice. The sūtaka has not only affected material things, but has rendered the mourners ceremonially impure, and so not only unfit to worship, but also unfit to keep their tutelary god in their house.

On the day of the death some friend of the family, who is himself unaffected by Sūtaka, comes to the house to fetch the idol, bareheaded, dressed only in silk loin-cloth and scarf of ceremony, and wearing sandals of wood, not leathern shoes.

This man carries the idol, probably the phallic emblem of Śiva (a linga with a silver serpent coiled round it arranged on a tiny silver throne), and before him goes another friend of the family similarly dressed, sprinkling water on the road to purify it before the passage of the god.

On the eleventh day, when the sūtaka is lightened, the members of the family can go into the empty room where the god is usually kept, to worship their Īṣṭa Deva (tutelary deity); but the idol itself should not be brought back till the twelfth

¹ Recently State mourning was proclaimed in one of the native States in Kāthiāwār, and while every man had to shave his moustache, and no woman was allowed to wear a bright sārī, or to fetch water from the well in a copper or brass vessel for ten days, no music at all was allowed for three months.
day, in the case of relatives; or till the thirteenth day in the house where the man has died.

On the morning of the twelfth or thirteenth day, then, the removal of sūtaka is practically completed. The family again bathe early in the morning, and the owner of the house brings back the idol and re-installs it, though food cannot be offered to the idol in the actual house of mourning until after the thirteenth day.

Not only have the mourners been unable during the days of sūtaka to worship their idol, but the men of the house have not been allowed to repeat the sacred words of the Gāyatrī mantra, or to perform Sandhyā in the ordinary form. They have, however, been allowed to perform a shortened and altered form of Sandhyā, since a Brāhman who omits it altogether for even the space of three days is thrown back to the ranks of a Südra. But to a devout and spiritually-minded Brāhman it is a very real grief to be cut off from the worship of his god and the beloved words of the Gāyatrī mantra in the time of his greatest sorrow, just when he most longs for the divine consolation and sympathy. To such a man there is deep attraction in the thought of a God Who is "a very present help in time of trouble" and Who Himself promises to be with His children when they walk through this valley overcast by the shadow of death.

We have noticed that the ceremonial defilement caused by sūtaka presses less heavily as the days go by, the mourners passing through distinct stages from complete defilement to less pollution, then to still less, and at last to complete freedom from sūtaka. It has also been noticed that nearness of relationship to the dead man affects the heaviness of the sūtaka, only those in the actual house (father's children, or grandfather's) being impure for twelve days, those within the seventh degree of kinship being ceremonially impure for ten days, and outside that, up to the sixteenth degree, for three days.

1 A Brāhman who sold milk for three days would also become a Südra.
The caste-fellows who go to the burning-ground come home and bathe and are accounted ceremonially pure as soon as evening falls and the lights are lit.

On the eleventh day after the death the son or chief mourner starts out early with the family priest and attendant Brāhmans for the river bank, where they have an enormous amount of worship and purification to go through. Though worshippers of Śiva, they take with them a Śālagrāma, the symbol of Viṣṇu, because he is the god who is popularly supposed to preside over Śrāddha ceremonies, and they probably also take some fire from the household hearth.

Before leaving the house they light a lamp of clarified butter and put it either in the private chapel of the house or else in the room where the man died; they then walk barefoot to some suitable place on the river bank not too near to the burning-ground. There the son performs Sandhyā, which he is now once more allowed to do, goes through the whole of a Brāhman’s morning worship, and finally does reverence either to the idol in a temple of Śiva, if there be one at hand, or else to some pīpal tree growing near. Other learned Brāhmans, having been invited to attend the Śrāddha, watch whilst the son purifies his body from all sin by performing Prāyaścītta. He invokes Viṣṇu and worships him, either under the form of three knotted blades of darbha-grass, or as the Śālagrāma, with the full sixteenfold ritual.

He then recites the text which every Brāhman repeats once a year on the day when he changes his sacred thread, and which implores forgiveness for every sin great or small.

The great sins (Mahāpātaka) are: killing a Brāhman; drinking wine; theft; intrigue with a guru’s wife; and association with any who have committed such sins. Forgiveness for these sins is only asked every year, for, as a Brāhman gentleman quite truly remarked to the present writer: ‘One does not kill a Brāhman every day’.

For the smaller sins (Upāpātaka) forgiveness is asked twice a day. These are: untruthfulness; cheating; refusing to give
alms to the deserving; eating forbidden things, such as garlic or onions; smoking; or doing anything unworthy of a Brāhmaṇ in mind, body, or speech.

When the son has thus asked forgiveness, he sips the five products of the cow which confer ceremonial purity, i.e. milk, curds, clarified butter, urine, and cow-dung (Pañcagavya), though many Brāhmans nowadays substitute milk, curds, clarified butter, honey, and sugar (Pañcamṛita). In either case the milk thus sipped should, if possible, consist of a little of the froth upon a young calf’s mouth when she has finished drinking, and a little of the milk she has left undrunk in the cow. The son of the dead man should then bathe about ten times in the river, but if he be delicate, he is allowed to bathe once in the river and to symbolize the remaining nine baths by sprinkling water on his forehead. After bathing, his body is besmeared with the above-mentioned five products of a cow (the Pañcagavya) and anointed with five things: first, with water in which gold is kept; then, with water containing areca-nut; thirdly, with water in which herbs are soaking; next, he daubs himself with clay that has been taken from a cow-pen, a stable, or an ant-hill; lastly, with water containing some darbha-grass. He then bathes again, and after this puts on a fresh loin-cloth which is either newly bought or just washed (his old loin-cloth being given away to a beggar), and now at long last he is regarded as ceremonially pure, outwardly and inwardly free from sūtaka, and so free to perform ‘occasional’ religious rites. There is one interesting point that should be noticed about the new loin-cloth: it must have no stitches on it, nor may the shawl-like dress (sāri) that the women wear on a Śrāddha day have any stitches. Similarly, on a Śrāddha day no relative, male or female, is allowed to sew, lest any sewing or stitching on that day should sew up the throat of the new body that is being created for the dead man, and so he might never be able to drink water again.

The son of the dead man next besmears his forehead, chest,
throat, shoulders, and arms with ashes, knots up his long
lock of hair which had been left untied, and sips water three
times.

He is now ceremonially pure, and so may repeat the Vedic
mantras.

The Śālagrāma, the symbol of Viṣṇu, is put on a stool, and
after performing Prāṇāyāma, the inhaling and expiring of
breath in a prescribed way, he worships it with the sixteenfold
worship, repeating as he does so the mantras appropriate to
the occasion (the Puruṣasūkta mantras).

This is followed by the worship of Satyeśa. A white cloth
is spread on a low stool, and on this cloth an eight-petalled
lotus-flower set in a sort of square is outlined in rice. In the
centre of this flower design they place a new copper or earthen
vessel filled with water, in which a collection of things has been
dropped, consisting of white and red powder, flowers, five
different kinds of leaves, areca-nut, and pice. On the top of
this vessel another smaller one of the same metal is placed,
filled either with water or rice, but preferably with rice.
Resting on this upper vessel is a gold image of Kṛiṣṇa. His
eight chief wives¹ are represented, if possible, by a gold image
of each placed in each of the eight petals of the lotus. (If
a gold image cannot be afforded, an areca-nut is put in each
of the eight petals.) The gold images, having recently come
from the fire at the goldsmith’s, contain no god until certain
mantras (the Vahnyuttārāṇa) are repeated over them. They
are then bathed in ten ways very much as described in the
purification of the son, excepting that a bath of ashes is
substituted for the bathing with water containing herbs.
They are next breathed on, and their eyes are opened. When
the god has been installed in each of them in this shortened²
form, they are worshipped with the usual sixteenfold ritual.
The son then circumambulates them (with his right hand to

¹ Rukmini, Jambuvati, Satyā, Nagnajīfi, Kālindi, Bhadrā, Mitra-Vindā,
Satyabhāmā.
² For full form see below, pp. 409 ff.
the god) four times, whilst the priest prays that the preta may be delivered from its disembodied state\(^1\) and that its sins may be removed.

A sacrifice (Prāyaścitta Homa) is then performed for the purification of the preta from any of the thirty-two ritual sins that the dead man may have committed whilst dying, such as accidentally touching an unclean thing at the time of death, dying on a bedstead, not being shaved or not being bathed before death. For this sacrifice a special type of altar is built\(^2\) of raised clay. To purify it, the raised altar is swept three times with blades of darbha-grass, and then a little cow-dung is plastered over it, and a hollow is scooped out in it with a wooden spoon, the dust this creates being swept away in a special manner by the joined thumb and third finger\(^3\) of the right hand; for when the fingers are thus arranged, they remove demons. (It is for this reason that, when cow-urine is sprinkled, it is always done by the third finger snapping against the thumb.)

The altar is then further purified by being sprinkled with water. The fire which they have brought with them from the house, or which they have lit immediately on arrival at the river bank, and which has witnessed all the ceremonies, is now placed by the officiating priest (the Ācārya) on the altar. This fire is called Aditi and is considered to be the mother of all the gods. At the south of the altar another Brāhman is now seated. He represents the god Brahmā, and he supervises the ceremony and prompts the performer. If in some remote village no learned Brāhman is available, the god Brahmā is represented by fifty blades of darbha-grass placed on a stool to the south of the altar. When this prompter says that the

---

\(^1\) It will be remembered, that according to one belief the spirit has by now obtained a Vātanā Sarīra. Differing opinions are, of course, held.

\(^2\) This built-up altar is called a Sthanḍila, as opposed to a hollowed-out altar (Kuṇḍa).

\(^3\) The third finger is sacred to Viṣṇu; the thumb represents a Brāhman, so a ēṇḍalo is always made with the thumb on the forehead; the second finger shows a quarrel; the fourth points the way.
right moment has arrived, the officiating priest, who is seated to the north of the altar, welcomes the fire by pouring some water into a pot (called the \textit{pranītā pātra}).

A rather elaborate rite with darbha-grass is next performed. The officiating Brāhmaṇ (theĀcārya) takes in his hand a root bearing three blades of darbha-grass and plucks out the middle blade of the three, which he throws away to the north. He then takes three other loose blades of grass and lays them across the two still left on the root. Next, he cuts these two off from the root and puts them into the water-pot, throwing the three loose ones to the north as an offering to the gods and saints who dwell in that direction. Then with his right hand he fills a smaller water-pot three times from the bigger pot, and transfers it from where it was on the ground at his right hand to the ground at his left. All this takes about five minutes, and when it is completed, he purifies the other pots that are to be used during the ceremony by sprinkling water on them with two pieces of cut darbha-grass, which he takes out of the big water-pot.

The rice and clarified butter are next prepared. The rice is washed three times and put to cook\textsuperscript{1} in a pot over the fire. (This pot should be of copper, and if so, after the ceremony is over, it will be given to the priest; if it be earthen, however, it will be thrown away.) The Brāhmaṇ representing Brahmā then puts the butter to warm on the fire. When both the rice and butter are ready, offerings are made to the fire. First three pieces of a particular kind of wood called \textit{palāśa} are thrown into the flames. Water is poured round it, and clarified butter is poured into it from a wooden spoon. Rice, clarified butter, and sugar are mixed together, taken between the thumb and the tips of the second and third fingers\textsuperscript{2} and dropped into the fire. Following this, one thousand offerings of sesamum seeds mixed with several things, such as butter,

\textsuperscript{1} In a Śrāddha of Kaṇabhis that the writer watched, instead of rice, wheat was used and mixed uncooked with the five nectars. The out-castes, however, use cooked rice and treacle.

\textsuperscript{2} This position of the fingers is called \textit{Mrīgī mudrā}. 
sugar, scented leaves, scented grass, and incense are made to
the fire, whilst the appropriate verse (Viṣṇu mantra) is recited
by the priest.

To conclude the sacrifice, a coco-nut is put in the fire, and,
to ensure its being completely consumed, clarified butter is
poured on the flames, which blaze up brightly. By this last
offering of clarified butter the god Rudra in his terrible form
is propitiated. The sacrifice for the ritual sins of the dead
man’s last moments (Prāyaścītta Homa) is now completed,
and the son bathes, putting herbs on his head. This done,
he changes his sacred thread (for the old one has become
unholy), hanging the new one over the left shoulder in the
usual auspicious way.

This changing of the sacred thread\(^1\) marks a further stage
in the passage back to complete ceremonial purity after the
death defilement.

(The last stage will be passed when the Śrāddha of Union
on the twelfth day is completed; and, after that night is
passed, even the food in the house of mourning will be pure
and can be offered to the god.)

Now the Śālagrāma is again worshipped in the sixteenfold
way, and Viṣṇu is asked to take up his abode in the sixteen
parts of the worshipper’s body.

Five gods are now worshipped: \(^2\) Brahmā, Viṣṇu, Rudra,
Yama, and Tatpuruṣa. To represent them, they take a silver
image for Brahmā,\(^3\) a gold one for Viṣṇu, a copper one for
Rudra, iron for Yama, and lead for Tatpuruṣa, purify them, and
then bathe them ten times.

Five Brāhmans are now asked to pray, each praying sepa-
rately to one of the gods and using a mantra taken from the
Śukla Yajur-veda Sāiḥhitā.

Each image is placed on a metal vessel, and in front of

---

\(^1\) The thread has to be changed and the old one thrown away after any
defilement has been contracted by doing such things as riding a donkey
or a camel, going on board a ship, or coming out of prison.

\(^2\) Pañcā deva sthāpanā.

\(^3\) The worship of Brahmā is rare enough to be noticed.
each god his own special grain is arranged on the correctly coloured cloth. Thus rice is placed on white\(^1\) cloth in front of Brahmā, green pulse is put on green cloth for Viṣṇu, wheat on red cloth for Rudra, black pulse on black cloth for Yama, and sesamum seeds on yellow cloth for the Tatpuruṣa.

Next, a long piece of white cloth is taken, and seven knots are made in it; inside the first five knots are tied these five different kinds of grain, split grain is tied in one of the remaining knots, and a grain like black mustard in the other. This piece of knotted cloth is stretched in front of the five gods, and when all is arranged, two special verses are recited as a prayer to the five gods, first asking them to be present, and then asking them to deliver the preta of the dead man from its disembodied state.

*Semi-pure (Ekādaśa) Śrāddha.*

As we have seen the mourners pass through various stages, from complete defilement to complete ceremonial purity, so the various Śrāddha are looked on, first as impure, then as semi-pure, and at last are considered to be quite pure. But of course, even when the offering is pure, it is always inauspicious, and should therefore be performed as quickly as possible.

To perform the Ekādaśa (the Semi-pure) Śrāddha on the eleventh day, first of all eleven tiny bundles of darbha-grass, each of which contains three blades, are taken, and one knot is tied in each bundle to represent eleven gods. These are now invoked; amongst them are: Somarāja, Havyavāha (the carrier of offerings to the gods), Kavyavāha (the carrier of offerings to ancestors), Kāla (time under the aspect of the destroyer), Rudra (Siva in his terrible form), Puruṣa (the divinity living in any man), and Viṣṇu.

\(^1\) These colours are those which a Yogi in meditation (*Sāṁādhi*) would see representing each different god.
Each bundle of grass is then bathed in water containing barley and sesame seed, which is poured out of a conch-shell.

The son puts a ring of darbha-grass round the third finger of his right hand and worships the gods in the five-fold way.

Meanwhile eleven balls of rice (*piṇḍa*) have been prepared by some ceremonially pure person, probably either the son or the officiating priest; this time the rice is only washed once, for the Srāddha must be performed as quickly as possible; but, as before, the rice is mixed with eight things and moulded into the shape of tennis-balls.

The ground is first purified by having barley and sesame seeds scattered over it (which makes it as holy as the land of Gayā in Bengal), and then the balls are placed in a row in front of eleven bundles of darbha-grass, and as each ball is put down, the name of the particular one of the eleven gods to which it is offered is pronounced.

When all eleven have been arranged, worship is done to them in the following way: water is poured on them, a cotton thread is arranged over them all, a mark is made on them (white in colour, not the auspicious red), and tulasi leaves are offered; rice is not offered, but in its place sesame seeds are given, and then areca-nut, and finally incense and lamp-worship are offered.

A conch-shell is next filled with milk and water, and its contents poured on the eleven balls. As this is done, a mantra from the Yajur-veda is recited, asking that the thirst of the dead man's (Mr. So-and-so's) disembodied spirit (preta) may be assuaged. As the actual name of the dead man is mentioned, the officiant changes his sacred thread, and similarly all Brāhmans present change their sacred threads from the left shoulder to the right; as soon as they mention the name of a god, it is changed back to the left. (A Brāhman ¹ who

¹ In each family only the oldest member need perform the daily śrāddha for the dead ancestors.
performs Śrāddha, or rather Tarpana, every day for his dead ancestors always changes the sacred thread each time he mentions their names.)\(^1\) The ceremony ends by the eleven balls being put into a broad copper vessel and then thrown into the river, or if there is no river near, they are given to a cow to eat.

The knots in the darbha-grass are untied, which sets the gods free to go, and directly they have left, the blades of grass are thrown into the river, and this is also done with the ring of darbha-grass, which the performer had put on at the beginning of the rite. He now bathes, putting herbs on his head as he does so, and afterwards puts on a new loincloth and besmears his forehead with ashes.

But his work is not yet finished, for though he has offered the Ekādaśa Śrāddha, he must now perform the Fivefold Śrāddha (Pañcā Śrāddha), and these two together are thought of as composing a sixteenfold Semi-pure Śrāddha, corresponding to the sixteenfold Impure Śrāddha which we have already studied. (Altogether, we may remember, fifty-two balls of rice have to be offered in Śrāddha.)

The officiant therefore now takes five bundles of darbha-grass, each containing three blades, and knots each bundle to represent the five gods: Brahmā, Viṣṇu, Rudra, Yama, and Tatpuruṣa. These he arranges so that they face the north, each bundle resting on another.

He worships the grass in the fivefold way, and then arranges five balls of the cooked rice mixed with seven\(^2\) special things (sesamum seeds, water, sugar, milk, curds, honey, clarified butter) in a row. The row runs from east to west, and each ball in it rests on a bundle of darbha-grass on which water has been sprinkled. As soon as the balls are arranged, water is

\(^1\) With regard to mentioning the name of the dead, there does not seem to be any special rule. The dead man's mother is generally too heartbroken at his loss ever to be able to introduce his name casually into conversation, but other members of the family mention the name if there is any occasion.

\(^2\) Strictly speaking these are regarded as eight things, the cooking being thought of as an added ingredient.
sprinkled on them too, from a conch-shell. If the chief mourner can afford it, a loin-cloth (with a red or a plain border, but not an indigo one) is placed on each ball, if not, one long white cotton thread is laid along them all. Sometimes, instead of a loin-cloth, a rich man places a rupee on each ball; in either case the money or the cloth goes to the family priest or his deputy who is performing the Śrāddha. Water is then again poured from the conch-shell, and the fivefold worship is offered to the balls, sesamum seeds being substituted for rice when the Naivedya is offered to the balls, and five copper coins being also given to each ball. The priest then recites two different mantras, praying that the dead man’s spirit (preta) may be delivered from its disembodied state. The balls and the rice that was placed on them are thrown into a river, and, as before, the bundles of darbha-grass are un-knotted, and they and the performer’s grass ring are also flung into the stream.

The son again bathes with five herbs on his head, puts on a fresh and absolutely new unwashed and untouched loin-cloth, and wraps a smaller one round his shoulders. (These, being pure, will afterwards be given to the priest.) He again smears his forehead and ties his top-knot, and then comes back pure to the place of the Śrāddha, where, the Semi-pure Śrāddha being finished, he is now ready to perform the Pure Śrāddha which follows.

It is important to remember that during all these ceremonies no iron may be brought near the place. We saw that the stools had no screws, and the performer is also careful to see that no one has anything like an iron key on his person, for that too would frighten the spirits of ancestors (pitrīs) away.

_Pure Śrāddha (Uttama Śoḍaṣi)._  

Still on this crowded eleventh day, and following the Semi-pure Śrāddha, comes the Pure Śrāddha; but before it can be begun, the son of the dead man must marry a male to a female calf. Two calves, each about a year old, ought to be married,
FUNERAL OFFERINGS

but if it is altogether beyond his means to afford real live
animals, they may be represented 1 by two bundles of darbha-
grass, each with a mindhală nut tied in it. If it be quite
impossible for any reason to go through the ceremony of marry-
ing the calves or the grass now, it must not be entirely
omitted, but should be performed at the time of the yearly
Srāddha.

If, however, the marriage is carried out in the proper way
and at the proper time, a square altar (Vedi) is made in the
centre of a plastered square of ground, each side of the altar
being about a cubit in length and four inches high. At
each corner of the plastered square four earthen pots are
placed.

A stool is put in the north-east corner of this square of
ground, and over it a red piece of cloth is spread. Wheat
grains are arranged on this cloth in the design of a four-
petalled lotus-flower, five copper vessels being placed on this
flower design, one on each petal, and one in the centre of the
lotus.

A coco-nut is laid on each vessel, and then five different
goddesses are invoked and invited to be present.2 If the
family of the dead man can afford it, five cloths are offered
to the goddesses, but the cost of the death and funeral cere-
monies may already have been so heavy that only one cloth
can be offered, and even if that be too expensive, they quote
the pretty Indian proverb: ‘If you cannot give a whole
flower, give the petal’, and wrap a separate white cotton
thread round each vessel and coco-nut to symbolize the giving
of cloth.

The performer then throws white and red powder on the
coco-nut, marks it with a white and also with an auspicious
red mark, and offers coloured flowers to it.

Fire is brought and put into another, but smaller, altar,
which adjoins the Vedi altar. This little altar is purified

1 The calves were so represented when the writer watched this Srāddha.
2 Nandā, Sumanasā, Gaurī, Surabhi, and Bhadrā.
with the same ceremonies that we saw used to purify the bigger altar in the Prāyaścitta Homam, but now an earthen pot is brought and placed to the north of the small altar. This pot is divided into two by an interior barrier made of unbaked dough, water being placed in one division of the pot and milk in another. Some more unbaked dough is taken and put on the fire to bake till it is partially cooked, and some rice, milk, and sugar are also put in a smaller pot on the fire to cook.

When the rice is cooked, the god Rudra is invoked and invited to come and live in the fire, and the rice is thrown into the fire in handfuls eleven times as an offering to him.

Pūṣan, the toothless god, a form of one of the twelve suns, is invoked and invited to take up his abode in the fire, and half of the partially cooked dough is soaked in clarified butter and given to him, whilst the rest of the dough and anything that is left of the rice is offered to the fire itself as Agni.

This done, the two calves are led round the fire four times, or else the bundles of grass representing them are carried round it four times. The animals are then placed so as to face the east, and their tails are held together. The ends of their tails are next dipped into a shallow dish filled with water, and whilst this is being done, mantras are recited, praying that the preta may be raised from his present state to a higher one.

The male calf is now untied and turned loose in the jungle, but before he goes, the divided pot (in which the milk represented the water of the Ganges and the water the river Jamnā) is given to him to drink from, and green grass is given him to eat, and he is asked to help the preta in crossing the river Vaitaraṇi, and also to be a witness at the court

1 This, like all similar divisions, is called Gangā-Jamnā.
2 It will be remembered that Pūṣan was the mannerless god who laughed when the goddess Sati threw herself into the fire to avenge the insult done to her husband, and it was for this reason that Śiva knocked his teeth out.
of Yama that the funeral ceremonies have been properly performed.

The male calf is also marked with a wheel on his left thigh and a trident on the right (at first these marks are made in red powder, but later on they are branded), and any one trying to take a calf with such markings for his own use will assuredly go to hell. The female calf is given to a Brāhman.

The chief mourner bathes and dons a new untouched cloth ready to perform the Ekoddīṣṭa Śrāddha, the first of the three parts of the Pure Śrāddha.

The condition of the preta has been steadily improving. The Impure Śrāddha provided the disembodied spirit with a body, the Semi-pure Śrāddha raised him from the lowest stage in which a preta could be to a gradually improving one, and now we are to study the Śrāddha that will help him to become a pītṛi instead of a preta. Hitherto the Śrāddha have consisted of offerings to several gods (sometimes four in number, sometimes eleven, sometimes five, besides that to the spirit of the dead man), but on this occasion, only one ball will be offered, and that solely to the dead man’s spirit.

In the old days this Śraddha used to be performed at the end of a year, now it is commenced on the eleventh day after the death, and completed on the twelfth.

It is extremely important, for if it be not correctly performed, the dead man’s spirit will remain a preta and never become a pītṛi.

At the beginning of the rite Viṣṇu is worshipped under the form of a Śālāgrāma in the fivefold way, and to do this the performer of the Śrāddha faces east, or sometimes north.

Next a bundle of three blades of darbha-grass is knotted and placed to the south to represent a pītṛi, and turning towards the south, the performer worships it, invoking the pītṛi by throwing sesamum seeds on the blades of grass.

A ball of rice has then to be offered. To offer this pīṇḍa to the pītṛi, the performer, wearing his sacred thread over his

1 Sometimes called the Ādya Śrāddha.
right shoulder and bending his left knee, takes the ball in his hand and presents it with the thumb inclined towards the ground. Afterwards he places it on some other darbha-grass, which has been sprinkled with water. Then a white mark is made on the ball, and certain flowers and leaves are placed on it. Now there are six things that the pitris love, but of these six the leaves of the tulasi plant and the flowers and seeds of the sesame plant are the dearest of all; so that, if possible, the whole six, or at least three, should be placed on the ball.

A thread to represent clothes is next laid on it, and the performer prays that the gift of this ball may assuage the hunger of the preta; and then, as he goes on to ask that its thirst may be quenched, he pours water on the ball with his thumb earthwards.

If, owing to any circumstances, the eight gifts usually made at the time of a man's death were not given, they are promised now, and distributed on the thirteenth day. It will be remembered that, before the two calves were married, five copper vessels were arranged on a lotus; these are now given away to Brāhmans, the ball is thrown into the river, and the performer bathes.

Now that everybody is pure, and the ceremonial defilement caused by the death has been removed, people can be asked to dine in the house once more, and feasts are given on the eleventh, twelfth, and thirteenth days. (Food is pure enough for mortals on the eleventh day, but not for gods till the Rite of Union is performed.) At least fifty-two Brāhmans must be invited, to correspond with the fifty-two balls offered in Śrāddha. And it is essential that they should come, otherwise the preta will not be delivered, for what a Brāhman eats has, as it were, a sacrificial value, for it is accounted as given to Agni. The near relatives and the members of the household

---

1 The other three, besides those mentioned, are the Agastya, the Bhrīṅgarāja, and the Satapātrikā.
2 See pp. 140, 141.
also come, but no one else is very anxious to do so, for it is not a very auspicious occasion. If the dead man had lived to a good old age, outside guests might come, for such a death is not so very unlucky; but after the death of a young man it is difficult to get even children to attend the funeral feast, and, except the fifty-two Brāhmans, none but children would think of coming.

It is considered fitting that the dead man's daughter or her sons bear the expense of the feast on the eleventh day, the next-of-kin, whether son or father, providing those on the twelfth and thirteenth days.

On the twelfth day the son of the dead man and all the Brāhmans go again to the same spot on the river bank to perform a most interesting rite, the object of which is to provide the spirit, which has now changed from a preta into a pitri, with fifteen resting-places on his twelve-month journey to the land of Yama.

Fifteen bundles of darbha-grass are placed on the special screwless stool, and the pitris are invoked. (The names of those invoked differ according to the time of the year.)

Fifteen balls of rice are placed in front of the bundles of grass, each ball being offered to provide food for the spirit at the various rest-houses which he reaches at the close of different periods of time. The first is offered to provide food at the rest-house he will reach at the end of the first month, the month, of course, being counted from the time of the man's death. The second ball is for the spirit to receive at the end of a month and a half (i.e. at the end of the third fortnight after the death). The third ball is provided for the end of the second month; the fourth for the end of the third month; the fifth for the end of the fourth month, and the sixth for the end of the fifth; the seventh ball, however, is provided for the close of the fifth month and a half after the death; the eighth ball for the end of the sixth month; the ninth for the end of the seventh month; the tenth for the end of the eighth month; the eleventh for the end of the ninth month; the twelfth for
the end of the tenth month; the thirteenth for the end of the eleventh month. Then the fourteenth is provided for the end of the eleventh month and a half, and finally the fifteenth ball for the end of the twelfth month.

If, however, there should be an extra month in that particular year, an extra bundle of darbha-grass and an extra ball of rice are provided, for the poor soul's journey will be lengthened if he has been so unfortunate as to die in a year that has thirteen months. Anyhow, the journey will be terrible enough, and so the balls are offered to provide the spirit with water and clothing, as well as food, at the resting-places on its way. It will be remembered that immediately after death the soul went to the court of Yama, on a hasty journey for inspection, when its Liṅga Śarīra was only the size of a thumb, and could move with great speed, but could not experience pain. Now, however, the soul possesses a Yātānā Śarīra the size of a cubit, which can and does suffer on the journey.

At first it seems strange that there should be two journeys to Yama's kingdom, the one immediately after death, and this other twelve-month-long journey; but the reason is this: sometimes a mistake is made, and the wrong person taken to Yama's court.

When a person is unconscious for a long time, but ultimately recovers, his friends know that he has made the quick journey to Yama, and has been sent back again.

Once upon a time a very embarrassing mistake was made by burning a body too soon. The soul of a Jaina lady called Jāna was taken by mistake for a Muḥammadan lady of the same name. When Yama saw the Jaina lady, he at once realized the blunder and, sending her back to earth, summoned the Muḥammadan lady. But when the poor spirit of the Jaina Jāna came back home, she found that her body had been already burnt, and so there was nothing for her to do but to enter the body of the Muḥammadan lady, the other Jāna, whose spirit by now had started for Yama's court.
Unfortunately there is a great difference between Muḥammadan and Jaina etiquette, and difficulties arose at once, the modest Jaina spirit refusing to take her body into a Muḥammadan house, and expressing her horror at meat-eating. This enraged the Muḥammadan Jāna’s sons, who drove her forth from their compound, whilst the Jaina friends absolutely refused to receive a Muḥammadan lady who said she was inhabited by their dead relative’s spirit. So till her real death the poor woman passed a miserable existence, living on alms.

A more famous case was that of the first Śaṅkarācārya, who deliberately left his body in a cave and sent his spirit into the body of a dead king which was lying awaiting cremation, in order to find out how kings lived and moved. At first every one thought that the king had only been in a swoon which they had mistaken for death, but the re-animated king was so much cleverer than he had formerly been, that the Prime Minister suspected something and ordered that all bodies lying in trances and all corpses should at once be burnt; and so Śaṅkarācārya had to hurry back to his first body.

Another ceremony, the Sainyojana Śrāddha, is performed on the twelfth day. It is in some respects the most important of all the Śrāddha, for, if it be successfully accomplished, it unites the pitṛi with his other ancestors, and so ensures his being not a wandering ghost, but a pitṛi in full standing.

Strictly speaking, it should be performed at the end of twelve months from the death, but as there is no certainty in these evil days of the Kaliyuga that a man’s son will be alive at the year’s end, it is now allowed by the religious books to be performed on the twelfth day, in order that, whatever befall later on, there may be no chance of its being omitted.

So effectual is this Śrāddha, that, if it has been satisfactorily performed, the fortnightly, monthly, and subsequent Śrāddhas may be omitted. (Though, in any case, on those days it is well to give a Brāhman an earthen pot containing water,
a handful of rice, and a pice inside it, and with a sweetmeat on
its mouth; and at the same time the Brâhman should either
be fed, or given the materials for his food.)

The Sañyojana Śrâddha can be performed either at home
or on the river bank. In any case the invitation to the
Brâhmans who, as we shall see later, are to represent the pitri,
must be given the evening before, in order that during the
night the spirits of the pitri may actually enter them, and so
they may represent these pitri really, and not in name
only.

On the twelfth day the ceremony begins with the worship
of Viṣṇu under the form of a Śalagrâma in the sixteen ways.
Five or six Brâhmans are then feasted on the finest food. If
the dead man had himself been a Brâhman, these must include
his son-in-law, or his daughter’s son.

All these Brâhmans are chosen with the most meticulous
care for this, the most important of all the Śrâddha: they must
be without any physical defects, and as perfect in body as the
law of Manu demands, and amongst their number neither an
astrologer, nor a native physician may be included.

Three of these Brâhmans represent three pitri, and two of
them represent two of the Viṣvedevâh 1 named Kâla and Kâma.
One other Brâhman might be invited to represent the preta,
but he would be almost certain to decline to do anything so
inauspicious and such as would afterwards entail such elaborate
and endless purifications. So, in default of a Brâhman, the
preta is generally represented by a knotted bundle of ḍarbha-
grass.

Viṣṇu (under the form of a Śalagrâma) is placed so as to
face the west, and he is considered as watching over all the
ceremony.

The two Brâhmans representing the Viṣvedevâh face the
cast, and so does the performer of the Śrâddha, whilst the
pitri face the north.

1 There are altogether thirteen Viṣvedevâh, different ones being sum-
moned for different ceremonies.
FUNERAL OFFERINGS

The performer takes barley in his hand and, after welcoming the Viśvedevāḥ by throwing grains of it towards them, seats them and asks them to help in the performance of the Śrāddha and to keep their minds pure and quiet during the ceremony.

He then welcomes the pitṛi, changing, as he does so, his thread from his left to his right shoulder. (It should be noticed that the Brāhmans representing the pitṛi themselves do not change their threads, but wear them over the auspicious left shoulder throughout the rite.) The performer throws sesame seeds towards the pitṛi, as he welcomes them, and asks them to keep their minds quiet and pure, and he then promises that he himself will try and keep his own mind free from worldly thoughts.

As soon as the Viśvedevāḥ and pitṛi are seated and welcomed, the performer of the Śrāddha washes each of their right big toes with pure water, and puts white paste made of sandal-wood, and some flowers, on each washed and worshipped big toe. This done, he washes his hands and marks their foreheads with the same white paste. Each Brāhman is then presented with a new loin-cloth of cotton and another of silk and several brass vessels.

The bundle of grass representing the preta is welcomed with sesame seed and worshipped in the same way with water, sandal-wood paste, and flowers. Next, the three pitṛi are named: they usually represent the father (Mr. So-and-so), grandfather (Mr. . . .), and great-grandfather (Mr. . . .) of the dead man; but if it were a young man who had died, and his father were still living, the pitṛi would represent the grandfather, great-grandfather, and great-great-grandfather.

In the same way, if the Śrāddha is being performed for a married woman, the pitṛi represent her mother-in-law, grandmother-in-law, and great-grandmother-in-law.

In front of the two Brāhmans who represent the Viśvedevāḥ they arrange on a leaf-plate marked with a white mark some flowers or tulasī leaves, a ring of darbha-grass, and some barley
grains, and close to the leaf-plate a copper spoon holding water.

The same things are arranged before the three Brāhmans representing the pitṛi, and before the darbha-grass representing the preta, excepting that in both cases sesamum seeds are substituted for the barley.

The performer next takes up the spoon holding water, which was in front of the preta, and pours one-third of its contents on the ground in front of the pitṛi Brāhman who represents the father, one-third in front of the Brāhman representing the pitṛi of the grandfather, and the remainder in front of the Brāhman who represents the great-grandfather.

No water is poured in front of the Brāhmans representing the Viśvedevāḥ, but later on they will be given the spoons that had been laid in front of them, and similarly the three pitṛi Brāhmans will take away their own spoons.

The performer himself brings hot cooked rice from his own house (for the pitṛi always enjoy hot cooked food) and puts it first on the plates of the pitṛi, then on those of the Viśvedevāḥ, and lastly on the plate of the preta.

All the food put on to the preta's plate is so inauspicious that it will either be thrown into a river, or given to cows. (It is safest and wisest to give it to a cow.) The pitṛi, however, and Viśvedevāḥ Brāhmans will eat and enjoy what is put before them, and, indeed, it is a very holy and a very sumptuous meal that they are given, for the performer goes on to bring sweetmeats, and curry, and vegetables, bhajiyās and purīs, and all sorts of nice things that are eaten with curry. But whatever else he gives or does not give, honey, clarified butter, and sugar must be included in the feast. The performer then repeats the mantra, saying: 'I pour water round this dish containing my food, since I look on food as Brahmā and water as truth'; and as he says it, he sprinkles a little over the food placed in front of each Brāhman, and in order to give them a pressing invitation to dine, he takes each visitor's hand by the thumb and puts it on his particular leaf-plate.
Then all dine solemnly, speechlessly, and satisfactorily. Their host asks them at the end of the meal if they have really satisfied their hunger; and, if they cannot be pressed to take any more, he pours a little water into the cavity of each of their right hands.

After the feast comes the great moment when the preta is really united to the pitṛi.

To prepare for it, cooked rice is again brought, and this is mixed with the eight special things mentioned before, and then divided into two portions. From one portion three balls are made, and from the other portion one large ball. (It is important to notice that these four balls complete the fifty-two balls (pīṇḍa) that are offered after a death.)

Three of these balls are given to the three pitṛi, each name being recited as the ball is deposited on a blade of darbha-grass in front of his place, and the fourth and biggest ball is given to the preta, his name also being mentioned. Each of the four balls is, like the rest of the fifty-two, slightly oval, not round, in shape.

They are then worshipped with water, sandal-wood marking, flowers, and sesamum seed, and a long cotton thread, long enough to cover all four, is spread over them.

Now all is ready for the great moment, so the performer of the Śrāddha, who, it must never be forgotten, should be the son of the dead man, says: 'I will now effect the union of the preta with my ancestors in the presence of Viṣṇu and these Brāhmans'. So saying, he picks up a thin gold wire and, bending it, cuts with it the big ball (pīṇḍa) that represented the preta into three parts, repeating, as he cuts it, the name of Rāma or Kṛiṣṇa. Then he takes these three bits of the preta's pīṇḍa and unites one part with the pīṇḍa of the father, another with that of the grandfather, and the third with that of the great-grandfather, and afterwards arranges the long cotton thread so that it stretches over these three enlarged balls.

Many members of the other Twice-born castes follow an
even more striking ritual. They believe that the three divisions into which the ball (piṇḍa) of the preta is divided represent an actual division of that preta into three parts: the head, which is subsequently joined to the piṇḍa of the father, the heart, which is joined to that of the grandfather, and the feet which are joined to the piṇḍa of the great-grandfather. So strongly do they feel that the 'body' of the preta itself is cut, that they will not do the cutting themselves, but call in a man of a special caste known as a cutter (Kāṭaliyā) and pay him two or three rupees for performing his dire office; but once it is performed, they dismiss him, and the performer of the Śrāddha, the chief mourner, will not even look at him, either then or ever.

Whatever method, however, is adopted to cut the piṇḍa of the preta, the chief mourner himself unites it with the piṇḍas of the ancestors, taking the most punctilious care as to the way in which these three portions of the fourth ball are rubbed and united with each ancestor's ball.

If the slightest crack or division between the original piṇḍa and the addition from the preta's piṇḍa could be detected, the union of the preta with the pitṛi would not be perfect, so the performer rubs and kneads and welds the new and the old portions into an absolutely homogeneous mass, still oval in shape.

These three enlarged balls are then worshipped with water, sandal-wood paste, flowers, and tulasī leaves.

When all this is completed, the performer of the Śrāddha promises to give to Brāhmans beds, pots, clothing, shoes, a cow, and different kinds of fruits, in order that the departed spirit may have the use of all these things in the next life.

But, besides promising these, he then and there gives three things to Brāhmans. First, he takes a bronze pot filled with hot clarified butter, looks steadily into it till he has seen the reflection of his own face, and then hands it over to a Brāhman; next, he takes another bronze pot, filled this time with cold coagulated clarified butter, into which he sticks some
silver coins, and gives that too to the Brāhmans; and, lastly, he gives them a copper pot filled with sesamum seeds, and also containing a few pice.

The ceremony is now finished, so forgiveness is asked from the Śālagramā for any mistake or omission that may have been made during the long and elaborate ritual, and Viṣṇu is worshipped with the sixteenfold worship and dismissed with three bows.

The three balls representing the pīṭrī have still to be got rid of, so the performer picks up the middle ball of the three, smells it,1 puts it on his right shoulder, and then places it and the two other balls in a copper vessel, and eventually either throws them into a river or gives them to a cow.

He next picks up the leaf-plates and unties the knots in the darbha-grass.

Finally, the performer of the Śrāddha turns to the family priest and asks him if all has been correctly carried out. If the family priest says 'Yes', the ceremony is looked on as completed, the spirit of the dead is known to be united with his other dead ancestors, and the exhausted performer bathes.

And now at long last the final trace of the ceremonial defilement, which we have watched growing fainter and fainter, is removed, and food can be offered to the gods.

Every Hindu, from the highest Brāhman to the lowest Sweeper, makes offerings to crows after a death. The ritual, of course, differs, but most Hindus offer the food to crows after the completion of the Rite of Union.

They bathe, and then cook a sort of rice pudding with milk, and offer any laḍḍu and any bread or sweets (but not vegetables) there may be in the house.

The performer of the Śrāddha then bathes and worships the tulasi plant and lights a lamp of clarified butter in front of it. Taking a piece of coco-nut, he lights that also, and in it burns in front of the plant a tiny bit of each sort of food.

1 The popular belief is that by smelling it the performer of the Śrāddha will obtain a son.
Then he throws a good-sized portion of each sort of food on to the roof of the house, calling, as he does so, to the crows to come and eat it. If the crows do not come, the performer turns anxiously to the tulasī plant and asks forgiveness for any fault he has committed, and then throws fresh food on to the roof, calling again to the crows.

When the crows have eaten all the food, he throws water on to the roof, and then distributes some of the other food in the house to Brāhmans and to children, before sitting down himself to dine on it with the other members of the household.

It is only when they see the crows devouring the food that has been thrown on to the roof that the women of the house feel sure that the spirit of the dead man is happy; and it is often pathetic to hear the way the women call over and over again to the birds, beseeching them to come and eat, for it is only through these birds (the chief scavengers of India) that the broken-hearted mother or widow can gain any assurance that their lost loved one is not still wandering forlorn in outer darkness and misery.

On the thirteenth day the courtyard of the house is freshly plastered with cow-dung, and there, to remove the bad effect of the inauspicious ceremonies which were performed on the tenth, eleventh, and twelfth days after death, an auspicious ceremony is carried through.

The son of the dead man bathes and, clothing himself in a pure loin-cloth, sits on a stool facing the east, the family priest seating himself beside him.

A special design like a conventional lotus is made on the ground, in the centre of which is placed a pot filled with water, and on the top of this pot there is a flat dish holding a sweetmeat (laḍṭu) made of wheat flour, clarified butter, and treacle.

Thirteen goddesses are invoked, the chiefest of whom is Lalitā; these are represented by thirteen red marks made on the pot.

The Sālagrāma representing Viṣṇu is brought and wor-
shipped with the sixteenfold ritual, and the performer then performs his ordinary Sandhyā.

This done, a knotted piece of darbha-grass is placed on a stool to represent the spirit of the dead man. It is noteworthy that this spirit is no longer called a preta, but having by now been united with its ancestors, it is given a new appellation, which varies according to its past caste, the spirit of a dead Brāhman which has reached this stage being called a Śarmā, that of a Ksatriya a Varmā, that of a Vaiśya a Gupta, and that of a Śūdra a Dāsa.

The bundle of grass is then worshipped in the fivefold way, after which different relatives come forward and (if they have not already made similar promises at the time of the man’s death) promise to do and give various things, such as to pour water on this spot for ten or fifteen days, or to give grain to pigeons for ten days, or to fast themselves for some fixed period.

All the gifts that were promised the day before, such as bed, clothing, shoes, umbrella, cow, vessels, gold, for the use of the man in the next world are now actually given; and, in addition, each of the assembled Brāhmans is presented with a sweetmeat.

When all the gifts have been made, the performer puts the earthen pot that holds the water on his right shoulder and walks away till he comes to a nīm tree, or, failing that, to any other green tree. He pours some water from the pot on its roots and walks back to his house, repeating the sacred word Om as he walks.

Sometimes weeping relatives walk with him, also repeating Om.

When he returns to the house, the priest pours some water into the performer’s hand, which he sips, but immediately spits out again, being careful not to swallow any of it.

The mourning is now absolutely ended in the case of an old man’s death, and, to mark its completion, the father-in-law

¹ Mourning and sūtaka must not be confused.
of the performer of the Śrāddha presents him with a turban of red, the most auspicious of all colours, and also marks his forehead with a red cāndalo.¹

Two auspicious substances, curds and turmeric, are given to him, and he rubs them together in his hands, holds them close to his face and gazes at them.

To close the ceremony, Gaṇeṣa is worshipped with the sixteenfold ritual, and the priest blesses the performer, who in his turn gladdens the priest by offering him alms varying from ten to fifty rupees. Alms are also distributed to the other Brāhmans present.

That evening a noteworthy gift is made to the nearest temple of Śiva, consisting of a lamp with three hundred and sixty-five wicks, one for each day of the year, which is burnt before the liṅga, the phallic symbol of Śiva.

Moreover, from this thirteenth day onward for three hundred and sixty-five days, every new first-fruit of the season, such as the first ripe mangoes, the earliest jujube, sugar-cane, gram, must be given either to a Brāhman or to children, before any of the members of the bereaved household partake of the product.

The performer also takes a vow on this thirteenth day that, when the sun turns to the north again (i.e. on Uttarāyāna Saṅkrānti Day), he will give thirteen black pots again to a Brāhman.

The proper performance of all these ceremonies is of the greatest advantage to the performer, as well as to the dead man's spirit, for when once the preta has changed into a Śarmā, or its equivalent, the performer and his household are, of course, insured against any harm being inflicted on them by that spirit as a preta.

However black the dead man's karma may have been, and whatever else it may force him to become, it cannot, once

¹ The mourning would not end so soon, and the turban would never be given at the close of mourning, for a young person.
FUNERAL OFFERINGS

these rites are all correctly completed, make him continue as a preta.

To linger as a preta is the most dreaded of all states, for a preta has a throat as narrow as the eye of a needle, so it can neither drink water nor breathe, and its shape is such that it can never stand or sit, but it is for ever flying in the wind.

It is quite true that a preta is not in hell, but its state is worse than if it were.

The preta continues in that terrible state not, as we have already seen, owing to any bad karma it has acquired, but, generally, owing to the way in which its Śrāddha has been either omitted or bungled. There is, however, another thing that may hold a spirit in this terrible condition, and that is the force of its unfulfilled desires; and the reason why the most terrible of all pretas is that of a woman who dies in childbirth is that she, poor soul, has more unfulfilled desires than any one else could have.

There are well-known cases of the preta of such poor women worrying their relatives. For instance, in a certain native state a young wife, who died when her child was born, to this very day visits the house of her brother-in-law, and burns the clothing and bedding of every member of the family, but never destroys the property of any guest.

And in another village a young Kaṇabī woman went back to her old home and, not content with stealing bread from it, used to set fire to other food and to furniture.

These disembodied spirits, however, can communicate with mortals, for every preta is like the wind, and so can enter another person's body quite easily, making them shake and shake, as witness of their presence, and can then say which of their desires were unfulfilled, and what steps must be taken.

\[1\] When every other argument had failed, the writer once persuaded a stony-hearted woman to call in medical assistance for her daughter-in-law, who had been two days in agony, by asking her if she were not afraid of being haunted by the preta.
So, for instance, this Kaṇābi woman said what she desired, and offered to give up stealing bread if her husband would have her funeral ceremonies carried out with some pomp. Her husband spent two hundred rupees on having fresh and more elaborate Śrāddha rites performed for her, and she has not been heard of since.
CHAPTER IX

THE HINDU PENAL CODE


As we have already seen, the spirit in the Yātanā Śarīra takes a year to reach Yama’s abode in the south. It stays at various places on its way, and we saw how the Śrāddha that was performed was timed to give it food and water at each of the fifteen halting-places. The journey is terribly painful, but the friends of the spirit try to help it by providing it with shoes, umbrella, clothing, money, &c., all of which they give to a Brāhman, in the hope that the preta may benefit.

They also hope to provide it with a light for each of the three hundred and sixty-five nights by means of the lamp with that number of wicks which they have given to Śiva’s temple, as well as with fresh fruit from the firstfruits they give to Brāhmans and to children.

On this terrible journey the spirit is accompanied by the two awful dogs of Yama: Śyāma (Dark) and Śabala (Grey), which, though they protect him from the attacks of other dogs, are themselves so fierce, that the friends of the dead man do wisely in trying to keep these two ghostly dogs in a good temper by feeding other living dogs in this world.

The preta does not reach the kingdom of Yama till twelve months have passed, but we saw that, owing to the uncertainty of life and the overwhelming importance of the Pure Śrāddha and the Śrāddha of Union, it is now usual to antedate them, and these, which should coincide with the spirit’s arrival at
Yama's kingdom, are actually performed on the twelfth day after death.

We have now to see what happens when the soul reaches this dread kingdom of Yama.

Before it can actually enter it, the spirit, if he is a sinner, and so travelling by the southern route, has to cross the horrible river of Vaitarani, which is full of blood and filth, and then it is that he needs the help of a cow's tail to pull him across and out on to the other side.

There are four gates to the kingdom of Yama, three of which are reserved for ascetics, for saints, and for brave warriors who never turned their backs to a foe, but died on the field of battle.

All sinful spirits, however, pass in through the south gate.

None of the surviving relatives are sure by what route the preta is travelling, hence the gift of the cow.

The prime minister of Yama, Citragupta, keeps a separate book for every man on earth, in which all his good or bad actions are recorded.

Every day the servants of Citragupta, the sun, the moon, the earth, the sky, the wind, day and night, the two twilights, water, fire, the man's own heart, and a special class of Brahmins called Srvana, report to Citragupta; Yama, too, tells what he has seen, and this is all recorded in the dread book, which is opened after the twelve-month journey is completed.

Accordingly, if a man be wise, he will during his life make a daily offering of water (arghya) both to Citragupta and to Yama, the terrible Dharma-raja.

Once upon a time there was a very wicked man who, despite his wickedness, never failed to make this daily offering of water, and one night Yama appeared to him in a vision and said that his daily offering had had such an effect, that if he would build a tank to hold water and plant trees all round it, that, combined with his past offerings, would suffice to blot out all his past sins.

He built the tank and planted the trees, and in his next
life avoided all unpleasantness, being immediately reborn into a wealthy and exalted family, for the merit won by building the tank had neutralized his evil karma.

When the spirit presents itself at Yama’s court, that king turns to his prime minister, who reads out all the dead man’s records. Yama then pronounces sentence on the soul, and always in such a way that the punishment fits the crime. For example, if the dead man has been miserly, he is now sent to a hell where his body is all sewn up, and he sleeps on spikes; if he has ill-treated animals, he is sent to a hell where the animals all torment him; if he has been untruthful, his tongue is cut out; if he loved hearing scandal, his ears are nailed up.

Altogether there are twenty-eight hells into which a soul can be sent, and the worst of them all is the hell called Raurava, which is full of snakes and hideous beasts.

When the soul has served its time in hell, it is reborn, it may be as a man, a beast, or a plant, according to its karma, and it is given a body—a Kāraṇa Śāstra—good or bad according to its past actions, in which to enjoy or suffer the fruit of karma.

It is this accumulated energy of past actions, or karma, which also decides whether, if it be reborn as a man, the soul is born as a rich or as a poor man, as a Brāhman or a sweeper; and whether in his subsequent life he is to be good or bad morally.

Similarly, if the record which Čitragupta reads to Yama contains more good than evil, the Dharma-rājā sends the soul to a temporary heaven (Śvarga)—i.e. one whose bliss he will have to leave when he has completed the full period to which his past good deeds have entitled him.

In case, however, a man has accumulated both good and bad karma in his past life, he will have to suffer both good and bad things in his life after death. First, he will work off his evil karma by enduring suitable suffering, and then he will proceed to enjoy the happiness earned for him by the accumulated energy of his past good actions.

In each case, after the soul’s term in heaven or hell has been
served, it will be reborn according to its karma in a Kāraṇa Sarīra, and in each case the punishment will exactly fit the crime. Thus, the soul of an impure man will find itself reborn as a dog; the soul of a man who welcomed the defiling qualities of untruthfulness, meanness, or falseness will be reborn as an outcaste or ‘untouchable’, one whose very touch is defiling; the soul of a man who habitually ate with his eyes shut will be born as a cat; whilst that of a woman who in a past life ate her meals before her husband had had his will be reborn as a flying fox.

We shall have to discuss the whole question of karma later, but this much we may admit at once, that the theory is a magnificent attempt to justify the fundamental law of righteousness by which men feel, as all literature shows, that the world is governed, and to account for the suffering and inequalities so noticeable in this present life, by reference to actions committed in a past life.

Many of the most thoughtful Hindus, however, are beginning to feel that, instead of answering their question, it only evades it by pushing it farther back.

If, they say, a man is born a thief in this life because of his previously acquired bad karma, what was it in the life before that which forced him to accumulate that bad karma, and what bad karma in the life before that again gave him a propensity towards evil?

They seem to themselves to be involved in a vicious circle of evil actions leading to evil karma and evil karma leading to evil action, but the question which the doctrine does not seem to them to answer is: ‘What laid the first foundation-stone of the evil structure? From whence did the first malign influence come?’

Another point that the recent war has brought into strong relief is that the doctrine of karma does away with all vicarious suffering, all public spirit. A V.C. who dies heroically trying to save a wounded comrade is, according to this theory, not a hero but a detected and sentenced criminal, who
loses his life, not through present unselfishness, but owing to the bad actions he has committed in the past; and, of course, a shirker saves his life, not through cowardice, but as a reward for past good conduct.

The most earnest men in modern India, as we shall see later, find that all their efforts towards reform are shackled by the twin ideas of karma and caste, which are inextricably linked together. A member of a low caste is just a wicked man painfully working out the penal sentence earned by past sins; his high-caste fellow-citizen moves conscious that he is a morally self-made man, and that his happy condition has been won for him by his good deeds in a former life.

One good action, however, can outweigh a great deal of bad karma. If, for instance, a man on the point of death remembers God for the short instant that a mustard seed can rest on the horn of a cow before being shaken off, he will gain sufficient merit to ‘take him to heaven (Mokṣa)’.

The real difference between Mokṣa (or Mukti) and Svarga is that, once Mokṣa is attained, the soul will never again have to leave it, but is for ever free from the sorrows of rebirth, while Svarga is a temporary heaven.

There are several Svarga: Kailāśa is the heaven of the god Śiva; Goloka that of the god Kṛiṣṇa; Indra dwells in Indra-loka; Viṣṇu in Vaikuṇṭha; Devi in Maṇidvīpa.

But Mokṣa is a state higher than that of any of the temporary gods; it is the state of Paramātman (the Supreme Soul) alone. In Svarga there are endless delights: fair maidens and beautiful flowers and trees set in exquisite gardens, through which cool rivers flow. But the Jīvātman (the individual soul) that has attained to Mokṣa now at last loses all its individuality and becomes one with the Supreme, indissolubly blended with, not Him, but It.

There are four stages of Mokṣa: the first or highest is called Sāyuṣhya, when the soul is absorbed in the Paramātman as the river is lost in the sea, or as the nectar of a flower is merged in the sweetness of honey. There is no persistence of
personality: the soul has done what it ought to have done, and there is nothing left to do, or to attain to, or to gain. This utter absorption is the highest stage of Mokṣa that any soul can reach, though, as a rule, it is only gained by a Yogi.

If a soul reaches the second highest stage (Sārūpya), it is not indeed absorbed in the Paramātman, but some of the glory of the Paramātman is reflected in the soul that has attained, as the glory of the moon is reflected in a clear still lake.

In the third stage (Sāmīpya) the soul is in the immediate presence of the Paramātman and as near as a nestling child is to its mother.

In the lowest stage (Sālokya) the soul is still in the neighbourhood of the Paramātman, as a subject moves in the same realm as his king.

But the common people seem to believe that very often, without passing through either heaven (Svarga) or hell (Naraka), the soul is reborn immediately after death.

For instance, they tell a story of a holy ascetic which is worth recording, since it also shows the immense importance of the thought that passes through the mind at the moment of death.

This ascetic was so very holy, that he was promised that on his death celestial drums should sound. Most unfortunately, however, just at the very moment when he was dying, he spied a particularly fine fruit on a jujube-tree, and it simply ruined his mind. Instead of thinking only of spiritual things, his thoughts were full of the jujube, and he longed for it with a passion that ill became a man who had renounced all. Then suddenly he died; but, to the intense chagrin of his waiting disciples, there were no drums to be heard. They asked a sage the reason, and he told them that it was owing to the inordinate desire of their master for the jujube fruit. The sage thereupon opened a jujube berry and showed them a worm. 'Inside that worm', said he, 'is your
late master's soul.' As the sage spoke, the worm died, and instantly there was heard the sound of drums.

The ascetic had been compelled to undergo rebirth owing to his dying thought and passion for the fruit, but, that single rebirth accomplished, he had passed safely with the pomp of drums to Liberation.

Not only is the thought at the moment of death important, but the spoken word is supremely important also. For instance, there was once a Brāhman called Ajāmila, who, though originally very learned and pious, fell eventually into temptation and lived for eighty years with a courtesan. Like many other Hindus, he named one of his sons Nārāyaṇa. Now this name is a source of spiritual profit, and every time he summoned the boy by name he gained merit for repeating the name of a god. When on the point of death he wished to speak to this son, and so called loudly: 'Nārāyaṇa, Nārāyaṇa!' Uttering this word he expired. This was sufficient, and when the dread servants of Yama came for the soul, they were not allowed to take it, but he was sent back to earth at once to have another chance of living as a devout ascetic. He made the most of the opportunity thus given to him, lived and died in the odour of sanctity, and acquired so much merit, that he is now one of the Liberated, all owing to the lucky accident of his having shouted to his son as he died.

A man who commits suicide becomes either a Preta or a Bhūta. It is worse to be a preta than a bhūta, for, after all, a bhūta does have the fun of frightening folk, which is a sort of sport, whereas a preta's time is spent in unrelieved misery.

There are many other kinds of ghosts: a Dakini is the female ghost of a woman who has died in child-birth with many desires unsatisfied. She has no covering of skin down her back, so the horrible raw flesh itself can be seen. This sort of ghost is dreaded for its malignity after death; but a woman who has the baleful power of the evil eye is just as much dreaded during life as a Dakini.
Then there are three different classes of ghosts: the Māmā are very tall, so tall that their heads reach the sky; they live in khadira (acacia) trees and frighten men. (One lived in a tree in the writer's compound for years, but unfortunately no one save a drunken groom ever saw it!)

Not unlike the māmā is the Kharīsa, who also loves to frighten people, but it is easier for him to do it than for most, because he is headless.

And thirdly there is the Ḫīn, a ghost of Muḥammadan origin, whom the Hindus, not having enough of their own, have imported, and he, like most aliens, is the worst of all.

Any one of these three, if disturbed or irritated, can take possession of a man's body and can never be exorcized. Holy people never see them, but people given to drink are peculiarly liable to their attacks. If they are well treated, however, they sometimes become the obedient servants of mortals and show them where treasure is hidden.

Besides these there are demons (such as Piśāca, Rākṣasa), who usually fight with and tempt the gods, not men. Sometimes, however, these also take possession of a mortal man's body. (A Brāhmaṇa after death could become a Brahmarākṣasa.) As we shall find later, Kālī āturdasī is the day when the attacks of the unhappy dead are most dreaded.

An ascetic, as we have already seen, is not burned, but buried. When he dies, his skull is broken open by a blow from a conch-shell, and when he is buried, a shallow earthen pot is put on his head like a hat, to cover this break. He is placed in the grave in a sitting posture and surrounded with salt and sand.

The grave is filled in and later covered with a platform of masonry, on which are put models of the ascetic's feet. Between the feet one sometimes sees a lotus-flower, and at the corners a conch-shell, a man, a wheel, and a mace. Sometimes (as in the case of the ascetics called Atita) one sees instead

\(^1\) No true ascetic is allowed to wear a turban, but these people, who are
a liṅga, and sometimes only a little niche, in which a lamp may be burnt, if the ascetic was not popular enough to earn a memorial.

There is no fear of an ascetic becoming a preta or a bhūta, as he had already performed his own Śrāddha. No Śrāddha, therefore, is performed for him after death, but varying worship is offered on the anniversary of his death at his tomb. Viṣṇu is sometimes worshipped in the sixteenfold way under the form of a Śālagrāma by the ascetic’s chief disciple or son;¹ even if the ascetic had been a follower of Śiva, the worship may be paid to the Śālagrāma, not to the liṅga.

Neighbouring ascetics are called in and fed, but only ascetics in good standing (such as Daṇḍi, but not Atīta) are summoned.

We have described the funeral of grown men and women, but, sad as they are, they have not the hopeless pathos that surrounds the death of a little child in India. If the child is under eighteen months, it is not put on the ground to die, but the broken-hearted mother is allowed to hold it in her arms till its last little fluttering breath is stilled.

A lamp of clarified butter is lighted, and alms are given to Brāhmins before the child’s death. There are no special death or burial rites, for the child must have been a monster of iniquity and lust in its past life to have accumulated so much malignant karma; indeed, the karma that does not allow a child to live beyond twelve months or so must be unspeakably terrible.

The wee body is wrapped in white cloth, in which a pice and a sweetmeat are tied, and it is carried outside the town, not to the burning-ground, but to a piece of waste land in which such children can be fitly buried.

accounted as fallen ascetics, wear a turban of șaffron colour; hence they are sometimes called Lālapāghaṭi.

¹ The writer once observed a ceremony of this kind, when the chief mourner offered coco-nuts, clarified butter, and red powder at the tomb, and also lit a tiny pile of cow-dung and coco-nut. After this the other descendants, both sons and daughters, worshipped the grave with joined hands, but the sons’ wives worshipped by lifting up the corner of their sāris.
The little grave is dug, narrow at the top and wide at the bottom, water is sprinkled on it, and a piece put in it, and then the child is buried, stones and thorns being heaped on the top to keep off scavenging dogs and jackals. The funeral is only attended by men, who wear just their loin-cloths and sometimes repeat 'Rāma, Rāma' as they walk. The ceremonial defilement (sūtaka) only lasts for three days, and on the fourth vegetables and milk are distributed amongst children. There is no fear of being haunted by so tiny a child, for it can have had no desires, and no Śrāddha is therefore performed for it. The baby died through its own wickedness, and so there is no hope for it. It must have been wicked indeed to have died so early, and so it will have to go through all the eighty-four lākhs of rebirth.

The writer will never forget the desolate hopelessness of the first child’s funeral she saw: the men who were burying it seemed absolutely convinced of the baby’s horrible wickedness, hurrying it out of sight as a thing stained by guilt. In sharpest contrast to their shallow condemnation one seemed almost to hear the voice of the Great Child-lover:

'Suffer the little children to come unto me, and forbid them not, for of such is the kingdom of Heaven.'

One of the gravest problems confronting the splendid band of Indian men and women who are working for the uplift of their country is how to alleviate the sufferings of widows. It is quite impossible for us to understand the position of a widow in India, unless we grasp these two facts: first, that her sorrows are believed to have come upon her as a punishment for sins in a previous life; and second, that it is not in accordance with the honour of her late husband’s family that she should look beautiful, well, or happy.

If a woman commit adultery, the malignant karma she thereby acquires will force her to become a widow not once but many times. Indeed, the popular belief is that during

---

1 The writer is deeply indebted to two fine non-Christian women reformers who have worked over this chapter with her.
no less than seven subsequent lives it will be her hideous fate to be born as a woman, and to undergo the terrible suffering of widowhood; others only go so far as to say that, as widowhood is the worst punishment, it must have been inflicted for the worst crime, and the blackest of crimes is adultery or murder. But however this may be, the writer has found that no Indian woman could talk to her about the sorrows of widowhood, and especially of child-widowhood, without tears; for it must be remembered that Hindus are naturally kind and indulgent to children, and but for the force of the doctrine of karma would not ill-treat them.

If, when a girl child is born, Maṅgala (Mars) is in the seventh mansion, her parents fear at once that she may become a widow, for, of course, it can only be the evil karma that the child acquired in her previous existence that has forced her to be born under that star.¹

After her husband’s death, when his body is taken away to be burned, his widow, after taking the seven steps that link her happy wedding day to this terrible day of bereavement, returns home and sits mourning. Other women come in, and, about the time when the pyre is lit, they bathe, sometimes in the house, or, amongst other sects, at the river, if it is near at hand, but never near the spot where the corpse is being burnt. If the widow bathes at the river, her glass bangles are broken there by some widowed relative and thrown into the river.² After bathing, she dons some old sārī—not as yet black in colour—⁴—goes and sits in one corner of the room and, even if pressed to do so, takes no food all day.

¹ Once in the twelfth century a great astrologer, realizing that his daughter Lilāvati was born under Maṅgala, determined that she must never marry; so he educated her himself, especially in mathematics, and it was this Lilāvati—an earlier Mrs. Somerville—who, so they say, taught the Arabs algebra.

² Another custom amongst certain Brāhmans is to place the widow’s broken-bracelets on the bier beside her dead husband. If the husband has died in a foreign land, the broken bracelets are always thrown into the river.

⁴ In the Marāṭhā country a widow never wears black, but white.
For a long time, probably a year (unless the mourning is lightened), she will continue to sit in that corner, and never go out, even to answer the calls of nature, save at twilight.

For ten days she only eats one meal a day, and for a year at least would not take any sweet food.

On the thirteenth day her own mother brings a sārī for the poor widow. The four corners of this are dipped in water used during the Śrāddha ceremony, and then the widow leaves her corner and stands up, whilst some other widow puts it on her.

This sārī is called a pota sārī, and for a year the widow must wear it, but so unlucky is it, that no one of her dead husband's relatives will ever let the hem of this garment touch them.

But the crowning shame of a widow is her shaven head. The barber is called in on the day of the husband's death to shave all the hair off, and never again is it allowed to grow even as long as an Englishman wears his hair. This shaven head is the widow's scarlet letter, which, together with her terrible name Rāndirānda (one who has been a prostitute) testifies that she is now penalized for the sins of a previous life.

The terrible thing—the fact that tears one's very heartstrings—is that the younger, and therefore the more unprotected and helpless the widow is, the more it proves how vile her sin must have been. When an older woman loses her husband, her sin cannot have been so black as that of a little clinging child of six or seven. 'If a widow has a son', the proverb runs, 'her sārī has only slipped from her head to her shoulders, but if she be widowed whilst young and childless, her sārī has slipped right to the ground, and she is left naked and defenceless.'

Again, it is not in accordance with family honour that any

1 In the Marāthā country this shaving is always done in strict privacy by a male barber, no one else being allowed to enter the tiny room whilst it is going on. The poor girl is thus left absolutely unprotected. Indeed the mother-in-law stands outside and guards the door, lest any one should enter, for that would bring fresh ill luck on her house.
widow should look happy, and one friend of the writer told her how her relatives came and threw themselves down on the road for the cart that was taking her to a training college to pass over them; for they said that if she went and studied there, she would grow happy, and that would destroy the family honour for ever.

Neither must a young widow ever look well nourished or full-blooded, and so, whilst she sits in her corner, she is given the grinding for the entire family, and not only so, but very often her mother-in-law tries to make money out of her by taking in grinding from the neighbours for her to do as well. She is made to keep every fast, and on the other days is given as little food as possible. One widow told the writer that she would never forget, when, as a little hungry child-widow, she once took an extra handful of rice, the stinging tone in which her mother-in-law asked her for what new man she was fattening up her body.

For thirteen days the widow must stay in her mother-in-law's house, but if on the thirteenth day, when she comes to give the special sāri, the mother finds that her daughter is being really starved, she may insist on taking her home. At the end of the year, in any case, the widow is invited to a meal in her mother's house, the pota sāri is taken off, and a black\(^1\) one put on in its stead. From henceforth the widow, if elderly, must always wear black\(^2\)—black sāri, skirt, and camisole. Never, of course, may she wear jewels at her ears, nose, throat, or wrists, never mark her forehead with auspicious mark, nor ever ornament herself with scent or flowers.

Wherever she goes, she is considered unlucky; it is a dishonour to her husband's family if her face be much seen in public. A widowed friend of the writer's told her that what cut her most deeply was when she noticed that even an old

\(^1\) In Kāthiāwār, at least, a widow must always wear dark colours—a young widow might later on wear dark red or dark blue.

\(^2\) This is not the case in many other parts of India.
friend would return to his house and make a new start, if she was the first person he met.

But it is when her own mother and father are dead at the time of her bereavement that the child-widow feels the full blast of her sorrow, when there is no one to protect her from her mother-in-law's biting tongue, as she tells her that it is her fault the beloved son died, that her foot is for ever the bringer of misfortune (chapara-pagī); no one to remonstrate, when all the heavy work of the house is thrown on her, and her mother-in-law beats her, and her father-in-law thrashes her for not completing some impossible task.

All the finest intellects amongst the Indian reformers are trying to grapple with this agonizing problem. Some boldly hope to solve it by encouraging widow remarriage. Unfortunately it is the highest castes—the Twice-born—such as Brāhmins, Bhāṭīs, Rājputs, Baniās, &c., who forbid their widows to marry again, and so other castes, who are trying to rise on the social ladder, begin their climb by insisting on perpetual widowhood. One thing is in favour of remarriage, that there is no fear of the second husband dying; for the evil planet, Maṅgala, that exercised so malign an influence, has been propitiated by the death of the first husband and would not injure a second. But the real objection of a Brāhmīn to a second marriage for a woman is that it offends his idea of chastity. A gift, they say, can only be made once, and as the bride was given to the bridegroom at her wedding, she can never be given a second time to any one else.

One thing that has ameliorated the lot of widows is that many are now being trained as teachers; unfortunately their health very often does not permit them to take up professional work. Indeed, a real difficulty for reformers lies in the fact that even the more intelligent women are often so obsessed with the idea that their own sin has caused the death of their beloved husbands, that they themselves are determined to undergo every possible penance, and to become what is known as 'a good widow'. Imagine the blackness of grief, when to
the natural sorrow of bereavement are added the growing pangs of remorse for unknown sin in a former life. No wonder that a sensitive, highly-strung woman who really holds this terrible creed should emaciate her body by fast and vigil, until, as a reformer said to the writer, 'The poor half-starved creature has not enough force left in her to be of use to any one'.

To state the problem fairly (and in so difficult a problem as this nothing is gained by exaggeration on one side or the other) emphasis must be laid on the fact that, as long as her own parents are alive, a widow's lot is often not unendurable. (A widow may need the help of her parents, even if she has children. One Indian lady told the writer that she distinctly remembered that her own widowed mother, though she had children, was being slowly starved to death, till the grandmother interfered and took her to her own house.) Moreover, if the widow is senior enough to rule the house, her lot is not unbearable. Or again, even if her own parents are dead, the mother-in-law might be of a kindly disposition, and so the widow's lot might not always be so black.

But there is a terrible saying: 'Paraffin is cheap'—which has been quoted to the writer more than once when inquiring into the fate of widows in other parts of India, and which throws a lurid light on their fate.

Supposing that a widow's chastity has been considered fair game by the male members of her father-in-law's household, or supposing that, having been called an adulteress ever since she was seven years old, the girl at last does live up to her reputation, neither she nor the unborn child will be allowed to live. We English believe sati to be extinct; reformers in certain districts of India will tell us differently. They know that there are easy methods of getting rid of an unwanted widow: simply to turn her out of house and home; to push her down a well; to give her poison; to take her on a pilgrimage and either lose her or sell her; or to set fire to her and burn her to death.

It is quite simple to soak a heavy wadded quilt in paraffin,
to tie a young widow up in it, pour more oil over her, set fire to it and lock her up in a room. Then the neighbours can be told that she either accidentally caught fire when cooking, or like a faithful wife herself committed sati; and only God, ‘the Judge of the fatherless and the widow’, knows on which side the door of that hellish room was locked. ‘Paraffin is cheap’—and the family honour has been saved.

In any case, some of the truest reformers are beginning to realize that at the back of all the widow’s suffering lies that doctrine of karma which proclaims the widow to be a convicted criminal, and to them karma is stained through and through by the blood and the lost innocence of the child-widows of India.
PART II
TIMES AND SEASONS
CHAPTER X
A BRÄHMAN’S DAY


HOMA.
ALMSGIVING.
READING THE SCRIPTURES.

TARPAṆA: Deva-tarpaṇa — Råsi-tarpaṇa — Pityi-tarpaṇa.

VAIŚVADEVA and ĀTITHEYA: Balidåna — Gogråsa.
NAIVEDYA.
MEALS: Breakfast — Svådhyåya — Lamplighting — Cooked Food — Supper.


We have studied in outline the life story of a Bråhman, and now we have to learn the detail of his day, his duties and its worship.

So important are his morning and evening devotions to a Bråhman, that one who wilfully neglects them for three days ipso facto slips back to the ranks of a Śúdra, and so highly is the right to perform them valued, that one of the titles that distinguishes a Twice-born from other ranks of society is: ‘He who has the prerogative of performing Sandhyå’.
The writer accounts it no small privilege that her intimate friends amongst the Brāhmans told her the order and meaning of this deeply-prized worship.

Multifarious as are the duties of the day, it is well worth our while to study them in detail, for, per aps, in no other way can we learn how much of toilet and etiquette amongst our fellow-citizens is of religious import: even dining is a sacramental act. And we shall not feel that we have entirely wasted the day that we spend with our Brāhman friends, when we find how many of its happenings point back to the time when we and they, as children of an undivided family, played together on the shores of time.

_Sandhyā._

A Brāhman is expected to get up two hours before sunrise, but even before rising he should think of his _Iṣṭadevatā_. This would probably be the god Śiva, at any rate in the writer's part of India, for there are comparatively few worshippers of Viṣṇu to be found amongst Brāhmans there.

Next, with the object of gaining a happy day, the man looks at his right hand, remembering, as he looks, that the tips of the fingers represent _Lakṣmī_, that _Sarasvatī_ dwells in the palm of the hand, and _Brahmā_ at the back of it.

It is of great importance that the first thing that a man sees in the morning should be auspicious, so some people wear a gold ring, with a pearl to represent the liṅga, and look first at that; others arrange a silver coin bearing the likeness of the king, so that that may be the first thing they see, or else they try to meet some auspicious person: their father, mother, husband, an unwidowed, unbereaved wife, a maiden, a cow, or a little child. (The writer's servants used to go about their work in the morning with their eyes half shut till her tiny daughter appeared.) Photographs and pictures of the gods are hung round bedrooms with the same object.

A Hindu is very careful not to look first at a widow, a scavenger, a broom lying in a corner, a miser, a barren
woman, at a man with tawny eyes, or reddish moustache, or at one on whose chest no hair grows. A childless man is so unlucky, that even if he were a king, the lowest outcaste would not willingly look first at him on rising in the morning. It is, however, quite lucky to see one's own face in a looking-glass.

People are just as careful that the earliest thoughts that they think should be auspicious. In Kăthiawār there are two villages whose names Brāhmans are careful not to remember first thing in the morning; in one a Brāhmaṇ was murdered, and the inhabitants of the other are miserly.

It is amusing to compare the care with which, when rising in the morning, a Brāhmaṇ puts his right foot first on the ground with the saying so common in English nurseries: 'You didn't put your right foot first out of bed this morning.' Perhaps, too, it shows that in the nursery days of the two races they all 'minded' the same nursery rules.

Before putting his foot on the ground, however, a Brāhmaṇ asks pardon from Prithivī (mother earth) for treading on the earth, and so touching that goddess with his foot.

As soon as a man is up, he sips a mouthful of water three times in order to cleanse his mouth, but does not swallow it, and then he washes his face. (Not only is every detail of the toilet and the bath part of a religious ritual, but much of it does also undoubtedly make for health and hygiene.)

Next, the position of the sacred thread has to be changed; ordinarily it is worn over the left shoulder, but now it is wound round the neck and then put over the right ear. The right ear is the most sacred part of the body with a Brāhmaṇ, since it first heard the holy gāyatrī mantra; in fact, so sacred is it, that it can even remove sin. For instance, if a man tells an untruth, or looks on something he should not, he is told to sip water, but if no water is available, he removes the pollution he has contracted by just touching his right ear.\(^1\) So now the sacred thread is wound round the ear to preserve it from all defilement, and the Brāhmaṇ goes to some desert place to

---

\(^1\) Touching the right ear is also a sign of very strong assent.
answer the calls of nature. He must look neither at sun, moon, sacred trees, tilled field, temple, nor ant-hill, and must be at least one hundred yards distant from any house.

He then cleanses his left hand ten times with clay, his right hand seven times, and lastly both together five times, before cleansing the soles of his feet three times. Twelve mouthfuls of water are also sipped and ejected.

This done, the sacred thread can be removed from off the right ear and worn suspended from the neck, as though it were a necklace. Now, and only now, is a Brâhman at liberty to speak; from the moment when he rose till now he has had to maintain the most absolute silence.¹

The teeth-cleaning follows, and so successful is it, that toothache used to be almost unknown amongst the Hindus.

They never, of course, use a brush, but break off a twig freshly every day from one or other of about nine specified trees, all of which possess thorns and milky juice.

The twig must also be of prescribed length and thickness, i.e. the length of twelve fingers and the thickness of the little finger (say ten or twelve inches long, and one-third of an inch thick) for a man. They must be careful, too, to see that the twig still has its bark on it. A student should rub salt and trifolâ ² on his teeth with the tooth-stick.

A man does not mind being seen whilst he cleanses his teeth, but a young woman will never allow any man to watch her as she does it; though an older woman, or the chief lady of a house, is not so particular.

After the teeth are cleaned (and they rub each tooth separately, as though determined to make that one the brightest jewel in the British crown), the twig is broken in half, and the tongue cleansed with one part; then both bits of

¹ Nowadays many of these rules are relaxed. They are chiefly observed by old retired men, or by the very orthodox amongst the younger men.
² There is a proverb that that man will never get ill who cleanses his teeth with salt, his eyes with trifolâ-water, sleeps on his left side, and never fills all four corners of his stomach tight with food.
the twig are thrown away, for the European idea of using the same tooth-brush day after day fills a Hindu's mind with horror. But before throwing it away, the twig is addressed in prayer and besought to grant long life, strength, fame, the halo of learning, sons, cattle, wealth, knowledge of Brahma, and intelligence.

Then the mouth is cleansed with water, and the man bows to the sun, asking that that great luminary may do good to all his neighbours and friends.

Next follows the bath (Snāna). The man has, of course, to bathe wearing a loin-cloth, since no Brāhman may ever be naked, once he has received the sacred thread. If possible, he should go and bathe in a river that flows directly into the sea; if, however, the nearest river be only a tributary to another river, he must take five lumps of earth out of it and then bathe. (Taking away these lumps is supposed to purify the tributary, which is impure compared to an ocean-going stream.)

If there is no river near at hand, a man may bathe in the courtyard of his house, pouring water over himself from a copper pot. As a rule he bathes in warm water in the cold weather, but he must use cold water on certain special occasions, such as the Sautkrānti festival, a Śrāddha, his own birthday, his son's birthday, after an eclipse, after attending a funeral or hearing of the death of some friend, and after touching an untouchable.¹

If a man is ill, he can bathe, as it were, spiritually and purify his body by repeating mantras; by putting some purified clay from the Ganges or Jamnā on his forehead; by rubbing

¹ Some Hindus are much more meticulous than others about bathing, and in Kāṭhiāwār the most meticulous of all are the Marajādi. Those folk bathe in cold water after touching any one, even a man of higher caste, and their other Hindu friends say jestingly of them: 'Poor things, they are just like fish, they spend all their time in cold water, and if they go and fetch water from a river, they sprinkle so much of it on the road to purify that, that they arrive home with an empty jar.' Very few Brāhmans are Marajādi, but some men of low castes, such as shoemakers, belong to this class. A Brāhman who is a Marajādi can take water from a Marajādi of lower caste than his own.
sacred ashes on his person, or by smearing himself with the
dust made sacred by the feet of cows.

If a man is well and is bathing in a river, he should stand, or
sit up to his waist, in the water. If it is a main river, he
should face its source; but if it is only a tributary, or if he is
bathing at home, he should look at the sun. He takes some
water in the cavity of his hand, bending down the first finger
and putting back the fourth finger, and then, pouring the water
into the river (or at home on the ground) he says: 'I ( . . . ) on
this day ( . . . ) of the year ( . . . ) of the month ( . . . ) at the
hour ( . . . ) take this bath to remove my sins of body, mind,
speech, and touch, and to gain success in everything I under-
take to-day'. Next he invokes the rivers Ganges, Jamnā,
Sarasvatī, Narbadā, &c., to take up their abode in the river,
or in the vessel beside him, as the case may be. Putting his
fingers in his ears and nose, and holding them there, he should,
strictly speaking, dive thus into the river if possible. (As
a matter of fact, he probably dives European fashion.) After
massaging his body with his hands, he dives a second time,
and after this follows the essential, religious part of the bath.

A busy Brāhman would very likely omit the diving, but he
would never omit the rite called Mārjana, which only takes
two minutes. Holding water in his left hand, he sprinkles
water on his head with his right hand, praying the water all
the time to remove his sins, to give him strength, and to keep
him holy.

He then dives a third time, or, if bathing at home, pours
water over himself again from a copper vessel.¹

The Tarpaṇa of the bath follows, when the bather prays to
the Sages, the gods of the three worlds, and to his ancestors,
asking them to be propitiated.

He then comes out from the river and dresses, removing, of
course. his wet loin-cloth. But even here he must observe the

¹ It is most interesting to the Western reader to note that, where there
is immersion, affusion is considered also necessary and the more impor-
tant part.
correct ritual, for if he slip the wet cloth down instead of lifting it upwards, he would have to bathe all over again.

He is now ready to begin his morning devotions, or Prātaḥ Sandhyā.

Morning sandhyā should be performed whilst the stars are still showing, and before the sun has risen; failing that, it may be done at sunrising, when the sun is half over the horizon; but if the worshipper is later than that he has to do penance.

Strictly speaking, sandhyā should be performed three times a day: in the morning, at midday, and in the evening. In the morning the gāyatrī, which is repeated at each sandhyā, is thought of as a child; at midday, as a young woman; and in the evening, as an old woman. As a matter of fact, however, most people have only time for morning and evening sandhyā.

The worshipper prepares for the ritual, either by purifying the ground from the touch of low-castes or the unbathed, which he does by sprinkling water on it; or by placing a low stool on which he may sit. The stool should be covered by the skin of an antelope, or by a mat made either of darbha-grass, of sheep’s wool, or of silk. The worshipper sits on the purified ground, or on the covered stool, in such a way as to face the sun, or else the north, which is the direction of the gods.

Whichever way he may have faced in the morning, he would look in the same direction at midday; but in the evening he would almost certainly face the west.

After his bath he dons a silken, a woollen, or a freshly-washed loin-cloth, and wears either a clean towel round his

---

1 The exact order of these devotions and the ritual acts vary very much. At the moment of writing, the writer has before her three different accounts: One given by her Sāstrī, which follows the elaborate classic ritual; one by a busy man, who had only time to follow a shortened form; and the third by a schoolmaster in another part of Kāṭhiāwār; they all differ slightly. The description which follows should therefore be checked by each student in his particular district.
shoulder, or a thin sacred cloth. His sacred thread hangs from the left shoulder, and he sits with back erect and legs folded (right over left), each heel being pushed well into the groin.

Some Brähmans begin with Smārta Ācāmāna. Taking a brass vessel in his left hand, the worshipper puts it on the ground, and then takes water from it with a spoon, still with his left hand, and puts it in his right hand. (The right hand is held in what is known as the cow’s ear position, i.e. the first finger is bent over to touch the second knuckle of the thumb.) Next, laying down the spoon, he puts the first finger of his left hand to the side of the right hand and sips three times from it. If he belongs to certain sects, as he sips, he mentally takes one of the names of Viṣṇu, either Govinda, Mādhava, or Keśava, and desires that the water should make him holy. Each time he sips, he only takes one drop of water sufficient to cover a sesamum seed. (It will be noticed that he only takes the name mentally. Hindus declare jestingly that sandhyā is only half audible, and so they call it the thief which no one can detect; whereas the Veda, they say, is an honest man and should be said loudly and clearly, and not as though one were afraid of detection.)

Then follows Bhasma, the application of ashes. If the worshipper is at home, he goes into the room set apart for worship; if on the river bank, to some lonely spot, and there opens the little box in which he keeps the ashes he has taken from Durgāṣṭami or some other great sacrifice. These ashes have previously been washed three or four times and reduced to fine dust; they are now for the morning sandhyā mixed with water, at midday they are mixed with sandal-wood, and in the evening dry ashes are used. The worshipper puts the ashes in his left hand, and covering them with his right,

---

1 Others, holding that Ācāmāna has already been done when bathing, would pass directly to bhasma.
2 The vessels required for sandhyā are: two shallow dishes, one vessel, two small pots, two small spoons, one arghya.
3 With a busy man this begins the sandhyā.
4 The ashes may be kept pressed together in the shape of a ball.
5 If the worshipper has no ashes, he may use water instead.
repeats a mantra, whose symbolic explanation was given to the writer as follows: ‘Fire is equivalent to ashes, wind is equivalent to ashes, water is equivalent to ashes, sky is equivalent to ashes, everything, mind, eyes and other senses, is equivalent to ashes. With those ashes I mix water which represents light, essence, nectar, Brahmā, the earth, the intervening space between the earth and the sky, and Om.’ The repetition of this verse sanctifies both the ashes and the water. Next, he lifts up his right hand, pours the water and ashes on to the left, and, after rubbing his two hands together, he extends his arms above his head and, holding his palms out flat towards the sun, says in Sanskrit ‘Salutation to Śiva. We worship Śiva, who has three eyes and is the giver of all sweetness and strength, and who will deliver me from rebirths, even as the upper stem of a sugar-melon snaps and lets the melon fall.’

Whilst repeating these words, he encircles his head with his right hand, and certain Brāhmans⁠¹ at this point make the auspicious Viṣṇu mark upward with the right thumb. Next, the worshipper draws with the ashes three lines, across his forehead, the bridge of his nose, and his eyelids, with three fingers² from left to right, and then with the fingers of his other hand back again from right to left, and similarly he marks with three lines his biceps, his arms near his elbow and near his wrist, his ribs, and his knees.

Between each act of the morning devotion water has to be sipped (Ācāman), and so, when the marking with sacred ashes (Bhasma) is completed, water is sipped, before the worshipper proceeds to tie the sacred lock of hair.

Even in the way this Tying of the Hair (Śikhā-bandhana) is done there are grave ritual differences. One worshipper told the writer that, as he tied a knot in the lock, he asked the goddess Čāmuṇḍā ³ to take up her abode there and protect him.

¹ Strict followers of Siva object to the Viṣṇu mark being made. It is interesting to notice that it can only be made with the right thumb.
² Sometimes two fingers only are used.
³ A form of Durgā.
Other Brāhmans, however, told her that nothing would induce them to ask a flesh-eating goddess like Čāmuṇḍā to take up her abode in their bodies, so they repeated the gāyatrī mantra as they tied the knot.

Once the knot is tied, however, the worshipper again sips water (ācāmana), saying in Sanskrit, as he takes the three sips: ‘May my soul as connected with this world be purified, as connected with intervening space be purified, and as connected with the upper world be purified’.

Amongst certain Brāhmans this is followed by Mārjana. Water is taken from the water-vessel and held in a spoon in the left hand. If darbha-grass is procurable, three unknotted blades are dipped into the spoon and thrown over the head. If there is no grass, the three biggest fingers of the right hand are dipped into it, and the water sprinkled over himself by the worshipper. As this is done, a mantra is said, praying Viṣṇu that outwardly and inwardly the worshipper may be purified, whatever condition he is in.

The sipping of water (ācāmana) of course follows, and then the worshipper proceeds in the same way to purify the ground, or the seat on which he is sitting (Āsana Śuddhi), sprinkling water over it, either with darbha-grass, or with his three fingers. As he does this, he prays to Prthivī to purify the seat.

But all the previous acts are merely preparatory to the great rite of Prāṇāyāma which is now to follow.

The worshipper sits all the time that he is doing it with crossed legs, his left foot on his right thigh, and his right foot on his left thigh. He first presses the third and fourth fingers of his right hand against his left nostril, whilst through his right nostril he exhales all the bad gasses of his body. Next, he closes the right nostril with the thumb of his right hand, and opens the left nostril by removing the fingers that had been against it, and then he inhales air very slowly through his left nostril, mentally repeating, as he does so, the famous gāyatrī mantra once (or, according to others, thrice) and the names of the seven worlds.
A BRĀHMAN'S DAY

Until this has been done, he must not bend his back, but now he hangs his head down and keeps both nostrils closed, whilst four times he repeats the gāyatrī and the names of the seven worlds. Then he looks up and slowly exhales through his right nostril, contracting his stomach till it has no breath left in it, and whilst he does so he mentally repeats the same mantra and the names twice over.

Next he inhales through his right nostril, doing the mental repetition once. And after that he again hangs down his head, closes his nostril and repeats the formula four times.

Looking up, he breathes out, this time from his left nostril, and goes through the mental repetition twice.

All these separate in-breathings, out-breathings, and suspensions of breathing go to make up one prāṇāyāma, and it is repeated till altogether three prāṇāyāma are performed every morning.

Of course the manner in which the act is performed varies considerably. In one account with which the writer was furnished the dissenter from the established mode actually went so far as to breathe in first through his right nostril! But this constituted grave error, for the left nostril is the moon, and the right is the sun, and the breath must first be inhaled through the moon nostril, in order that it may have nectar in it.

But there is no doubt that, as with the toilet rules, so these deep breathing exercises do make for health and hygiene.

The next act of worship, Saṅkalpa, expresses the worshipper's intention. In his right hand he takes some water and says: 'To-day (Saturday) an auspicious day in the month (----) on the (third) of the (bright) half of the moon, the conjunction being (so and so), I (so and so) will perform morning sandhyā, to remove my sins past and present, big and small'.

This time the worshipper does not sip the water, but pours it down into a shallow copper or silver dish in front of him.

Gāyatrī Āvāhana, the invitation to the goddess Gāyatrī, follows. As we saw, she is thought of in the morning as
a young virgin, the sakti (female energy) of Brahmā; at midday, when grown older, as the sakti of Śiva; and in the evening as an old woman, the sakti of Viṣṇu.

The worshipper seats himself and, with his two hands placed together, says: 'In your name there are three syllables; you are a child; you are wearing the sacred thread and carrying a loṭā; you are wearing a rosary of sacred seeds and also red clothes; you have four faces; you are sitting on a goose; you are Brahmā's Śakti and divinity: you live in Brahma-loka; we call you from Sūrya mandala to illuminate our intellects. You are Brahmā's yoni. We salute you.' He then worships her mentally, believing her to have left the sun and to have taken up her abode in his heart.

Jaladhārā is next performed. The worshipper takes some water in a spoon in his right hand, encircles his head with it and throws it away to the left. This is done to keep off demons, who would otherwise run away with the merit acquired, steal the things that are offered to the gods and desile everything that has been made holy.

A mantra is said as the water is waved round the head, and this mantra gives the water such force, that it shoots off demons and scatters them abroad.

A further mārjana is performed to purify the worship. Water is sprinkled in the same way as before, and the following mantra is said: 'O water, protect us and give us strength, nourishment and light of intelligence. You do good to all; let us have some of your most beneficent essence. Protect us, as a mother protects her children.'

A special act (Aghamarṣaṇa) is next performed in order to get rid of the sins of the previous night. Water is sipped as in ācāmana (save that it is sipped only once), and the following mantra is repeated mentally: 'O sun, burn up my sins of the night: sins of thought, word, or deed, committed by hand, foot, stomach, or by the senses. I throw all these sins into the sacrificial fire of the gāyatrī, which is lit in our hearts, that they may be burnt up.'
The sins have to be got out of the worshipper, so he takes up some water and holds it in his right hand. Next, closing his left nostril with his left thumb, he breathes hard down his right nostril into the water, whilst he says the mantra just quoted, and then throws the water and all the sins which it contains violently to the left.\(^1\) As he throws it, he says inwardly: ‘May all sins and wicked demons be destroyed’. He throws it with such violence, indeed, that the water is dashed into a thousand fragments, and all the time he keeps his eyes firmly closed, in order that he may not even look at the sinful liquid. Afterwards, too, he is extremely careful to cleanse his right hand, that no defilement of sin may remain on it.

(Showing how literally they take the destruction of the demons by this rite, one Brähman told the writer that, whereas between every other ritual act he performed one ācāmana, at the close of aghamarśana he performed two ācāmana and one praṇāyāma, in order to get rid of the sin that accrues to the worshipper through the destruction of demons.)

After the inevitable ācāmana has been performed between the ritual acts, Argha pradāna follows. The worshipper picks up a long copper spoon, which has a sort of tiny trough running down it. He fills it from the lotā of water, marks it with the auspicious mark and drops flowers and rice into it. These preliminaries all show that a very important rite is going to be performed, and indeed that is the case, as we shall see, for it is nothing less than the rescue of the sun. The spoon is held in both hands, and the water tipped out along the trough, whilst the gāyatři mantra is mentally repeated. (If the worshipper has not one of these special spoons at his side, he pours the water from his joined hands, special care being taken that the first—the pitri’s—finger does not touch the thumb.) As a rule the argha is offered and the gāyatři

\(^1\) Some Brähmans vary the order of this most interesting act, throwing the water away and repeating the mantra afterwards.
repeated three times, but if the worshipper were late in begin-
ning his devotions, and the sun had already appeared above the
horizon, the argha would have to be offered four times as
a penance. Each separate time that water is poured from
the spoon, the mantra is mentally repeated. The reason for
performing argha is that at sunrise demons strive to prevent
the sun rising and to shut up its road, and this water keeps
them off and opens a road for the sun. If the morning devo-
tions are being performed on a river bank, the worshipper
must go down into the river to do argha, and if it is a deep
river, he must so stand (or if a shallow one so sit) that the
water is up to his waist. As he repeats the gāyatṛī, he pours
the water, of course, into the stream.

If morning devotions are being done at home, however, the
worshipper either stands or kneels to perform argha, and
the water from the spoon is poured into a special cup. The
worshipper also puts some drops of it which he has taken from
the end of the spoon on his eyes, in order to gain some of the
power of the gāyatṛī for himself.

Next, the worshipper takes some water in his right hand,
waves it round his head and throws it away (Pradaksinā). This
he does to protect himself against the attacks of demons. After
that he performs one more breathing exercise (prānāyāma).
Strictly speaking, he should at the same time walk round the
seat with his right hand towards it, but this is often omitted.

A prayer to the sun (Upasthāna) follows the circum-
ambulation.

According to some Brāhmans, the worshipper when reciting
it should stand on tiptoe facing the sun, and with uplifted arms,
and palms turned towards the sun, should repeat four mantras.
Other Brāhmans declare that this is the midday position, and
that when the prayer is said in the morning, the worshipper
should cross his arms and hold the first finger of each hand
against its own thumb in what is called the Jñāna mudrā
(the mode of holding the hands which symbolizes knowledge
and is the correct attitude for the hands whilst preaching).
In the evening, when the prayer to the sun is said, the hands should be so held that they represent a half-opened flower.

In the mantras the worshipper prays that the sun, which gives light to all three worlds and life to all living things, may protect him and keep him from all sins.

The worshipper then proceeds to the *Telling of his Beads*. Sitting down, he either thrusts his hand into a bag of special shape, resembling a fingerless glove, or else hides it in the corner of his upper scarf. If he uses a rosary, he tells the beads by passing them between his thumb and second finger, the rosary itself depending, not, of course, from the inauspicious first finger, but from the second. The rosary has one hundred and eight beads. The worshipper repeats the *gāyatrī* one hundred and eight times, or three, or five, or ten times as often; for the rosary may be told only once, or again three, or five, or ten times. Up to three times it is accounted as duty, above three there is merit in doing it. Sometimes a rosary is not used, but instead the worshipper tells the knuckles and joints of his fingers, beginning with the third finger.

In any case, the hand should be held close to the body, whilst the beads are told: in the morning near the stomach, at noon close to the heart, and in the evening close to the nose. The periods during which the rosary is said should be divided into four. For instance, if a man is going to spend an hour over it, he should tell his beads very loudly for the first fifteen minutes, whisper slowly and quietly for the next fifteen, repeat the mantra silently in his heart for the next fifteen, and for the last fifteen he should be so completely absorbed in it as not to know where he is.

It is worth while spending special care on telling the rosary, for, though charity is meritorious, and merit can also be gained by acts of mercy and offerings made to fire, yet the merit gained by telling one’s beads is the highest of all.

When the telling of the rosary has been completely finished, the *gāyatrī* itself is given leave to return to *Brahma-loka* in a ceremony known as *Visarjana*. 
The worshipper stands up, and, with hands pointed to the sun, he repeats a mantra, asking that that gāyatrī, which lives in the summit of the highest mountain in Brahma-loka, and which is worshipped by Brāhmans, may go in peace.

Then the head is bowed to the hands in salutation, and the hands touch the earth (Namaskāra).

Finally, the morning devotions are brought to a close by the worshipper performing Ācamana twice and repeating a mantra, declaring that he offers the sandhyā to the gods.

Certain Brāhmans, after repeating the rosary, perform eight Tantric Mudrās with their hands.

i. Surabhi Mudrā. First the worshipper places his hands in such a way that the fingers represent the udder of a cow, and then he prays that his cows may be protected and that he may get milk.

ii. Jñāna Mudrā. The second is Jñāna Mudrā, when the worshipper, putting his thumb and first finger together, prays that he may obtain Knowledge (Jñāna) and Liberation (Mukti).

iii. Vairāgya Mudrā. For the third Mudrā the worshipper puts his hand in the Jñāna position against his heart, and prays to be freed from all worldly care and joined to Isvara.

iv. Yoni Mudrā. The fingers are arranged in a special way to represent the female organ, and the worshipper prays to the female powers. Some also ask at this time that in their next birth their mother may be of a noble family, or of high caste.

v. Śaṅkha. The fingers are folded to represent a conch-shell (one of the fourteen things churned from the sea and sacred to Viṣṇu), and the worshipper prays for protection from demons, especially from those who would steal his merit. (Viṣṇu has four special weapons to use against demons, of which the conch-shell is one.)

vi. Kamala Mudrā. The worshipper joins his two hands together to represent the petals of a full-blown lotus flower.

1 At noon Visarjana he also stands, but in the evening he sits.
A lotus is another of the four weapons of Viṣṇu which guard against demons.

vii. Śiva Liṅga. The hands are twisted to represent the phallus of Śiva, and the worshipper prays that Śiva may be favourable.

viii. Nirvāṇa. The hands are arranged in a way that reminds one of the English nursery game: ‘Here’s the church and there’s the steeple’. This represents Nirvāṇa, and the worshipper prays that he may obtain final emancipation and be freed for ever from the terrible shackles of death followed by rebirth.

The Midday Sandhyā is a shortened form of the morning sandhyā. The worshipper’s special object in performing it is to burn up the sins that he has committed since daybreak; to protect himself from demons; to protect the sun, too, which is in constant danger from their attacks; and to gain forgiveness for any defilement accruing from the food that he has taken. As the sun is more powerful, and the demons less powerful, in the bright noontide than in the twilight hours, midday sandhyā can be omitted or postponed by a busy man with less risk to himself or to the sun than would be the case if the morning or evening devotions were passed over.

As a matter of fact, most Brāhmans in Government service combine the midday worship either with the morning or with the evening worship, in the latter case performing the noon sandhyā first. The midday rite contains only one argha; in the Evening Sandhyā it has to be performed three times. As the sun in the evening transfers its powers to the fire, the worshipper asks the fire (not the sun) to burn up all the sins of the day. The ritual follows that of the morning sandhyā, but in a shortened form, and is preceded by ritual bathing on the banks of a river, or at home.

Homa.

The next daily duty that awaits a Brāhman, after morning sandhyā in all its parts has been successfully performed, is
Homa, the offering made to the fire. This offering is made twice a day, in the morning and in the evening, before the worshipper himself breakfasts or dines, the idea being that Agni, having done the cooking, must be fed first. The offering consists of clarified butter, curds, rice, or grain. If no man is present, a woman may make the offering, for it must be done before any one eats. The altar (broad at the top and narrow at the base) is made of copper and was bought originally in the bazaar, but when it was brought home, it had to be purified by having water sprinkled over it from leaves of darbha-grass.

Before making the oblation (Nitya homa), the worshipper sips water three times (ācamana) and inhales and exhales (prāṇāyāma) in the prescribed fashion.

Then he declares his intention of performing homa, mentioning his own name and the exact date. The mantra asking Agni to come and take up his abode in the altar fire is next recited.

The fire for the altar, in the case of an ordinary Brähman, is brought from the common hearth, but an Agnihotri brings fire from the special room.¹

Then the worshipper stands up, takes three blades of darbha-grass in his hand, and puts them into the fire, asking the god Agni at the same time to be ready to receive the oblation. Following this, water is poured all round the altar, and then two oblations are made, consisting of clarified butter, rice, rice pudding, or milk. The oblation, whatever it is, is carefully covered with fire, that all may be thoroughly cooked, otherwise the god would have indigestion.

¹ The fire must be absolutely clear, but the smouldering embers must not be kindled into a flame by flapping at it with a cloth, or fanning it. Any encouragement it needs must be given by blowing through a hollow bamboo, or the hand arranged funnelwise. The reason given is that Agni resides in our mouth, as we can tell by diving into water (if we speak with our mouth under water, no sound is heard, because the water has extinguished the Agni); and it is by the Agni that lives in our mouth that we must help the fire in the altar. Every day the auspicious mark is made on the altar, and flowers are offered to it. In this connexion it is interesting to remember that Brähmans believe that the source of water is fire, and the source of earth is water.
A BRĀHMAN'S DAY

Every morning two oblations are made, one to the sun and one to Prajāpati (the Creator and Protector). The object of the oblation to the sun is to procure its favour; of that to Prajāpati to ask forgiveness for any imperfection in the sacrifice.

This done, the worshipper prays to the sun, standing with both arms extended and hands outstretched towards it, and saying: 'May all in this world be happy, may they be healthy, may they be comfortable and never miserable. May the rain come down in the proper time, may the earth yield plenty of corn, may the country be free from war, may the Brāhmans be secure, may the sonless gain a son; may those who have sons gain grandsons, may those without wealth gain wealth, and all live for hundreds of years.'

The worshipper then makes a mark on his forehead with some of the ashes and, bowing to the altar, gives the god permission to depart, saying: 'Depart, O thou best of gods, to thine own place. Fire, go thou to that place where Brahmā and other gods dwell. May the Sun be pleased with this homa.'

In the evening also homa is performed before the evening meal, but then the mantra is said, not to the sun, but to Agni, who takes care of the night, and the oblations are made to Agni and Prajāpati. But at the end of both morning and evening homa Viṣṇu is asked to forgive all imperfections. Whenever homa is performed at the thread-giving, hair-cutting, or marriage ceremonies, an offering is made to Prajāpati towards the end of the rites, asking for forgiveness for all mistakes, and then Viṣṇu is asked to forgive. The word at the end of the mantra is svāhā. Agni has two wives, Svāhā and Svadhā: Svāhā carries to the different gods the oblations offered to them, Svadhā carries the offerings to the dead ancestors. So at the end of an inauspicious offering to the dead the word Svadhā is used, but in an auspicious offering like the present the word Svāhā is employed.

1 It throws an interesting light on the supreme importance of the monsoon to the well-being of India to notice its place in this kindly, comfortable, genial daily prayer.
Almsgiving (Dāna).
Every day also before breakfasting something should be given or done in charity. To fulfil this duty, uncooked flour, rice, sweet pickles, or a little clarified butter may be given to a Brāhman, but religious instruction given to any one is also included under Dāna.¹

Reading the Scriptures (Brahmayajña).
The devout Brāhman also reads the Scriptures² every day. He first sits down, and then, taking water in his hand, promises to do Brahmayajña, and throws the water on the ground. He next does Nyāsa by holding his right hand successively in front of his mouth, two eyes, two ears, nostrils, lips, top of the head, chin, two forearms, navel and back, praying the while that the different gods who protect the different parts of the body may each take up his abode in his special limb or position, and that Iśvara may protect the whole body.

He then takes three blades of darbha-grass, puts them and a little water in his left hand, and placing his right hand over it and resting both hands on his right knee, he repeats the gāyatrī mantra three times.

Some Brāhmans at this point would only repeat two mantras, the first mantra and the last from the Yajur-veda; they would then consider that they had repeated the whole Veda, and throwing away the water and the grass to the north, they would end the rite by bowing to Brahmā. Most of the writer’s friends, however, arrange to repeat or to read through some religious classic every year, so that by the end of their lives they shall have read through at least the four

¹ The writer, for instance, found it quite impossible to make one of her pandits take any fee for the instruction he gave her year after year about Brāhman rites and ceremonies, as he held that, since she was anxious to learn in a spirit of sympathy, it was his duty to lecture to her as part of his daily dāna.
² Another name for this reading is the Svādhhyāya.
Vedas, the great Commentators, the Mahābhārata, the Rāmāyaṇa, and the famous Grammar by Pāṇini.

Whatever book they have chosen for the year (it might very likely be the Bhagavadgītā), it must be finished by the date in mid-August when the sacred thread is changed. If the worshipper has been hindered in the earlier part of the year, he will ‘cram’ hard to get the book finished by the end of the time. A busy man often only reads for two minutes, whereas a man with more leisure should read for thirty. If, instead of reading, the worshipper is repeating what he has learnt from his guru, he holds in his right hand three blades of darbha-grass, and two in his left, whilst he says the mantra.

At the end of either the reading or repetition some Brāhmans repeat the mantra: ‘O Viṣṇu, thou art pleased with the sacrifice of speech: show favour to me’, and then, ‘I give the abode of Brahmā (i.e. my heart) to that supreme good (i.e. Viṣṇu), who lives in the centre of the sun, and who is a witness to all that is done in this world’.

Tarpana.

The worshipper, after sipping water (Ācamana), declares that he is now about to offer water to refresh gods, sages, and dead ancestors. It is interesting to notice the position of the sacred thread and of the hands during each different oblation. During all three the man sits on darbha-grass and wears a ring of darbha-grass. Beside him is a copper vessel containing water, darbha-grass, and barley grains.

First, he offers Deva-tarpaṇa to the gods. To do this, the worshipper sits facing the east, with his sacred thread in the auspicious position over his left shoulder, and pours the water which he has taken from the copper vessel once over the tips of his straightened fingers. Then, facing the west, he offers refreshment to the great sages (Rishi-tarpaṇa). His sacred thread is now suspended like a necklace from his neck, and he pours water twice through the gap left between the little
fingers of his joined hands, which he has arranged like a bottomless cup.

But in order to offer water to the manes (Pitri-tarpana or Yama-tarpana) the worshipper faces the dread south, his sacred thread hangs over his right shoulder in the inauspicious position, and the water is poured three times from the part of the right hand that lies between the base of the thumb and the base of the first finger.

This threefold refreshment is offered to keep all three (gods, sages, and dead ancestors) happy, and to guard against their injuring the worshipper, and, in especial, to prevent their drinking his blood.

If the worshipper's father is dead, and he is the head of his family, after performing Yama-tarpana by which Yama and his attendants have been summoned, he invokes his dead ancestors for three generations back, mentioning the name of his dead father, his dead grandfather, and his dead great-grandfather, and then bows to them. (If the worshipper has a father alive, he need not trouble to do this; his own father will do it, and that will be sufficient.)

The water he offers the dead can be transformed by them into anything that they need, and it is given to them to show the worshipper's gratitude. If the mother be dead, the worshipper in the same way offers water to three generations of female ancestors.

Similarly, the worshipper will pour libations of water to his dead cousins, aunts, uncles, guru, and wife's relatives. The rule runs that a man should offer water for all those dead whom, if they had been living, he would have wished to make happy, especially for the dead who were blind, dumb, deaf, or deformed in this life, or who died in their mother's womb before they came to the birth.

The way in which water is offered to little children who died before they were eighteen months old, and so were buried and not burnt on the funeral pyre, is especially noteworthy. Instead of pouring the libation over his hand near his thumb,
the worshipper dips a corner of the cloth which he is wearing over his shoulder and wrings it out on to the ground.

At the close of *tarpaṇa* the worshipper traces two triangles in sandal-wood paste on a shallow copper dish, in such a way that the triangles face one another.

Six gods (Brahmā, Viṣṇu, Rudra, Mitra, Sūrya, Varuṇa) are invited to take up their separate abodes in each of the six corners of the triangles. The worshipper fills the cavity of his joined hands with water, and offers it to the sun, praying to the sun with hands stretched out towards it.

Next, he bows to each of the gods in their separate corners, and washes the outside of his lips with water taken from the copper vessel, but takes care not to taste or swallow the water, which, having been offered to gods, cannot now be used by mortals. Then he says: 'By this *tarpaṇa* may all my ancestors and Viṣṇu' (whom at this point he regards as the embodiment of his dead ancestors) 'be pleased', and then: 'May this be accepted by Brahmā: I do it for his sake, and not for my own'.

**Devapūjana.**

There are five gods: Gaṇeśa, Śiva, the wife of Śiva, Viṣṇu, and Sūrya, any one of which may be the special god (Iṣṭadeva) of a Brāhman, but in Rājkot, at any rate, the most usual Iṣṭadeva of a Brāhman is Śiva.

Every morning the worshipper offers his special god special worship; as we have seen, much of his worship can be performed on the banks of a river, but this special *Private Worship* must be done either in a house or in a temple.

Supposing that Śiva be the worshipper's special god, he may place the phallic symbol, the liṅga, in the centre of a group of the other four gods, or he may worship it alone. In either case, to begin his worship, he first meditates on Gaṇeśa, then

\[1\] The writer would like to take every opportunity of emphasizing the fact that she is only writing of Brāhmans in her own town of Rājkot, Kāthiāwār, and the student must be on the look-out for local variations in his particular district.
declares his intention that he, so-and-so, on such-and-such a date, will worship Śiva; and then he ceremonially sips water (Ācamana) and inhales and exhales (Prāṇāyāma).

Next he performs Nyāsa, asking each god to take his seat and protect his special part of the worshipper’s body.

From this he passes on to worship all the apparatus of worship. The conch-shell, bell, and copper vessel are worshipped by marking with sandal-wood paste and offering flowers. Then water is sprinkled over the apparatus, but this water itself is first sanctified in the most interesting way.¹

The worshipper bends the first finger of his right hand over the water and moves the hand up and down, mentioning the names of the places of pilgrimage and of the holy rivers, for these names sanctify the water; and then nectar is brought down into it by arranging the fingers of the hand in the mudrā that represents the udders of a cow, and holding it thus over the water. This holy water is sprinkled both over the apparatus of worship and over the worshipper.

A lamp is then lighted, and the usual prayer to the light made.

Devanyāsa follows. If the worshipper’s special god be Śiva, he takes a bilva leaf (if it had been Viṣṇu, he would have taken a tulasī leaf) and repeating the Puruṣasūkta hymn from the Ṛg-veda, he drops the leaf on the liṅga (or, in the other case, on the tālāgrāma), being careful not to let his fingers touch the object of his devotion.

He then worships the liṅga in the sixteen ways, repeating during each ritual act one mantra from the same hymn (the Puruṣasūkta), which contains sixteen special mantras. The worship ends with the waving of a lamp fed with camphor.

This done, the worshipper frequently prays to Kubera, the treasurer of the gods, asking him to bestow wealth.

Afterwards, with his hand hidden either in his scarf of ceremony or in the special bag-glove, the worshipper tells his one hundred and eight beads, each time saying ‘Salutation to

¹ The same means should be used in temples also to sanctify the water.
the god Śiva'. Finally he prays: 'May my god be pleased, not for my sake, but for the sake of the whole world'.

If the particular worshipper be wealthy, he may worship his special god with Royal Worship (Rājopacāra), i.e., with all the pomp and paraphernalia of a king: kettle-drums, umbrella, fly-whisk, music and a fountain; but that is more usually done when worshipping Viṣṇu, the kingly god, than Śiva, the ascetic.

If the man cannot afford to offer the sixteenfold worship, he would just perform the fivefold, and if he has not time to do even that, he would content himself with repeating five mantras to himself and offering mentally the sixteenfold worship and the royal paraphernalia.

For the ordinary devapūjana in the house, however, he may substitute Temple-Worship, since more merit is gained by worshipping a god in his temple; and if the worshipper has performed all his morning worship up to this point on the bank of a river, he is nearly sure to wend his way to one of the temples of Śiva near the river.

When we come to discuss temple-worship, we shall study the ritual more in detail, but in order to get our bird's-eye view of a Brāhman's daily worship complete, we will just take a look at what he does, remembering, however, that it is only a passing glance, and that we are now concerned more with the man than with the temple, its idol, or its priest.

The worshipper, clad only in loin-cloth and sacred thread, and bearing a small brass pot in his hand, enters the temple courtyard. Since no one may enter the presence of a god empty-handed, he has probably brought with him some rice from home and an incense-stick, and as he walks through the little temple-garden, he picks some flowers and some bilva leaves.

He pours water over the linga, marks it with sandal-wood paste (which is on the platform beside him), drops the flowers and the leaves on it, and perhaps red and white powder, lights the incense-stick and waves a lamp.

At the commencement and at the end of the worship, he rings a bell to draw the god's attention. But since the god
Śiva is an ascetic and often lost in contemplation, he also touches the stone bull in the outer shrine, that the animal, shaking its head, may thus shake the invisible rope which is tied to the god's hand and so draw the god's attention also.

Besides this, he circumambulates the temple as far as the water drain and back again.

Whether he has performed his *devapūjana* in a temple or in his own house, he often completes his worship by saying; 'O great god, forgive my sins, whether done through hands, feet, speech, body, act, hearing, eyes, or mind, and my sins of omission and commission. Forgive all such sins. Victory, victory to you, O ocean of mercy, great god Śiva. I commit thousands of faults from day to day, but regarding me as your devotee, forgive me all these sins. There is no other shelter, you alone are my helper; so out of mercy, O Lord of the Earth, protect me. You are my mother, father, brother, friend, wealth, learning, everything to me!'

By going to a temple in the morning, a worshipper gains merit; he gains more by going at midday, but most, as we shall see later, by going at night.

Instead of *devapūjana* either at home or in the temple, the worship of a *Clay Liṅga* (*Pārthiva Pūjana*) is often performed. The worshipper brings with him to the river bank some black earth, which must be absolutely free from stones. He takes it, mixes it with water, sanctifies it with mantras, and rolls it into the phallic symbol of Śiva, the liṅga, being very careful to leave no crack. He makes an image also of the female organ, the yoni, into which the liṅga is set, and over the liṅga he fashions a snake's hood.1

The worshipper then puts a flower to his nose and breathes on it. This brings the spirit of the Supreme Spirit, which is in the worshipper's body, into the flower. This flower he puts on the little earthen liṅga, and so transforms it into a divine image.

---

1 The snake is often found twined round the liṅga. One (fanciful?) reason given is that man, the image of God, is also entangled and twined round by *Māyā* (illusion), as poisonous a thing as a snake.
Sometimes he also makes five small balls of black earth, rather oval in shape, each of which represents one of the five mouths of Śiva, and on each of these five balls a grain of rice is placed. Then the liṅga in the yoni and the five balls are arranged on a bilva leaf on a copper dish.

When all is ready, the worshipper sprinkles water over the earthen images and does the sixteenfold worship to them. Worship thus offered is more efficacious than either temple-worship or devapūjana done at home and is sure to bring the worshipper his heart’s desire, provided only he remembers this desire all the time that he is worshipping.

After the sixteenfold worship is finished, the god has to be removed from the earthen liṅga. First, the man sniffs the flower, on to which he had before breathed the god from himself, until he has, as it were, inhaled the divinity back into himself; and then he holds his hands over the liṅga and moves them in certain twinnings and interlacings (very much like the position of the hands in the old nursery game ‘Here’s the parson going upstairs’).

A devout Brāhman gentleman begins his morning devotions about three o’clock, and the various acts, grouped under the five duties of Snāna, Sandhyā, Homa, Svādhyāya, and Deva-pūjana, take him till about six or seven. He then pauses a little, but before he can breakfast he has to perform his sixth duty, which consists of two parts, Vaiśvadeva and Atitheyā (hospitality).

Vaiśvadeva.

About breakfast-time (i.e. about ten) a Brāhman bathes again and puts on the special cloth which he wears to dine in; he then performs a most interesting ceremony to propitiate all the gods.

The worshipper must wear a ring, either of darbha-grass, of gold, or of twisted copper wire, on the third finger of his right hand. He begins by sipping water (ācāmanā), and then declares his intention that he so-and-so on such-and-such a date will perform the rite to remove the guilt of life
taken inadvertently in any of five ways: by using pestle and mortar; or the grinding stone; by cooking on the hearth; by crushing insects in the room kept for the water-pots; or when sweeping the floor. The woman who has cooked the breakfast, whether she be the mother, aunt, or wife of the worshipper, brings some fire from the kitchen hearth and puts it in the copper altar which has already been arranged on some freshly plastered ground.

This fire has to be brought from the kitchen in a covered pot. (Supposing the pot were uncovered, some one might burn his hands in it, and if by chance a piece of burnt skin fell in the pot, the fire would become as unholy as the fire that burns a dead man!)

But this covered fire that is brought is holy, and is called the Pāvaka or sanctifier.¹

Sandal-wood paste is sprinkled on the edge of the altar and on the fire itself, and flowers are put beside it. Next, three blades of darbha-grass dipped in clarified butter are thrown into the fire, and water is poured round it. At this point the worshipper stops for a moment and meditates on Agni, who has four horns, three legs, two heads, and seven hands, and then he again offers sandal-wood paste and flowers to the fire.

Rice is now ordered from the kitchen, and the worshipper sprinkles water over the rice and sanctifies it by repeating mentally the gāyatrī mantra, and then pouring over it clarified butter.

Out of this rice the worshipping proceeds to make five little balls, each the size of a marble. The first is offered to Brahmā, and as the worshipping casts it into the fire, he says:

¹ It may be interesting here to note the names of the other fires that we have either studied already or shall later study.

The fire at Īrāddha is called the Aditi, the mother of gods and the aunt of the demons; the marriage fire is the Yojaka, the uniter; the fire lit at a house-warming is the Satamāṅgala, the bringer of hundreds of auspicious things; the fire lit at the funeral pyre is the Kṛavyād, the eater of human flesh; and the fire lit to propitiate the planets is the Varada, the fulfilmer of desire.
'Brahmane Svāhā', and then: 'This is for his sake and not for mine'. The remaining four balls are successively offered in the same way to Prajāpati, to Grihyā (the goddess who guards the house), to Kaśyapa (the great sage), and lastly to the goddess Anumati.

The worshipper may add any other offerings to any god he chooses. But the greatest care is taken that all the offerings shall be completely consumed, and to ensure this, clarified butter and bits of sticks are put on the top of them.

If Agni eats them right up, he will take them to the sun, who will send down blessings in showers to water the earth, which will cause corn, the life of men, to grow.

Another part of Vaiśvadeva is called Balidāna. The worshipper draws on the ground with water either a square or an oblong, and in this he arranges little heaps of rice one by one. He puts one for Dhātā, who created and supports the world, and one for Vidhātā, who guides the destiny of men; then he makes four heaps for the goddess of wind, and again four for the four cardinal points; next one for Prajāpati, one for Brahmā, and one for the Lord of the Intervening-space, one for all gods, one for all creatures, and one for all saints.

Ātitheya.

As he offers the heap to all saints, a dish is arranged containing some of all the sorts of food prepared for the meal, and this dish is then given to any Hindu ascetic who may happen to be outside the house, or, failing one, to a cow. As a rule, an ascetic is to be found begging outside the house at breakfast-time, so many are there in India.

(At this point another offering, Naivedya, is also got ready, but it is not offered till a little later.)

The offering to dead ancestors follows the gift to the ascetic. The worshipper places a little heap of rice in the square and says, as he does so, that he gives it to his dead ancestors.

The pot that has held the rice for these various oblations is
then emptied and cleansed with water, the water itself being thrown to the north-west as an offering to *Yakṣma*.

This done, some fresh rice is brought and put apart on a dish for a cow (*Gogrāsa*). The rice will probably not be actually given to the cow until after the meal, but as he sets it apart the worshipper says: 'O cow, you are the incarnation of Viṣṇu's power. You are the mother of all. You stand constantly by Viṣṇu's feet. I give you this *Gogrāsa*. O cow, accept it.'

At this point the worshipper may go outside and make the offering to crows, dogs, and ants, or he may defer it till after breakfast. If he goes out now, he throws some rice to the crows, saying, 'You are Yama, you are also the messenger of Yama. O intelligent crow, take this oblation, and take away with it too all the sins that I have committed either by day or by night.'

He then throws rice or bread to a dog, saying, as he does so: 'I give food to the two dogs, Śyāma and Śabala, born in the *Vaivasvata* family (i.e. the two dogs of Yama), so that they may protect me on my way (to the kingdom of Yama)'.

After feeding the dogs, the worshipper gives some grains of rice to ants and other tiny insects, saying: 'I give this food to hungry ants to feed them and other insects that have been brought to that condition by their evil karma, and who by their evil karma are tied thereto'.

This done, the worshipper comes back into the house, but before entering it he washes his hands, mouth, and feet.

He next takes ashes from the altar and makes an auspicious mark with them on his forehead, and then gives the fire permission to depart, by bowing to it and saying: 'Oh fire, thou best of gods, go to that place where Brahmā and the other gods dwell'.

He then takes a little water in the palm of his hand and says: 'May Nārāyaṇa himself be pleased by this ceremony of *Vaiśvadeva*. This is done not for my sake.'

Finally, some of the women of the house gather up all the
oblations that have been arranged on the square or oblong piece of ground and give them either to crows or to cows.

This ends the Vaiśvādeva rite, which, according to some authorities, is considered the sixth duty of Brāhmans. (According to another computation it is the twelfth.)

It will be about 10.30 a.m. by now, and some Brāhmans at the end of Vaiśvādeva proceed to perform the midday Sandhyā. Others, as we have seen, combine their midday with their evening Sandhyā.

Naivedya.

But even now the Brāhman is not at liberty to breakfast, until he has first offered Naivedya.

In the old days no one broke their fast till after Naivedya had been offered, but in modern times an exception is made for early morning tea. If a little child is hungry, it can be given food that has been left over from the day before. Milk and uncooked sweets can be eaten without any offering to the gods.

As a rule, however, the woman who has cooked the meal, or the first person to eat it, places on a tray a specimen of each dish that will be served at breakfast and carries it to the room of the five gods (Viṣṇu, Śiva, Ganeśa, Śūrya, and Devī). Besides the food, she also places a tulasī leaf, some areca-nut and betel-leaf on the tray, which she deposits on a stool in front of the gods, and then rings a bell, both to attract the attention of the gods, and also to ward off evil demons who might try to steal the food.

Certain Brāhmans then cover their own faces with a specially holy cloth, which is always kept in the room of the gods, and stand opposite to the gods in absolute silence for about two minutes. (Others stand thus silently with eyes averted, but without covering their faces.) During this time the gods do not actually eat the food, but imbibe the sweet savour of it, and the whole meal becomes hallowed. (Indeed, in some Vaiṣṇava houses tiny portions from the god’s tray are put
on the trays of each diner, to sanctify their food and to cleanse their minds by allowing them to share the meal of the gods.)

The worshipper finally himself takes water three times into his own hand and throws it on the ground, with the intention of providing the gods with water in which to cleanse their hands.

Meals.

At long last, the worshipper he himself is free to breakfast, between eleven and twelve.

Breakfasting itself is a religious duty. Every day the ground on which the breakfast is taken is freshly besmeared with cow-dung and clay, and very often marked with chalk or lime in red or yellow designs, sometimes texts, or the English word ‘Welcome’, being also written there.

On this purified space low wooden stools are arranged, and the senior man of the house is the first to take his seat.

Boys too young to wear the sacred thread can dine as they choose with the women or the men, but those who have been initiated must dine with the males.

If possible, all the men should wear silk clothes to dine in, but if they cannot afford them, they buy a very small woollen cloth (Gujarati Dhābālī), which they only wear when dining. At the right side of each man a water-vessel (loṭā) is placed, with a cup on the top of it, and he is also provided with a plate of brass and two brass cups (without handles), all of which are coated with tin. (In very rich houses these vessels are of silver, not brass.) As a rule, amongst Hindus uninfluenced by English rule, spoons and forks are not used, but the writer’s friends permit her to bring her own with her when she dines in their houses. If there are many guests, plantain leaves and plates and cups fashioned from the leaves of the ‘Flame-of-the-forest’ tree are used by every one. Before the meal is begun, all the dishes are arranged on the floor.

1 Only the senior member of the family has time to go through all this ritual; when he has performed it, the others are free to breakfast.
It is unnecessary to say that of course meat is not served, neither are vegetables whose juice is red, such as beet-root or tomatoes. No strict Brāhman would eat onions or garlic.

Many experienced missionaries never allow beef\(^1\) to be brought into their houses, and never eat it themselves, in order that there may be no bar to their sympathetic social intercourse with their Hindu friends.

On the other hand, in nearly every large town now there are ‘hotels’ with private back entrances, where Brāhmans can go undetected and eat ‘red curry’, as they call meat dishes.

Such Brāhmans would, of course, be held in the greatest abhorrence by the orthodox, but their number is steadily increasing.

As a rule, it is not a servant (unless in a very rich family) but a lady of the house who brings in the meal. Generally the first things served are thin čapātī, unleavened bread in the pancake form. This is put in the middle of the plate, and into a cup at the right side is put curry made of potatoes, cabbage, and Indian vegetables.

The women do not serve pickles and chutney, but these are put in a big vessel, which is passed round from man to man. Cooked food cannot be passed round in this manner, but a separate portion has to be given by the lady serving to each separate person. Clarified butter cannot be handed round either; it is brought in separate spoons from the kitchen and put on the bread on each person’s plate.

Curried pulse is next served, in cups, since it is liquid.
And lastly rice, which has been previously mixed with clarified butter, is put on each plate. The serving of the rice is a sign that all is on the table.

Before beginning his meal, each diner (if one may so call a breakfaster) should notice whether his five limbs are still damp from his pre-prandial bath, and, if not, he must moisten with water his hands, his feet, and his mouth.

\(^1\) While flesh-eating generally is disapproved of, the eating of beef is regarded with horror by most Hindus, including those who freely eat other meat.
This done, the senior member of the household takes some water in his hand and says: ‘I, on such-and-such a date, considering this food as part of Brahmă, offer it to him’. The other diners take some water in their hands with the same intention, though they need not actually say the words. (The water is considered a witness.) A little square of ground is moistened with water, and then each diner mentally repeats the Gāyatrī to sanctify his food and sprinkles a few drops of water over his plate. (If the family priest is dining, he takes the first seat and repeats the Gāyatrī.) Every man also sprinkles water round his plate to keep off the demons, who would otherwise snatch food from off it, saying: ‘I sprinkle truth with knowledge’.

Then he makes three little balls of rice, dedicating each to a different god. As he makes the first, he says: ‘I bow to Bhūpati, the king of the earth’. (Many Hindus believe King George to be the representative of Bhūpati.) ‘I bow to Indra, king of the three worlds, I bow to the Lord of all Creatures (Brahmă).’ A little water is sprinkled on these three balls, and they are made into one. They are left on the ground during the meal to satisfy the demons, (who, if they have this food at hand, are not so tempted to snatch from the plates), and at the end of the meal they are thrown away.

After the three balls have been made, each diner takes water in the cavity of his right hand and, pressing the ground with his right foot, says: ‘Food is Brahmă, its essence is Viṣṇu, the eater is Śiva. He who dines realizing this is free from the sins appertaining to eating’; and then to the water he says: ‘You are the covering of nectar’, and sips it.

Every diner eats the first five morsels of rice and pulse in silence (these five mouthfuls are called Prāṇāhuti), each morsel being looked on as an offering successively to the

1 It is interesting to notice how closely this resembles the Christian fashion of saying grace.
five prāṇa, or vital airs, of the body: prāṇa, apāṇa, samāna, udāna, vyāna. Just as the clarified butter was offered to the fire during Homa, so now these five morsels are offered to the body.

The diner must touch his plate with his left hand, whilst taking these five morsels in his right hand, and then, washing his left hand, must touch his eyes with it.

After these first five mouthfuls have been eaten in silence, the diners can converse, but often during the monsoon an elderly man takes a vow never to speak at meals during the rainy months. (It is amusing to notice that these vows are scarcely ever taken by young people!) The advantage, so the writer’s friends told her, of taking this vow was that, however tasteless the curry, or badly cooked the bread, the diner vowed to silence was saved from the sin of grumbling. (Would it be possible tactfully to draw the attention of certain choleric old gentlemen in England to this interesting Indian custom?) At the end of the monsoon, when released from silence, the vower presents a bell to the temple of Śiva, thus restoring the balance of sound!

As the meal proceeds, if the diner feels thirsty, he must content himself with water, for he is of course debarred by his religion from whisky, wine, or beer.¹ (This is, of course, also the case with Jaina and Muḥammadans, so the more stringent Temperance legislation is made in India, the more it accords with the religious principles of the people.) But even water he must drink in a special way. He must take the brass loṭā in his left hand, supporting it also by the back of the right hand, and then pour the water from the loṭā in a stream right into the interior of his mouth, being meticulously careful that his lips ² do not touch the vessel itself.

¹ A Brāhman is also debarred from smoking.
² Tea is generally taken by itself, not at meal-times, and not with food cooked in the house. It may be drunk from a cup which the lips may touch. It is not necessary to bathe or go through any ritual before drinking tea.
Each diner is also extremely careful that no morsel from his own plate falls on any one else's and vice versa, as such an accident would defile him. It is for this reason that they sit so far apart (more than a foot at the very least) from each other.

We noticed a family resemblance in the way Hindus and English both say grace before meals. Another interesting point in common is the care they take that no salt shall be spilt between two diners; if it were spilt, they believe, as we do, that quarrels and enmity would arise between the two. To avoid this, they never help their neighbour to salt, but very carefully pass him the salt-cellar to help himself. Perhaps this dislike to spilt salt points back to the long-ago time when in the same home they and we were taught at the same board 'to behave mannerly at table'.

At the end of the meal rice is again served, but this time not with the clarified butter, but with milk in some form or other, very likely a sort of rice pudding (ḍūdha-pāka). Some of this rice must be left on the dish, and some of it put on the ground.

(All the other rice that had clarified butter in it must be completely consumed.)

At the close the diner takes water in his right hand, pours half of it from near his thumb on to the ground, saying: 'You are a cover of nectar to this (food)', and then drinks the rest of the water.

He ought to wash his hands and his feet at the completion of the meal, and should also throw rice to the crows, but very often these things are omitted.

Servants, or the women of the house, replaster the ground, and then the women dine, the senior lady ('She-who-must-be-obeyed') sitting in the senior gentleman's place.

After the midday meal the leisureed retired gentlemen of the house sleep, lying on their left sides to promote digestion, whilst the younger members go to office or school.

If the older gentlemen are very devout, they engage in
Svādhyāya before going to sleep, reading the Veda (probably the Yajur-veda) for an hour.

At twilight evening Sandhyā is performed, and afterwards the worshipper goes to the temple.

About eight o’clock he is ready to take his evening meal, for this cannot be taken whilst the sun is setting, or in the twilight, but the diner must wait till the lamps are lit.¹

When the lamps are brought into the room, all the junior members bow to the senior members, sometimes saying: ‘O, God, lead me from darkness to light (i.e. from ignorance to knowledge), from falsehood to truth’.

This rite is performed more ceremonially if a ruler be present. The writer will never forget the first time she saw this pretty little rite. Her husband and she were touring in a native State, and the splendid old Kāthiāwār chief—a Rājput of the old type—was calling on them at their tent, when the lamps were brought in, and instantly his whole retinue did obeisance to him, whilst he explained the quaint custom to her.

There is a reference to a similar Christian custom in one of Moira O’Neill’s songs, ‘The Grace for Light’.

The first lamp to be lit is one filled with clarified butter, which is put before the tutelary deity (Iṣṭadeva), and then kerosene or other lamps are brought in for mortal use.

Not only must Brāhmans wait for the lamps, but very often they cannot dine at all. For instance, they can take no meal on the day of an eclipse. (If the sun or moon sets during an eclipse, they must fast the next day also.) If a death occurs in a house near by, they must not dine till the corpse has been carried away, even if the dead person belonged to another caste.

The scrupulous care that Brāhmans exercise about food, and the caste rules that surround it, are well known, but it is not always understood that it is cooked food they treat with such especial care.

¹ A Jaina, on the other hand, cannot dine after the lamps are lit, for fear of destroying life.
Clarified butter, uncooked grain, and vegetables they can buy in the market from Baniās or Muḥammadans, but once such food has been cooked, it becomes Brahmā, and so must be treated with sacramental care.

For instance, if Brāhmans want to go on a picnic, they either take uncooked food with them and cook it at the picnic place, or else they content themselves with fruit, or with milk-sweets, and other sweets made without water, which they can buy at a Brāhman shop in the bazaar. If they have to take cooked food from one place to another, water is sprinkled along the road in front of the carrier.

But if water can avail to purify, it is also through water that caste defilement arises most easily; so one can sometimes persuade a Brāhman to accept medicine, such as quinine, in a powder, who would hesitate to take it in fluid form.

During dinner they are most careful not to drink from one another's water-vessels. Supposing some one who was very fussy were to do so by mistake, he might confess to his guru and perform penance by giving a cow (i.e. five rupees) to a Brāhman and repeating the Gāyatri one hundred and eight times. (As with the Jaina, so with the Brāhmans, no absolution is given after confession. The penance is laid down, and it is left to the penitent to do it or not.)

Water from a pipe is not so defiling as water from the vessel of some one belonging to another caste. Of course, when drinking from the tap, they let the water stream straight into their mouths, being careful not to touch the tap with their lips.

When the writer and her husband have dined with high-caste friends, all the diners have sat at separate tables, and care has been taken that these did not stand on the same carpet, so that there should be no apparent connexion or link between them.

The food served during the evening meal is very much the same as that eaten at breakfast, though less elaborate.

A Brāhman family, except on a fast or a festival, generally retires about ten.
Before getting into bed, a Brāhman often repeats some favourite hymns or verses, that the day may close with the sound of sacred words.

A Woman’s Day.

In an ordinary Brāhman household the wife gets up about four a.m. to grind. This done, she sweeps the house, brushing the dust outside the courtyard door, where the Sweeper may come and fetch it, for so unclean a being is not allowed to step inside the house itself; she then cleans the cooking-vessels with ashes and puts her bedding in the sun. Not till all this is finished does she bathe.

Bathing, in the case of a woman as of a man, is a religious rite, and is carried out with great ceremony. If the woman is bathing at home, she invokes the sacred rivers Ganges, Jamnā, and Sarasvati to take up their abode in the water which she is going to pour over her. Then she takes some water in her hand, and, mentioning the day of the week, the day according to the moon, and the name of the month, she pours it on the ground, repeating a mantra as she does so. She bathes by pouring water over herself. Whether she bathes in the river or at home, she should wear some clothes whilst bathing (though, as a matter of fact, she often does not wear clothes when bathing at home). She cleanses her teeth with the tooth-stick in the same way that a man does. If a junior member of the household, she is particular to do this in private.

An Indian lady washes her hair very frequently; but if she has not time to do this, she can render herself ceremonially pure from any ritual defilement she may have contracted by combing her hair. If loose hairs come out on the comb, she is as ritually pure as soon as she has thrown these away as if she had washed her hair, and may proceed to worship. Of course during the days that she is ceremonially impure she may not worship, any more than she may immediately after child-birth or a bereavement.

But if nothing prevents her, she first worships the sun. If
she has bathed at home, she puts on dry clothes (at the river she still wears her wet clothes) and proceeds to worship by throwing sandal-wood paste from her thumb and third finger towards the sun, repeating a mantra (vernacular, not Sanskrit) to it and doing four circumambulations towards it.

After worshipping the sun, she worships the tulasi plant, pouring water on it, marking it with sandal-wood and circumambulating it five times. (A tulasi plant is to be found in practically every Brähman house.) She very often worships a pipal tree in the same way with water, sandal-wood, and five circumambulations. Many of the old missionaries, such as the well-known James Smith of Delhi, planted these particular trees in shadeless places, relying on the fact that watering a pipal is a religious duty.

If she had time, she would do more circumambulations, perhaps thirteen times, or one hundred and eight. But she still has the worship of the five gods in the house to perform. These may be kept in a special room, or, if the house be small, in a wall-shrine like a cupboard. On ordinary days she washes the gods with water, on great days with milk, curds, honey, clarified butter, and sugar. Next, she marks them with the auspicious mark with her third finger, and offers flowers, incense, lights, and rice, going through the ordinary fivefold worship.

Not until all this is completed does she wake her husband. She stands at a distance from his bed (after the first four or five months of married life they sleep in separate beds, and after the first child is born in separate rooms) and, doing obeisance to him with folded hands, rouses him by saying some such salutation as Jaya, Śrī Kṛśna, Jaya. (Brähman women have often as much devotion for Kṛśna as for Śiva.) Then, if he is going to bathe at home, she gets the water for his teeth-cleaning ready. If she be not pressed for time, when her husband rises she may worship the big toe\(^1\) of his right

\(^1\) It is interesting to compare this with the worship offered to the occupant of the See of St. Peter's.
foot by bathing it, marking it with sandal-wood and offering incense, lights, rice, &c., just as if her husband were a god.

However strange this worship may seem to western eyes, there is often something very beautiful and almost sacramental in the whole relationship of an Indian wife to her husband. No one who has been honoured with the close friendship of an Indian lady can fail to realize that in a home where divorce is unknown, where children are longed for and treated, not as encumbrances, but as royal gifts from the gods, and where the wife’s whole thought is how to please her husband, some exquisite, old-world graces bloom that are almost inevitably lost in the bustling western world.

The dark side of the picture is doubtless also true: the husband too often regards his wife as no relation, but merely the mother of his children, and those children are often utterly spoilt and undisciplined till the age of six or seven; and, of course, in a sheltered spot tyranny can be utterly merciless, especially if the young bride has been so unfortunate as to offend her mother-in-law, who may then deliberately try to make mischief between husband and wife. But as one compares the beautiful unselfish faces of the true home-makers with the bold eyes of some ‘emancipated’ Indian women who have not substituted for the old discipline of the home the discipline of Christ, one is sorry that something so rare and beautiful should be lost.

After worshipping her husband, the wife gets everything ready for him to use in worship, cleansing the vessels she herself had used when worshipping the gods.

Then, if she is the senior lady of the house, she cooks, preparing for breakfast the things her husband or her servant have brought from the bazaar, for an old-fashioned Brāhman lady would not herself go to the bazaar to shop.1 If she has

---

1 In Kāthiāwār, for instance, the women would not, if they could possibly help it, go to buy cloth, as they might in some other places; but under no circumstances would they buy vegetables or grain, any more than in England old-fashioned Black-country women would buy the Sunday joint.
become ceremonially impure, she bathes again before offering *Naïvedya*. The men of the family breakfast, and, after waiting on them and replastering the ground, she and her children have their breakfast. Breakfast over, she replasters the hearth on which she has cooked and cleanses all the vessels. This done, she finds time, perhaps, to sleep a little during the great heat of the day, perhaps to sew. As a rule the women of the family do the mending, but most of the sewing-machine work is done by male tailors. (The writer once in her early days reduced a whole family of children to tears by presenting a toy sewing-machine to a girl instead of to a boy!)

The war has taught many Indian ladies to knit, but old-fashioned Brähman gentlemen dislike wearing stockings themselves and would never permit their ladies to wear them. After sewing and resting, the wife very probably gets all ready for the evening meal, grinding again, if there is a large party to provide for, and cleansing the rice and the grain. Cleansing the rice and the grain is leisurely work, often occupying two or three hours, but it affords a fine time for domestic gossip.

When all is in readiness, she feels at leisure to enjoy herself, and most Indian ladies see their friends between the hours of four and six in the afternoon and pay visits of condolence or congratulation. In some parts of India (Kăthiāwār, for example) among Hindus it is only Rājput ladies of position who, strictly speaking, keep purdah, and even they often go out in a carriage, or after dark. Other Hindu women keep the letter of purdah by pulling their sāris across their faces when they meet a man older than their husbands.

At sunset the women worship the household gods again, removing dead flowers, whose essence has by now been enjoyed by the gods. In the morning they offer them cooked food, but in the evenings it is generally uncooked food, such as sugar and milk, that is put before them. They then sometimes perform āraṭī (the ceremonial waving of a lamp), and afterwards allow the gods to sleep.

After worshipping the gods, the women cook the evening
meal, but this is a less elaborate business than the morning cooking. If a senior male member of the family be at leisure, he performs the evening worship, and the women only go to some temple. It is not usual to say good night to each other on retiring, the evening greeting, as we have already seen, being made when the lights are brought in; the women then often say to their elders: 'Jaya Śrī Kṛṣṇa'.

The writer was reading these notes over to a charming Brāhman lady, who agreed to all that she had said, but added laughingly: 'Madam Sāhibā, that is the way, no doubt, that we ought to pay our reverence to our husbands, but we have not time nowadays. Look at us. My husband is a head master, but I am also a head mistress, and I have a lot of work to get through before school; so in the mornings all I have time to do is to stand at the bottom of his bed and say: "Uṭha-Uṭha!" (up you get!), and after that I am far too busy cooking for him to have any time to waste in worshipping him!'
CHAPTER XI

DAYS OF THE WEEK AND DAYS OF THE MONTH

DAYS OF THE WEEK:  Monday — Tuesday — Wednesday — Thursday — Friday — Saturday — Hanumān worship — Sunday.


We have studied the Brāhman’s day, and, before going on to study the Brāhman sacred year, it will clear the ground if we notice their beliefs about the days of the week and the days of the month, since these days and dates frequently recur during the progress of the year.

Days of the Week.

Speaking religiously, Monday is the first day of the Brāhman week, though astronomically the week begins on Sunday.

Monday is the special day of the god Śiva, and some devout Brāhmans observe the day as a fast all their lives through, never eating till after sundown. Even if they do not do so for the rest of the year, almost every follower of Śiva observes the Mondays in Śrāvaṇa as fasts. In some of the States in Kāṭhiāwār Monday is observed as a day of rest.

There are certain rules governing shopping on Mondays that it is well for a thrifty householder to remember. Cloth must never be bought on Mondays, or it will not last; the proverb runs: ‘Buy cloth on Monday, and it will soon wear out; buy cloth on Tuesday, and it will catch fire; buy cloth on Sunday, and you will never be able to afford to buy more’.
In the same way Mondays are bad days for buying shoes. The proverb here is: 'There is hostility between the moon and leather, so if any one buys shoes on the Moon-day and wears them, he is sure to be overtaken by some great misfortune'.

On the other hand, in another part of Kāthiāwār, the writer came across an entirely different set of shopping rules, and was assured that Monday was the best day to buy a sāri (the women's shawl-like overdress). Everywhere, however, they agreed that Monday was under the protection of the moon, and that therefore moonstones should be worn on that day. It is also an auspicious day for a bride to go to her own old home, for a birth, and for a wedding. No one should start out for a journey to the east on a Monday.

Tuesday cannot be called an auspicious day, for it is named after Maṅgala, the planet Mars, and, as he is the god of wars, he is a hard god.

If in any man's horoscope Mars is in the seventh mansion, that man will be unlucky in his married life; he will lose his first wife, or marry very late, or his wife will be an invalid. To avert all these matrimonial sorrows, he must either fast entirely every single Tuesday of his life, or else take only one meal, at which neither vegetable curry nor salt is served, but, fortunately for him, at which a laḍḍu (the tennis-ball-like sweet so dear to the palate of a Brāhman) may be eaten. It must be so comforting to feel that, by eating the sweetmeat you most enjoy, you heroically save your poor wife from death and disease. Such a man should also be particular to wear a ring set with coral. (In those castes where widow remarriage is allowed, Tuesday and Sunday are the best days for the ceremonies.)

Tuesday is also an auspicious day for the Śīmantā ceremony, but no śrāddha should, if possible, be performed on that day of the week.

There is a good deal of correspondence between Tuesdays and Sundays: for instance, seeds should neither be sown on
Tuesday nor on Sunday, but the birth of a daughter on a Tuesday or a Sunday is lucky, and they are the best days on which to send a daughter to live in her father-in-law's house.

Women will not plaster the house on Tuesdays, and a man will neither shave on that day, nor become the disciple of an ascetic.

No one likes to travel towards the north on Tuesday, or to go to live in a new house, or to open a shop.

With regard to agriculture, no one should start ploughing on a Tuesday, since that is the day when mother-earth sits with her son Maṅgala on her lap, and so it would be both impolitic and impolite to disturb her.

*Wednesday*, the day belonging to Mercury, is an auspicious day, but nothing sorrowful should be done during it. Brothers and sisters should never part on Wednesdays, and though it is a good day for weddings, the bride must not leave her father's house on that day, nor ever afterwards, if she has been staying at her old home, may she choose Wednesday to return to her husband.

It is a happy thing if a boy is born on this day, but it makes an unhappy birthday for a girl. There is a firm belief that anything done on Wednesdays bears double fruit, so that if a woman puts on a new dress or a new necklace for the first time then, she knows (Happy Thought for the Day!) that she will have another new one soon; and in the same way, it is the day of all others on which to buy or give away new clothes.

It is a good day for sowing seeds and starting to plough land, and for moving into a new house, but no wise woman plasters her house on Wednesday. If the new moon is first apparent on Wednesday, the whole month will be lucky; if there are five Wednesdays in a month, the price of foodstuffs will be steady. Talking of food, it is well to remember that the thing to eat on a Wednesday is green pulse.

As a rule, no one need fast on a Wednesday, for Mercury is
not a bad planet, and as it moves slowly with the sun, it does not need propitiating; but if in any year Mercury did not travel with the sun, there would be famine. However that may be mortal travellers will do well not to start out towards the north on Wednesday. Indeed, so few Hindus travel at all on Wednesdays, that the trains are more comfortable and less crowded on that than on any other day.

As it is a lucky day, it is the one on which all litigants like to start a case in Court, and as every Hindu loves a law-case, this is an important point.

Wednesday is a good day as far as it goes, but the luckiest day in the week is Thursday. There is, however, a cautionary thought even for this auspicious day, for if a man washes his clothes, or has his hair cut, or his nails pared, or his face shaved, or his house plastered on a Thursday, he will be poor all his life. In fact, on Thursdays over-fastidiousness is the way to poverty.

It is quite all right if children are sent to school on Wednesdays, but it is better to send them on Thursdays, for its very name (Guruvāra) suggests guru, a preceptor. Another name for Thursday is Bṛhaspativāra, and Bṛhaspati was the guru of the gods.

Death ceremonies or lucky ceremonies may be performed equally well on Thursday, so it is a good date on which to perform the ceremony of Śīmanta, or to invoke Rannā Devī (Randalā Mātā). This mother-goddess might also be happily summoned on Tuesday or Sunday, but Thursday is the best day.

Supposing Guru has a malign influence over any one, he need not really be worried: all that is necessary is to perform the very pleasant task of eating white food made with rice, clarified butter and sugar on Thursdays, and the planet is at once placated. Ordinary mortals are careful to eat their pulse un parched on this day. It is a good day for shopping, a good day to be born on, and a good day for a journey, if you are only careful not to go southward. But just now
the supreme importance of Thursday lies in the fact that it is the best of all days on which to conclude a Treaty of Peace.

The opinion about Friday, the day of Śukra, seems to fluctuate a good deal. It is not considered unlucky in Kāthiāwār, as it is in some parts of India, and in Gujarāt it is believed to be a day that removes anxieties; yet in both Kāthiāwār and Gujarāt old people dislike and suspect the day, and advise the young and 'biddable' not to begin any new undertaking on so unreliable a day, since nothing done on Friday ever brings forth fruit. No one should go west on Fridays, and all should eat parched gram, which is sometimes distributed amongst school children. It is a good day to buy land or trees, and auspicious for birthdays. Perhaps Friday owes its double character to the fact that there are two Śukra: one, Venus, is lucky, but the other Śukra, the one-eyed preceptor of the Brāhmans, is far from being an auspicious character.

And now with Saturday we come to a really bad day. It is Hanumān's day, for on that day Hanumān conquered Panotī, who represents the cruelty of the cruel planet Saturn (Śani).

If any one realizes that Saturn has a malign influence over him, he should eat only once on this day, and in the evening should offer oil, black pulse, and red lead to Hanumān, and flowers, especially Arka.

If a man is harassed and does not know what is the cause, he should consult an astrologer, who will tell him the reason and the remedy. Very likely he will say it is Śani, or Śani's evil influence Panotī, and will order the sufferer, besides performing the Saturday evening worship, to give black gifts, such as black pulse, black cloth, iron (that black metal), or a dark blue stone called Śani, to a Brāhman.

If Śani is in the fourth or the eighth mansion, his bad influence will affect a man for two years and a half only; but if it be in the first, second, or twelfth mansion, the evil will be for seven years and a half.

Saturday is bad for nearly everything. It is a bad day to
buy oil or to use it, it is a bad day for getting your face shaved or your nails cut, it is a bad day to be born, to start a journey, or to open a shop.

As for food, on this black day the best thing you can do is to eat black pulse. If it rains on Saturday, it will rain for a week; and if five Saturdays occur in a month, some epidemic will surely follow. But there is one thing to remember in its favour: Saturday is a slow day. Do not call a doctor in on this day, or you will not get him out of your house for a long time. But if you are clever, you can turn this very slowness to account: make a friend on that day, and you will be so slow to lose him that he is practically your friend for life; engage a servant, and he will stay with you till you need a servant no longer; move into a new house, and you will never have to move again. But you must not, of course, sow seeds on that day, or you will watch long before they come up.

Now, just as you can turn the slowness of the day to your own account, you can also make its cruelty serve you, and you will find it a splendid day on which to begin a war or a battle, or on which to sack a town or burn a village. Even in peace time you can harness the potential cruelty of the day by forging weapons on Saturdays.

Saturday is also the special day for worshipping Hanumān. One Saturday evening, about eight o'clock, the writer attended the weekly worship in a Hanumān temple. Against the wall of the shrine itself was a large image of the monkey-god. On an altar in front of him, and arranged from left to right, were images of Lālji and Narasimha, and two images of the Annapūrṇā goddess. On the next shelf Gaṇeśa, Jagannātha, and two tiny images of Hanumān; and on the third shelf a conch-shell, two Śālagrama, one pice, Gomātā, and a linga. All round the outside of the shrine were little lamps filled with clarified butter, which were lit at twilight. The old officiant washed the idol with water, performed the marking, waved incense and lamps, and then broke a coco-nut and put
it in front of the idol, whilst children rang a gong. (Evidently some vow was being fulfilled, hence the offering of coco-nut.)

The waving of the lamps (Arati) towards the idol and towards the spectators was done in the ordinary way, and then the water in which the idol had been washed was handed round in a vessel and drunk by all the devout spectators, who also ate some of the coco-nut.

Perhaps the writer may also here mention what she saw at another Hanumān temple, where during the monsoon the Rāmāyaṇa was read by an ascetic to Hanumān for an hour a day, after the ordinary fivefold worship had been offered to him. What was specially interesting was the cushion of red and yellow silk placed for the great bas-relief idol (which was fixed against the wall) to sit upon spiritually whilst the reading was going on.

According to some folk, Sunday is a mediocre day, neither very good nor very bad; according to others, it is a hot, cruel day. The sun itself is thought of as a red man drawn in a chariot by seven horses, whose bridle is a snake, and whose driver is the lame charioteer, Aruṇa, the dawn. (Another version says that the chariot is only drawn by one horse, but that that one steed has seven faces.)

Sunday is also the day of the mother-goddesses, so it is the best day on which to invite them to a ceremony. ‘It is a slow day, is Sunday’, as one of the writer’s paṇḍits remarked, ‘but not so deadly slow as Saturday’. It is an auspicious day, on which to begin the study of the mantras, and on which to travel, if you do not go towards the west. But it is a very risky day: if you eat parched gram on it, you will be poor all your life; if on this day you sit where dust is being swept, and a particle falls on you, you will undoubtedly develop boils or ulcers.

But it is an even more risky day for one’s children than

\[\text{1 The writer on the evening she was present was not offered the water in this vessel, but had great difficulty in declining the coco-nut, the Prasāda.}\]
for oneself. Sometimes on Sunday a barren woman brands a little child with a red-hot needle, or unbeknown she may stealthily tear a corner off the dress of the child's mother. If she does this successfully, that baby will die, while she herself will bear a child.

It is quite true that a child born on a Tuesday is lucky, because its sixth day falls on a Sunday; but on that day no barren woman is allowed to call at the baby's house, for if she spoke, and the young mother answered her, the six-day-old baby would die, and the barren woman become the happy mother of children. On Sundays, if children playing together accidently spit on one another, their wise elders instantly throw salt into the fire.

Barren women and lepers always fast on Sundays, and many other women fast on that day too. In fact, it is as usual for women to fast on Sundays as it is for men to fast on Mondays.

All unmarried girls should keep a partial fast during the Sundays in Jyeṣṭha (May–June), when they must abstain from salt and sit all day in the same place. (Cf. p. 301.)

In Śrāvaṇa (July–August) wise sisters invite their brothers on Sundays, and tie a rākhaṇḍi thread on their wrists. On Sundays, as on Tuesdays, no bride should return to her old home.

A man who is fined, or whose first wife dies, on Sunday never gets his money back, or a second wife to comfort him.

If Kālīcaturdasi falls on a Sunday, the mantras repeated on that day are even more efficacious than usual. But there is one eerie ceremony that may be performed on any Sunday in the year, and though the thought of it is enough to make a coward's blood run cold, yet if a man of blood and iron can go through with it, it is a positive cure for malaria. Supposing a man has been having constant fever, he should leave the lamplight of his happy home and, going out into the dread night, seek the haunts of that terrible bird of ill omen, the owl. He must not tremble as he hears it hoot, but taking

1 The fourteenth day of the dark fortnight of Āśvina (Sept.–Oct.).
a thread of cotton in his hand, make a knot in it for every hoot he hears. The more knots in the cotton, the better; but who dare listen long to such a bird at such a witching hour? When he has listened as long as human endurance can hold out, let him tie the thread—a veritable ribbon of valour—to his left arm and return home, secure in the knowledge that his fever is cured.

There is, however, a less nerve-racking cure for malaria, which may also be performed on Sundays. If a man has fever, not constantly, but only every third day, it will probably prove a sufficient remedy if on Sunday night he takes a bāvala thorn and sticks it into an arka leaf, and this he can do at his ease at home 'safely and out of the wet'.

*Days of the Month.*

In the old world before the war, a farmer's wife in Warwickshire once told the present writer that she was planning to go to London, but that, as it would be her first visit, she was waiting 'till there was a moon, since it was no good going pleasuring in the dark'.

But even that nice old country-woman would never be able to conceive the enormous difference that there is between the bright and the dark half of the month in India.

What the summer meant to the English mediaeval poets, pent all the winter through in unglazed, ill-heated homes, that, and more than that, the exquisite cool moon-lit nights in India mean to the prisoners tortured all day by the sun's fierce cruelty. So everything is differentiated to an Indian as to whether it falls in the bright or the dark half of the month, and the month is simply a case that contains these two fortights.

The *Eleventh* days (Ekādaśī) of both fortights are the holiest days of all the month, so devout people go to the temples on those evenings and listen to stories read aloud from the *Purāṇas*. Carpenters, artisans, and coolies keep these two
days as holidays because of their holiness, so it is no good an English house-wife trying to get repairs done on those days.

But the days are not only holy, they are also the luckiest in the month, and hence they are the best days on which to die, and on which to be born. It is on these days also, if possible, that wise folk plan to start on a journey, move into a new house, make a marriage engagement, or send their children to school for the first time.

The day of a child’s birth is really of great importance, for a baby born on the first, fourth, or fourteenth day of either fortnight, or on the full-moon day itself, will do harm to its parents and their relatives on both sides.

As a rule, the first, fourth, ninth, and fourteenth days are unlucky, and no one but a fool would re-string his bedstead on these days, or move into a new house, or indeed start any new undertaking. But there are exceptions, and the first day of the New Year is lucky for any undertaking, and so are the birthday of Rāma (Rāma-navami) and the bright ninth of the first month in the monsoon (Ujjvalanavami).

We have seen that the eleventh day of every month is a fast day, and accordingly it is natural that specially nice food should be cooked in every house on the Twelfth day of each fortnight. This being the case, it is a convenient custom that on the twelfth day brothers generally ask their sisters to dine with them and share the good things provided.

Every one needs to eat a good deal on the twelfth day, not only to recover from the effects of the eleventh-day fast, but also to prepare for the Thirteenth day, which is a partial fast.

If you wish to gain special merit, you fast all day till evening, and then go to Siva’s temple and worship. On your return you may take your dinner and break your fast.

On the Fourteenth of the dark half of each month some very devout men fast, treating every dark fourteenth in the year as a miniature Śivarātri, but ordinary people are content
with observing the great night, the real Śivarātri, which we shall have to study later.

The Full-moon Day of every month is a partial fast for women, who will not eat till they see the moon rise. Some women similarly fast on the second day of every month, until they can see the moon; but this is not so general as the full-moon fast, which is practically kept by every affectionate wife, for by so doing she hopes to prolong her husband's life and to put far from her the days of widowhood.

But now we come to the terrible moonless day that occurs in every month, Amāvāsyā, the last day of the month, the day of the pitṛi, which is altogether bad.

On this day no one takes more than one meal, no one washes his clothes, and when devout people bathe, they use no pleasant things like soap or soda.

It is only the thoughtless or the heartless that would sew on the last day of the month, for if they do, they assuredly sew up the throats of their own ancestors.

No one grinds on this day, or on the eleventh, because they are holy days, on which no life should be taken. Fowlers and fishermen do not go fowling or fishing on these days, because, as the writer was tersely told, 'no one sins on Amāvāsyā'.

Marriages never take place on the moonless night, the reason for which one can easily grasp; what is more difficult to understand is that actual śrāddha are seldom performed on this Day of the Dead.

The day, however, has a social value, for, whereas in most parts of British India Government offices and schools are closed on Sundays, thus ensuring rest to the educated, the poor carpenters, artisans, and coolies work seven days a week. We have, however, already seen that they do not work on the two Eleventh days; and as they do not work on the moonless day (Amāvāsyā) either, they are at any rate sure, whatever other big holidays may or may not occur, of three days' rest every month.
CHAPTER XII

THE BRĀHMAN SACRED YEAR

First Month (Kārttika): Annakūṭa — Brothers and Sisters — Deva Divāli — Days Sacred to Dead Ancestors.
Second Month (Mārgaśīra).
Third Month (Pauṣa): Saṅkrānti.
Fourth Month (Māgha): Vasanta Pañcami — Śivarātri.
Fifth Month (Phālguna): Holi.
Sixth Month (Caitra): The Pleasant First — The Nine Nights — Rāma's Birthday — Pitṛ Days.
Additional Month.

Supposing that a Hindu gentleman was anxious, whilst spending a year or two in England, to examine the Christian faith sympathetically and accurately, one of the easiest ways for him to begin would be to study the Christian year and, commencing at Advent, to follow the course of the greater
festivals. By so doing, not only would he gain a knowledge of the salient points of the Christian faith and the great events in the life of its Founder, but also he would see for himself on what points Christians themselves laid the greatest emphasis.

This method holds good for India, indeed it is even more suitable for studying a faith which is so bound up with external observances and with the changing seasons. And it is par excellence the way one would advise the ‘griffin’ landing in India to start research in an Oriental faith. As we have already seen, one of the objects of this book is to point out some of the lockers in which missionaries or officials can arrange the facts of their own garnering and some of the subjects on which they may ask questions of their friends. If a new-comer were to work over the book with his own pañḍit, he would soon find the man pouring forth corrections and amplifications to make it fit his own particular district. And the writer would like to suggest that the best point at which to commence such a reading aloud with a pañḍit, and such a profiting by her shortcomings, would be at the beginning of this chapter.

Of course, the local differences are very great in this as on every other point of Hinduism. Even in so circumscribed an area as the peninsula of Kāthiāwar there is a difference of opinion as to when the New Year begins, some counting its first day in June–July, Āśāḍha Śudi, others in October–November, Kārttika Śudi. We shall, however, follow the latter opinion and begin our year on Kārttika Śudi.

First Month: Kārttika (Oct.–Nov.).

Kārttika Śudi falls either in the last week of our month of October or in the first week of November. On this autumnal New Year’s Day the Mound of Food (Annakūṭa) is offered to Viṣṇu. Everybody begins the year well by getting up as early as possible. The men get their morning Sandhyā finished very early, and then one of them buys salt.
Now on any day it is of the greatest importance that one should hear and see and do lucky things before hearing or seeing or doing unlucky ones, but this is more important than ever on New Year’s morning, for what one does first on other days only decides the character of that particular day, whereas the first action on New Year’s day sets the tone for the whole year.

But the best of all things and the luckiest of all is salt, called on this day, even by Gujarātis, sabarasa, the essence of everything; so how can man buy better, than by buying salt on New Year’s day in the morning? Salt, too, mixes easily with all things, and salt is always pleasant to all men, so men are symbolically advised to be pleasant to all, and to mix in friendly fashion with every one during the coming year, for in India, as in England, New Year’s morning is paved with good resolutions.

The women of the family, too, get up early, and are so energetic over their sweeping and cleaning that often the whole house is swept by three a.m. The slightly didactic atmosphere peculiar to New Year’s morning is noticeable even in the way the sweepings are disposed of. The senior lady of the house accompanies a servant, who carries in one hand an earthen vessel in which the sweepings have been deposited, whilst with the other hand she either rings a bell or strikes a gong. The dust and rubbish is thrown into some distant corner, or on a night-soil cart, whilst both lady and servant repeat three impressive words: Dirtiness [and] Laxi-ness Depart. This emphatic formula seems only to be used on New Year’s Day.

The sweeping over, the ladies bathe as usual, and with perhaps a little more meticulousness they perform their daily worship, telling their beads, bowing to the god Śiva, and lighting the little lamp of clarified butter. Older ladies very probably go and worship in the temples and offer bilva leaves to the liṅga. On their return, their juniors do obeisance to them, and they bless the young folk. Children often pay
their parents divine honours on this day, offering coco-nut, sugar, and silver coin to their feet.

In fact, it is rather a score to be old or elderly on New Year's Day, for on that day the senior gentlemen of India sit at home at ease, and their junior relatives, friends, and dependants come and do them honour, wishing them happiness and bringing them coco-nuts and sugar. They, of course, have ready at hand areca-nut, flowers, and sugar to offer to the guests. Sometimes the visitors, when bowing to the older men, ask their pardon if even unconsciously they should have offended them during the past year, and old quarrels are often made up on this day. No one who has seen this festival, and also the great Jaina Day of Forgiveness, can help hoping for the time when the Christian Church in India will also complete its New Year ritual by a Festival of Forgiveness.

At eleven o'clock Brāhmans have a great breakfast, adorned with every possible dainty, and to this they bid their sisters and daughters and sons-in-law. Breakfast over, they set out about noon to visit the temples and admire the Mound of Food (Annaṅkūṭa). To understand the true inwardness of the Brāhman Year, we must remember the legend of the visits of the gods to Pāṭāla. Each member of the trimūrti, Brahmā, Śiva, and Viṣṇu, goes to Pāṭāla for a term of four months. Viṣṇu's term has just ended, and the reason of the Annaṅkūṭa is to provide the god with a splendid repast at the end of his four months' fast.

So, naturally enough, the mound of food is bigger in the Viṣṇu than it is in the Śiva temples. In the latter, however, it is often arranged inside a shrine sacred to Viṣṇu. In the old days the sectarian bitterness between the followers of Śiva and Viṣṇu was so great that a 'good' Vaiṣṇava would not even use the common word to sew (Sīv) because it resembled the name Śiva, so it may be imagined that on their part the followers of Śiva did not put an image of Viṣṇu in their own god's temple. But now, as with Christians, so with Brāhmans, the centrifugal tendency seems happily to have spent its
strength, and there is a real movement towards union, one of the clearest signs of which is that in most Śiva temples one finds a little shrine to one of the incarnations of Viṣṇu, probably either Rāma or Kṛiṣṇa.

Some people actually bring trays of vegetables,1 sugar-cane, and cooked food, others send money to buy materials, and there is a great cooking in all the temple compounds the night before. Every sort of food is arranged in front of the idol: curries, sweets, bread, bananas, and dishes made with new corn and with new vegetables, until the firstfruits have been offered to Viṣṇu. (One reason given to the writer was that Viṣṇu is the special protector of the universe, and that Indra, the god of crops, obeys him.)

Well, everybody goes to the temple, admires the Mound of Food, which is carefully arranged in tiers under the shade of green sugar-cane sticks, worships the presiding god of the temple, whether it be Śiva or Viṣṇu, and then does reverence to the Mound, offering a pāi or a coco-nut to it, as though it were itself a god. Of course, no ordinary person will eat anything that is offered to Śiva,2 but there is no hesitation in partaking of some of the offering made to Viṣṇu.

In the evening the houses are illuminated, fireworks are let off, all the children have new clothes, and everybody has a specially nice dinner.

But Annakūta has another name: Salutation, or Jhādapa-ṭolān, owing to another ceremony that also takes place that day, at least in native States.

On New Year's Day the leading men of the village go to their rājā and offer him Jhāda, a sum of money which varies, according to each man's possessions, from one to twenty-five rupees. It is interesting to notice how the present is made. The Jhāda they put near the feet of the rājā, and that he

1 One is irresistibly reminded of a Harvest Festival at home.
2 The strongest way in which a man who has taken a vow not to eat a certain article of diet can express his determination never to eat that particular thing is to refer to it as Śiva-nirmāla. If only cocaine could be so labelled!
himself accepts, but very often they also wave a coin round the head of the rājā’s eldest son. Their idea in doing so is to prevent any calamity falling on his head by buying off every potential evil. Neither father nor son accepts the coin that has been so waved; it is given to some servant or personal attendant.

The Hindus seem most thoroughly to understand the beautiful ties that may exist between a brother and his sister, and in their sacred year everything is done to strengthen that tie. We have seen that twice in every month of the year a married brother asks his sisters to dine with him, but on the second day (bīja) of the year sisters hope that their brothers will, if possible, visit them. This happy Festival of Brothers and Sisters (Bhāi-bīja) is supposed to mark the anniversary of the famous visit of the god Yama to his sister Yamī or Yaminā (the river Jāmnā), so all brothers living in the same village who can do so go and see their sisters; and, as the god gave his sister presents, they generally take their sisters a set of clothes, if possible of silk. Most Hindu brothers dine that day with their brothers-in-law in their sisters’ house, but with the Nāgara no elder brother will eat in his sister’s house, so determined are they never to seem to make anything out of their sister’s marriage. As a rule, among Sārāsvata Brāhmans an elder brother can dine with his sister’s husband, unless, owing to his father’s death, he had to give his sister away at her wedding, when he is regarded as her father, and so cannot dine in her home.

Sometimes, if it be her only brother who has come to see her, the sister will set him on a stool and worship him, offering him coco-nut and coin, as though he were divine. Whatever the future may hold for India, we may hope that in its sacred year some happy festival that celebrates and strengthens the tie between brothers and sisters may always find a place.

And now we come to Dēva Dīvālī, a festival whose meaning we shall not understand unless we realize the stupendous fact that in India god and good are not identical. Goethe says somewhere that God stands for the highest good of which
a man can think. That is not so in India, and when one hears one’s Indian friends criticized and condemned by a European, one longs to ask their self-appointed judge what he would have been like if the God he worshipped had been a being of worse passions than himself. It is all to the honour of an Indian if he has not grown like the god he adores.

The god Viṣṇu once used his powers as a god to violate a wife’s proud chastity. He had tried every other means in vain and only succeeded at last because by his divine powers he was able to appear as the woman’s own husband. The injured woman’s curse turned the god in his next birth into a stone, a Śālāgrāma, and to-day in every temple the god still wears the livery of his shame. In his turī Viṣṇu swore that the woman he had wronged should in his next birth become a tulasi plant, and once a year the Hindus celebrate this story of their god by marrying the Śālāgrāma to the tulasi plant on Deva Dīvāli.

A tulasi plant is to be found growing in almost every Hindu courtyard. But the particular sprig that is used at the wedding is planted on the eleventh of Āśāḍha, that is to say, the first eleventh that occurs in the bright of the moon after the monsoon has burst. All through the monsoon the women of the house (and very often the men too) worship the sprig by pouring water round it and offering it the fivefold worship. Now, at the official close of the monsoon, it is married.

The Śālāgrāma (ammonite) is found in Nepāl. Hindus believe that all Śālāgrāma come from Nepāl, but that no one ever steals them, or brings them from there without the king’s permission. If you try to steal a Śālāgrāma, it just goes to the King of Nepāl, and tells him straight out in his dreams what you are up to, the reason for all this care being that a Śālāgrāma is never found without gold in its mouth. The king, if properly approached, extracts the gold from the Śālāgrāma and presents the stone itself to the petitioner. The Śālāgrāma is always treated with reverence, but never more than on this festival Deva Dīvāli, which occurs on the
eleventh or fifteenth of Kārttika Śūdi. Everybody puts on good clothes, lets off fireworks, and has a splendid dinner.

In the evening the Śālagrāma is washed with milk, clarified butter, honey, and clean water and placed beside the tulasī plant, and the full worship is offered to them both, namely marking with saffron, presenting flowers, incense and lamp, naivedya and ārati. The naivedya is then distributed and eaten by the worshippers.¹

In many places a procession takes place in the evening. A brass image of Viṣṇu and a Śālagrāma are arranged in a litter on a piece of rich cloth and covered with flowers, and this is carried through the streets from the temples and followed by Hindus of all castes, playing on instruments and rejoicing greatly.

Sometimes a booth is erected, and the whole wedding service is there gone through, one priest carrying the Śālagrāma and another the tulasī plant throughout the ceremony.² With followers of Śiva the ritual is quite simple, but with Vaiṣṇava it is most elaborate. Very often the priest who is bearing the flower-pot is followed by Vaiṣṇava women bearing water-pots on their heads. These women must have fasted beforehand and be in a state of ceremonial purity. They are called the Bridesmaids of Tulasī, and acquire great merit by thus accompanying the bride of Viṣṇu.

All night the temples are illuminated, and the image of one of Viṣṇu’s Avatāra and the liṅga of Śiva are decorated. (Though there is no idol of Śiva, on the night of Deva Dīvālī, as on all great festivals, a turban and a scarf of ceremony are arranged on the phallic symbol.)

Deva Dīvālī has also another aspect, for it is regarded as the ritual close of the monsoon. (The actual rainy season is

¹ It is always important to notice what is done with the naivedya. It will be remembered that this is never eaten by ordinary worshippers in Śiva temples.
² Note that it is always Viṣṇu under the form of the Śālagrāma that is thus married, never, at least in Brāhmaṇ communities, his brass idol. But only a Brāhmaṇ can touch a Śālagrāma, and no women may do so.
generally over some time before.) All vows which were taken for the period of the monsoon come to an end that day, so the Hindus feel that in this release they have a second reason for rejoicing. Those Brâhmans who have vowed never to speak at meals during the monsoon give, as we have already seen, a bell to the temple of Śiva, those who have sworn never to eat from bronze vessels during the rains give a bronze vessel.\(^1\)

It is after Deva Dīvāli that Brahmā goes to Pātāla for four months.\(^2\)

During the year three groups of three days each, sacred to Dead Ancestors, occur: in Kārttika, in Čaitra (March–April), and in Śrāvana (July–August).

There are no festivals during these days, but pīpal trees are watered by the ladies of the house with the object of propitiating the dead. The first of these groups occurs now in the month Kārttika, but we will study it more fully when we come to the more important Pitrī days in Čaitra.

**Second Month: Mārgaśīrṣa (Nov.–Dec.).**

As a rule, there are no specially noteworthy holidays during the month of Mārgaśīrṣa, which usually lasts from about Nov. 15–Dec. 15, unless it so happens that the month runs from December into January,\(^3\) and Saṅkṛanti falls within it.

The whole month is very lucky and very holy. In fact, some consider it the holiest of the year: thus Kṛṣṇa says that amongst months he is the Mārgaśīrṣa.

---

\(^1\) Perhaps here we might digress for a moment to note some of the beliefs about bronze. Hindus have the greatest regard for bronze: it is specially sacred, and it is considered a luxury to eat from it, so it is a real ‘Lenten’ self-denial to promise never to eat from it during the monsoon. Bronze is always carefully guarded. So sacred is it, that no widow is ever allowed to dine off bronze vessels. If any one but the true owner makes use of a bronze vessel at dinner, it (unlike a brass vessel) can never be cleansed, or brought into use again. Hindus say that if milk and treacle are mixed together in a bronze vessel, the virtue of the metal will turn them into the spirituous beverage called *Madya*, not of course the manufactured liquor of commerce, which Brâhmans may not touch.

\(^2\) According to others, this takes place at Annakūṭa.

\(^3\) The months, being lunar, correspond to ours only approximately.
It is a month that is much liked, because it is neither too hot nor too cold, and the rain is over. It is the best month for weddings; the last few days of the month, however, are very unlucky, and no one should marry during them, at least in the writer's part of India.

Third Month: Pauṣa (Dec.–Jan.).

Somewhere between the twelfth and fourteenth of January a very happy festival takes place. The last few days of the previous month had been very unlucky, and during them no wise man betrothed or married his daughter, or sent her to her husband's house, nor did he give his son the sacred thread, or move to a new city, or open a new business. If he could help it, he did not even die in that unlucky part of the month. The first few days of Pauṣa are also unlucky, but on Saṅkrānti the sun ceases to travel towards the inauspicious south, where is the abode of death, and begins to move towards the north, and this changes everything.

Saṅkrānti is with the gods the beginning of the day. A god's day lasts six months, and a night of the gods six months also, so the whole human year is just a god's complete day and night.

The gods' night begins on Karka Saṅkrānti (between the twelfth and fourteenth of July), and when the gods sleep, the demons come out. Now, if a man die during the day of the gods (i.e. between January and July), they will see that he gets safely and comfortably to the bright place (Deva-loka), but if he die during the night of the gods (July–January), when the demons are all abroad, he will go to one of the dark places, either Yama-loka, Pitri loka, Rākṣasa-loka, Čandra-loka, or Bhūta-loka. But not only does the auspicious Saṅkrānti mark the end of an unlucky time, it is also followed by two specially happy months, which are very fortunate for marriages. (Though, auspicious as these months are, they are not quite as lucky as the first part of Mārgasīrṣa.)

Saṅkrānti is the great day of the year for almsgiving.
Hindus should begin to give alms eight hours before the sun turns to the north, and continue their giving for eight hours after it has turned. Green gram taken from its pods is put into black earthenware pots, and these, together with sesamum seeds and clothes, are given away, if possible, 'to the best of Brāhmans', but if that gentleman cannot be found, to the first beggar you meet. Sugar-cane, if procurable, should also be given away on this day.

Sometimes secret almsgiving is also practised on the day: a man mixes sesamum seeds and treacle into a ball and, hiding either a silver or a bronze coin in the centre, gives it away to a beggar. Some Brāhmans and Sādhus do not wait to be met, but go round begging at this time, assuring every benefactor that he will obtain merit and live happy all the year. (Nāgara never ask or receive alms.)

Women also make presents to their 'relatives-in-law' on this day. Sometimes a wife hides a rupee in a laḍḍu and gives it to a younger brother-in-law, but generally the chief presents are made to sisters-in-law. In the writer's town a woman usually gives her sister-in-law one pound of sugar and one pound of clarified butter, but in the neighbouring State of Junāgaḍh far more elaborate presents are made to sisters-in-law. For all presents, whether simple or elaborate, made on Saṅkrānti to her sisters-in-law the wife herself pays out of her own dowry.

But neither beggars nor 'in-laws' exhaust the fount of charity on this auspicious occasion, for men load carts with grass (or cotton seed, if they can afford it) and go and feed the cows assembled in some central place, and women offer laḍḍus to the animals and mark their foreheads with saffron. Dogs even are not forgotten, but are made happy with various sweetmeats and seasonable delights. Lastly, that no one may be passed over, many Hindus (not Nāgara, however) prepare for themselves a special dish composed of seven different kinds of grain.

Saṅkrānti is not only the best of all days for almsgiving, it is the luckiest day in all the year for a betrothal. If a girl
is to be married during the coming year, she bathes early and
does her hair especially well, and then takes the water in which
she has bathed in either an earthen or a metal pot to her fiancé’s
home and dines there. (The water is just thrown away.)

Men do not have the best of it on Saṅkrānti, for it is often
very cold at that season; none the less, according to their
Scriptures, they must bathe on that morning in cold water,
and instead of cleaning their teeth with the ordinary tooth-
stick (a twig freshly broken from the bāvala tree), they just
have to cleanse their mouths by chewing grains of sesamum.

Fourth Month: Māgha (Jan.–Feb.).

There are two great festivals in the month of Māgha:
Vasanta Paṅcami and Śivarātri.

The conventional beginning of spring is counted from the
fifth day of the bright of the moon of Māgha (i.e. from about
the second week of February), though it does not actually set
in for a fortnight later.

This fifth day—Vasanta Paṅcami—is a day of rejoicing,
one reason being that, if a man has lived through the un-
healthy season of the autumn and survived the rigours of the
winter, he will probably live for at least six months longer.

Kāma, the god of love, is specially worshipped on this day
by offering mango blossoms (one of his five arrows) in the
temples of Viṣṇu. The legend tells how this god of love once
tried to tempt the god Śiva, and that great ascetic burnt him
to ashes with a fiery glance from his third eye. He entreated
Śiva to re-create him, and so he was born again as the son of
Viṣṇu. But many Brāhmans (though followers of Śiva)
worship Kāma by going to the Vaisnava temples and wor-
shipping Viṣṇu, giving as their reason that the worship of the
father, Viṣṇu, includes the worship of the son, Kāma.

It is interesting to watch the ritual in detail. The officiant
plasters a square of ground with cow-dung in front of Viṣṇu's
image. This is probably Viṣṇu in one of his Avatāra as
Rāma or Kṛiṣṇa. On the square they arrange a heap of white millet weighing generally about two pounds, and on the ground around the heap they draw, in white and red powder, square and circular designs. They place a great bronze or copper pot on the heap and arrange in this pot whatever plants are in season, such as wheat and mustard, together with branches of date, and, if they can obtain them, mango blossoms, or, if not, just mango-leaves. They put seasonable fruit there also, such as jujubes. The worshippers come to the temple in ordinary clothes and throw coloured water, yellow with saffron or reddened with ‘Flame-of-the-forest’ flowers, over the god and over each other. Then they all stand in a circle and clash cymbals, singing a special song of the Spring called Ḥori, which, unlike Ḥoli songs, is not impure. In the evenings the temples are illuminated.

Sometimes on Vasanta a darbār is held in native States to which all the officials and leading citizens are invited. On this occasion also his subjects wave one or two rupees round their Chief’s head to entice away all his misfortunes, and deposit the coins at his feet, from whence only menial servants will remove them. The guests also offer the Chief sugar, coco-nut, and sums of money from five rupees upwards, which he makes no difficulties about receiving, and in return he distributes presents amongst the audience. Learned men go to the darbār and repeat verses of blessing, and are rewarded (oh, rare and happy occasion!) ‘according to their learning’.

From Vasanta to Ḥoli every visitor to a temple, especially a child visitor, is offered particular food, consisting of dried dates, dried grapes, coco-nut, and parched millet. About six weeks elapse between Vasanta and Holī, but the moment Vasanta is over, the children begin collecting material, such as wood and cow-dung, for the great bonfire at Holi. They prepare for it also in another pleasing way by eating specially nice

---

1 The village people call either of these Avatāra, Thākora (Lord), a word they never use for Śiva, whose proper title is Mahādeva.
2 Zizyphus Jujuba.
3 Khadira.
food. The five months that follow Vasanta are particularly fortunate, and many weddings take place during those months.

Vasanta itself is a very auspicious day for weddings and betrothals and for going to a husband’s house. It is a very fortunate day also for beginning lessons, but the practical difficulty arises that on this day most schools are closed. So, if parents are very anxious that their child shall begin his education on that day, they give him his first lesson themselves at home.

Members of the Twice-born castes in India observe four great night festivals: Śivarātri, Ṣuṭāṣāṇī, Janaṁśṭamī, and Kālīcaturdāśī. We must now study the first of these, Śivarātri, which falls on the fourteenth day of the dark half of the month of Māgha, i.e. about the last week of February. It is the festival which marks the close of the pleasant cold-weather season.

Uninformed people sometimes say that the festival marks the birthday of the god Śiva, but that is not the case, for the god, being self-existent (Svayambu), has had neither birthday nor beginning. One legend that explains why Śiva is worshipped on this particular night runs thus. Once Viṣṇu and Brahmā had a dispute as to which of them was the greater, when the god Śiva intervened, and to settle the matter he set them both a task: to try and find the end of his liṅga. Really an impossible task, since his liṅga has neither beginning nor end. However, Viṣṇu took the form of a tortoise and went down to the lower world, but came back saying that he could not find the end; Brahmā became a swan and flew up to the sky, where he pretended that he had seen the end of the liṅga and brought back with him a Ketaki flower, which he professed to have taken from the end of the liṅga.

Śiva cursed both Brahmā and the flower, declaring that because of this lie that he had told, the god should never be

1 All the legends have many variations. The present writer has in each case recorded the version which her three pandits decided to be most worthy of belief.
worshipped and the Ketaki flower should never be used in worship.

He blessed Viṣṇu, promising that the truth-telling god should bestow on his worshippers not only Mokṣa but also worldly enjoyment.

Now Śiva’s testing of the gods befell at midnight on the fourteenth of the dark of the moon of Māgha, so it is considered par excellence the night of Śiva, and thus, though the fourteenth night of every month is sacred to the god Śiva, and his more devout followers mark it by fasting and by worship of the liṅga, the fourteenth of the month of Māgha is observed by all followers of Śiva, even the most lax, and by many followers of Viṣṇu, and even by children and coolies. The more devout fast even from water; others who are less strict allow themselves fruits and milk-sweets.

The great benefit that accrues to all who keep this vigil even inadvertently is clearly shown in the well-known legend of the hunter and the deer, which, with numberless slight variations, seems current all over India. Once upon a time, the story runs, a Bhil had been out hunting all day, but had caught nothing; when night fell, he climbed a tree—a bilva ¹ tree as it happened—in order to continue his search for deer, and to escape from the unpleasant attentions of wild beasts. He hung his water-vessel on a branch conveniently near, and cut away some of the leaves of the tree in order to have a peep-hole, through which he could watch the movements of wild game; and all night long he thus waked and watched to see if a deer should approach. Now, all unknown to the poor hunter, thérę was a liṅga of Śiva underneath the tree, and quite unconsciously he was worshipping it in the way the god loves best, for drops of water from the water-vessel dripped on to the liṅga from the branch where he had hung it, bilva leaves pattered down on the liṅga as the hunter cut his spy-hole, and the man’s very eagerness after his prey kept him awake the whole night through.

¹ Aegle Marmelos.
But that was not all. At the end of the first watch of the night the man saw a doe and was just going to shoot her with his bow and arrow, when she besought him to spare her. With her great eyes full of tears she pled that she might be allowed at least to embrace her children before she died. If only the hunter would allow her a brief respite now to go home, she promised to return without fail in the morning. The kind-hearted hunter granted her request and settled himself down again in his tree.

At the end of the second watch a second doe appeared, and she in her turn pled for mercy, at least until she should have embraced her husband and bidden him farewell.

At the end of the third watch the hunter spied a fine buck, but he, like the others, was a deer of strong family affections and asked to be permitted to visit once more his domestic hearth, promising, like the others, that, once his farewells were over, he would return.

All three animals kept their promises, and at the end of the fourth watch the two beautiful does and the gallant buck reappeared, prepared to die. In the meantime, however, the heart of the hunter had been purified by his all-night vigil, and he no longer desired to take the life of any living creature, and so spared them all.

Some say that the hunter contracted a chill, and died immediately afterwards, others that he lived as an ascetic for several years, growing holier and holier all the time; but all agree that the unconscious worship he offered the línga, by dropping water and bilva leaves on it, and by fasting and watching, though inadvertently, all night, brought him so much merit that, when he died, without further trouble or delay, he gained Liberation at once.

As we have already said, this night is not Íśvá's birthday, but it is the night on which the god holds a great darbār in his heaven (Kailása). He stands in the centre of the heaven, whilst thirty-three crores (three hundred and thirty millions) of gods come and pay their respects to him, and
in return he offers them betel-leaf and areca-nut like a genial host.

On earth people begin to prepare for this great night in the morning before the vigil. The Brāhmans rise early, bathe, and go to the temples to worship, taking with them, or buying there, a great number of bilva-leaves. They drop these leaves separately on the liṅga, till at last it is crowned with a great heap of greenery, and each time that they drop one of these tripartite leaves, they repeat a mantra. Any one who knows the Rudrī recites that, too, at the temple in honour of Śiva, and all finish their morning devotions by the ceremonial waving of the five-wicked lamps.

Certain Brāhmans on the morning before the vigil brew bhāṅga by pouring water on crushed green hemp-leaves and adding almonds, rose-leaves, pepper, and opium-seeds to the liquid before straining it. Some of this bhāṅga they put on the liṅga of Śiva, saying, as they do so: Hara Hara¹ Mahādeva. The god, it is thought, enjoys its coolness, and the rest of the bhāṅga the worshipper drinks with those of his friends who do not object to it as an intoxicant.

On Śivarātri² a silver or gold mask is put on the liṅga, which is wrapped in cloth, and also a turban and a scarf of ceremony. Ornaments are also arranged round the liṅga as though round the throat of an idol.

In the writer’s part of India no worship is paid to any image of the god Śiva, though he is represented in pictures and in temple carvings;³ but he is always worshipped under the phallic symbol of the liṅga. It is utterly impossible to sully these pages with the legends that account for this symbol, but it is only fair to record the fact that high-minded Indians themselves detest these obscene stories as much as we do.

The belief is that in the upper world the head of Śiva

¹ New-comers are sometimes confused by the likeness between the two names Hara and Hari. Hara is a title of Mahādeva (Śiva), whilst Hari stands for the god Viṣṇu.
² And also on every Monday in Śrāvaṇa.
³ As, for instance, in the Svāmī Nārāyaṇa temple at Gondal.
is worshipped; on earth divine honours are paid to the *liṅga*; and in the lower world to his feet.

On Śivarātri in some parts of Kāṭhiāwār a procession is formed about seven or eight in the evening, and a silver *liṅga* set in a *yoni* is carried round the town in a palanquin. All night long the vigil is kept in the temples, and the praises of the god are sung. This is the night, too, when any who possibly can go on pilgrimage to Junāgaḍh and bathe in the *Dāmodara* tank at midnight.

Through the kindness of the administrator the writer has more than once been able to see the huge Śivarātri fair there. It is a wonderful scene. Passing outside the great old fort, in which the glamour of mediaeval India still lingers, are streams and streams of happy country-folk in gala attire, finding their way along the high road that, like some Alpine pass, follows the river between the wooded hills. At the fair grounds every sort of entertainment, religious and secular, finds a place, while to coax the pice from the pockets of the pilgrims, beggars and devotees of many types try every kind of expedient. Over all towers the grim, stephewn mountain of Gīrnār, bearing aloft as its coronal a cluster of Jaina temples, and beside the road that the country people are treading is the ancient stone-cut edict of that lover of the common folk, Aśoka—the rock that bears it still, alas, but imperfectly protected from the ravages of time and trippers. The throng of the pilgrims is densest at the Dāmodara tank—the pool of Kṛiṣṇa—where at midnight, on Śivarātri, close to the place where the dead are buried, the Twice-born bathe and wash away their sins. On the following days the people of low caste are permitted to bathe in the lower pools of the river.

*Fifth Month: Phālguna (Feb.–March).*

The fifth month of the Hindu year is specially sacred to the god Viṣṇu. In it occurs the festival of *Holi*, which lasts for at least three days. Once upon a time there was a demon called
Hiranyakasipu, who had a pious son called Prahlāda. Unfortunately the two did not hit it off, for, if the father was a demon, the son was a prig, and, irritated by the son’s appalling self-righteousness, the father tried to kill him in all sorts of ways. But neither poisoning nor drowning proved successful, and at last the demon-father persuaded his witch-sister (and a very bad witch she was, too), called Holikā, to take her impeccable nephew on her lap. The father thought that, whatever he did, nothing would ever hurt his sister—she was so very wicked—so he promised that she should escape unscathed, and promptly set fire to both aunt and nephew. However, the virtue of the youth saved him, and the aunt it was who died, burned to death in the most horrible manner. It is to celebrate the death of the wicked old aunt that the festival of Holi is kept.

In the villages the writer was told an even more thrilling story to account for the Holi fire: Every one knows that a female witch is far worse than a male one, since, in addition to the witch-character, that they have in common, the seven bad qualities of an ordinary woman (Evil speaking, Thoughtless work, Intrigue, Folly, Covetousness, Dislike of washing, and Lack of pity) are added and exaggerated in a female demon.

Well, once upon a time there was a witch, Holikā, who tormented the whole of India and instituted a perfect reign of terror, till at last all the people rose against this ‘monstrous regiment of woman’ and burnt her in a fire of cow-dung cakes. In order that no other witches should hear her shrieks and rush to save her, all the men and all the children shouted round the fire and drowned her cries. They also amused themselves by pelting the dying witch with coco-nuts. But at last they reflected that if she died too

1 It was to save this same youth later from further persecution that Viṣṇu appeared in his fourth incarnation as man-lion.

2 The student will find it most interesting to read with this section the chapter ‘The Fire Festivals of Europe’ in Frazer’s *Golden Bough* (Part VII, p. 106) and the following chapters.
enraged, she might do them even more harm as a disem-
oodied spirit, so to pacify her a little they walked round the
fire, throwing in fried pulse and dates, and offering milk to
her and to Agni.

Whatever legend they believe, on the first day of Holi the
children of the town or village go from house to house,
beating drums, singing obscene songs, and using filthy
language. They beg cakes of grain and of cow-dung from
each house, and every householder is only too glad to give
them three or four, and so escape the shower of horrible abuse
that a refusal would draw on him. All these cakes the chil-
dren pile together, ready for the great bonfires.

The next day is Holi itself. Every householder lays in
a great stock of dates, parched millet, parched pulse, and
sugar threaded so as to form a necklace, and gives from this
store to all his servants and friends, receiving some from them
in return. Many people, especially women, vow that on the
day of Holi they will eat nothing but these stored delights till
nightfall.

At sunset a drum is beaten, and all come out from their
houses to go to the place where the Holi bonfire is to
be lit.

Certain States, disliking the obscenities with which the
festival is bound up, permit only one Holi bonfire to a town
or village and stipulate that that shall be outside the town
limits. In other States there may be ten or twenty separate
bonfires in the capital, and it is gravely urged that, when the
Holi fire is burnt in every street, the cold is driven away for
that year, and the germs of malaria are destroyed!

It is worth noticing exactly how the fire is lit. The ground
on which the bonfire is arranged has been previously swept
and plastered with cow-dung by some menial servants, not,
however, by the lowest type of menial, for a Sweeper is not
allowed to come near it.

In the middle of this prepared ground a pit is dug, and
an earthenware pot, filled with water and either pulse or
wheat, is buried. Over this pit the fuel is piled some five feet high, and on the top of the pile they stick a flag, red or green in colour. In order to emphasize the fact that this pile of fuel represents a real live witch, the children hang round it a garland of cow-dung cakes, which they had begun to get ready ten days before. A man is then summoned to light the fire: usually he is a Koli by caste, and he has to be paid two pence or five pounds of dates to make up to him for the sins that will accrue to him if insect life be destroyed in the bonfire.

Sometimes the Ruling Chief of the State comes in procession and worships the pile before the fire is lighted, but generally the Koli, without more ceremony, takes a wisp of hay in his hand, which he lights either from a torch or with matches, and with it sets fire to the pile.

All present then worship the fire and walk round it a prescribed number of times, three, four, or seven, carrying milk in the hand that is nearest to the fire, and throw dates into the blaze. If they can afford it, the spectators also often throw in coco-nuts.

All the spectators meanwhile sing the most evil, filthy songs, which they often excuse by saying that it is to show their hatred of the witch. But the more thoughtful among the Hindus hate the idea of little children’s lips being stained by such impurities and long for the time when evil speech—the curse which covers India like a dread miasma—shall be heard no more. At present some Hindus say bitterly that there is but one common tongue, one lingua franca, that is current all over their beautiful peninsula, and that is Gāli (Abuse).

The Holi bonfire plays a very important part in the childhood of the Twice-born, for every Brāhman baby that has been born since the last Holi festival has to be carried round the fire in a special dress of white material presented by its aunt. It is then taken home and seated on its mother’s knee for the priest to touch its little lips with mango blossoms, and when all this has been done, and not till then, is the baby considered pure.

A well-known proverb runs: ‘Pay reverence once to a benign
god, for he may perhaps do you good; but pay reverence twice to a malign power, in order that it may not harm you; and it is in accordance with this idea also that every Hindu child is carried round the Holi fire either four or seven times, in order to prevent the witch harming it.

Another interesting custom is that at this time many Hindus take a smouldering cow-dung cake home with them and touch with it the iron pegs to which their cows, oxen, or buffaloes are tethered, in order to ward off all attacks from demons, witches, or disembodied spirits that might injure the cattle during the year.

The Holi bonfire is a great time, too, for omens, auguries, and divinations. We can only note a few. Directly the fire is lit, the wise old people of the village watch the direction of the flames with the keenest interest, for the land over which they and the smoke blow will be specially fertile during the year. In the same way, after the fire is out, and when all is over save the shouting, they dig up the pot of grain which we saw buried there earlier in the proceedings. If all the grain is well cooked, there will be no fear of famine; if it is well cooked in one part, say, the part of the pot facing north, and uncooked towards the southern part of the pot, then the lands to the south of the village will be unfertile, and even famine-stricken, whilst the northern fields will yield a bumper harvest; if none of the grain is cooked at all, then for certain famine—that ever-present dread of India—will stalk through the land.

The Holi bonfire has also medical value. Cautious people go to the bazaar on the day of Holi and buy salt; this they heat over the bonfire, and then take it home and give it to their buffaloes, horses, and cows, but specially to the oxen that they are going to use for ploughing. This simple precaution will save them from all fear of disease in either foot or mouth during the year.

Again, others touch the iron pegs to which their animals are tethered with burning cow-dung cakes, not only to keep off witches, but also to prevent the cattle suffering from worms.
There is a well-known story of a great Indian official promising to show an excited globe-trotter the most important person in India, and pointing out to him an ordinary cultivator—the ryot, on whom, in the last resort, the whole of India’s prosperity depends. These simple folk, working in their fields in the terrible heat and in the no less terrible dampness of the rainy season, are specially liable to rheumatism; but there is one infallible specific: let the farmer stand with his much-tried back to the bonfire till it really is thoroughly baked in the genial heat, and not one twinge of his old enemy will be experienced for the next year.

Young men jump over the fire in order to display their youthful strength; but in one Kāṭhiāwār village there is a sad story of how a young man, jumping short, fell into the midst of the fire and was burned to death.

When the fire is out, the elder folk go home and break their fast by eating delicious food, but the girls have yet work to do.

As they see the fire dying down, the girls of the village rush off and get water to pour over the ashes. (In a town they gather the ashes and take them to their own homes; but in either case the ceremony performed with the ashes is the same.)

They then spread the cooled ashes in a circle and plaster the circle with cow-dung. Out of the same material they fashion an image of Pārvatī with five horns; this they place in the centre of the circle, adorn it with a garland of twisted cotton-wool, and mark it with red turmeric. On the central one of the five horns they place a crown of cotton-wool, also marked with turmeric. They arrange some fruit and areca-nut beside the image and scatter millet over and around it, and then take all the troubles of the goddess on their own heads by cracking their knuckles against their temples.

Next they proceed to draw circles in white, red, yellow, green, and blue powder (being very careful, however, never to draw a black circle!), and these they circumambulate,
carrying water in their hands. Then, after offering the fivefold worship to the goddess, they go home and dine.

They repeat this worship of Parvati for fifteen days in order to gain a good husband, but on the sixteenth day after Holi the worship is performed with more elaboration. In some Brahman’s house a real image of Parvati is installed with the full Prāṇapratiṣṭhā rites. To this house the girls come, bringing trays of rice, wheat, and many other kinds of grain, but never millet (bājari),¹ and they worship the image with the fivefold worship. The next day the Brahman gives the goddess Parvati leave to go, not this time merely by throwing rice grains on the image, but by twisting his hands in the way called Visarjana, which calls to mind the ‘Here’s-the-parson-going-upstairs’ of our own nursery days.

Once the divinity is safely removed, the girls go singing in procession to the river, their leader carrying the image on her head, and finally throwing it into the middle of the stream.

For the sake of continuity we have followed the girls’ worship to the sixteenth day, but now we must return to Holi itself.

As soon as the fire is lit, children begin to throw dust and red powder over each other and over some of their elders. This powder-throwing is continued throughout the next day, and by Kolis it is kept up for at least three days. Children are careful never to bespatter their maternal or paternal aunts, but they specially try to throw it over the wives of their elder brothers, wishing them each a son during the coming year. Indeed, so connected is Holi with fertility rites, that if more than a year has passed since the wedding, and a wife has no child, she and her husband often walk round the fire with their garments tied together and offer

¹ Bājari is never given in alms, for the word is used metaphorically for life, so that if you give a Brahman bājari (millet) as alms, you give him your life. One of the euphemisms for dying is to say: ‘His bājari is all spent’.
a coco-nut to it, and the children take special care to sprinkle such a couple the next day. But men and boys also throw the powder over each other, wishing the recipient good luck for the year and marking each other’s clothes with the red imprint of their right hands, while women powder their brothers-in-law. To escape the children’s attentions, grown-ups promise them dates and other delights. In the old days the young men of the village used to form into two lines and throw stones at each other in mimic warfare, but this often led to such serious injuries that it is now forbidden, much as town and gown rows are in Oxford. They now content themselves with throwing powder or cow-dung cakes at each other and going off to the river to bathe. In the evenings they go to their temples and offer millet to Śiva or Viṣṇu, receiving prasāda in the temples of the latter.

We have seen that Holi is continued for more than three days in the case of Kolis, so it is a real interruption to work, for on the eight days preceding it is considered unlucky to put a beam into a house, to move into a house, to form a contract, or to get engaged; but the deep-rooted objection that high-minded Indians feel towards Holi is that in its obscenity and licence it is an expression of the darkest shadow cast by idol-worship, and that its malign influence is stronger over those whose purity should be most guarded: little children, young men, and maidens; for a week at least, they say, it turns the happy villages of their beautiful country-side into cesspools.

*Sixth Month: Čaitra (March–April).*

To many people in the south the year begins with the month Čaitra. In Kāṭhiāwār and Gujarāt the years are reckoned from the reign of Vikrama, King of Ujjain, who lived 56 B.C., and this fashion of counting the years is called Saṁvat. But in the Deccan the year is counted from Śālivāhana, i.e. from A.D. 78; this reckoning is called Śaka, and those Indian calendars which follow Śaka count the first day of Čaitra—Gūḍi Pratipad (The Pleasant First)—as their New
Year’s Day. So Deccanis in Kāthiāwār, as well as those living in their own country, go through the same pleasant social round on the first of Čaitra that the ordinary Kāthiāwārī does after Divālī. They also consult their astrologers as to the planet that will rule the coming year. If it be Śukra (Venus), or Guru (Jupiter), or Budha (Mercury), or the Moon, all will be well; but if Śani (Saturn), Rāvi (the Sun), or Maṅgala (Mars) are to sway the world, the year will be an evil one. For instance, many English people hoped that 1917 would be the year of Peace, but no Indian was surprised at the troubles in Russia, when he remembered that Śani ruled that year. The astrologer also foretells where the effects of the good or bad planet will be felt, and in return for all his labours receives presents of clothes, coco-nuts, or five rupees.

On Gūḍī Pratipad people make of the flowers of the nim-tree a prophylactic against malaria.

The first Nine Nights of Čaitra are dedicated to the goddess Pārvatī, the wife of Śiva, and some very devout men and women keep a light burning all these nights¹ in her honour and observe the days as a partial fast, eating only fruit and milk-sweets.

In this same month of Čaitra, on the ninth day of the bright of the moon, the god Rāma’s birthday, Rāma-navamī is celebrated.

The god Rāma—the seventh incarnation of Viṣṇu and the hero of the Rāmāyaṇa—was born exactly at noon, and at that hour the temple bells begin to ring, and the followers both of Śiva and Viṣṇu go to Viṣṇu’s temple to worship. A little image of Rāma is arranged in a cradle in the inner shrine, and at twelve, amid great ringing of bells and blowing of conch-shells, the doors of the shrine are thrown open, and the priest announces the birth of Rāma. All the audience gaze with reverence at the cradle and sing songs in honour of the god, recounting how at the request of Kauśalyā the god Viṣṇu took birth as her son and was called Rāma, the fascinating one.

The noise is indescribable, with some people singing, and others beating kettle-drums and gongs, or playing on pipes and cymbals. At this time, too, presents are made to the temple. Sometimes a rich man seizes the opportunity to offer a gold image, but most devout people give one or two rupees to the temple treasury and clothes to the priest. In return every visitor receives from the officiant things associated in India with the birth of a child: ginger, molasses, and dill-grains.

A lamp is waved in front of the cradle, and, if he can make himself heard, a Brāhman reads the account of the birth of Rāma. Then every one goes home and fasts in some degree during the day, eating only fresh dates, milk, or sugar, but no grain, or flour, or anything made from flour. The very strict, however, will not even eat fruit, ordinary salt, red pepper (black is allowed), or betel-leaf (areca-nut is admitted), and, of course, they observe the strictest chastity, as they always do on fasts when ordinary salt is forbidden. In the evenings the Viṣṇu temples are illuminated, and a procession is made through the town, an image of Rāma being carried in a palanquin, followed by music and drums. It is interesting to notice that, though certain gods are worshipped under symbols, such as the linga of Śiva and the Śālagrama of Viṣṇu, in the writer’s part of India, at all events, worship is always paid to the idol of Rāma itself.

Rāma’s birthday, however, is not the only festival celebrated during the bright fortnight of Čaitra, for the last three days of this moonlit time—the Āravāra or Pitri Days—are sacred to dead ancestors. No special festival is celebrated in their

---

1 Such a partial fast, when fruit is allowed, is called a Phalēhāra.
2 A distinction is made between salt from the sea and salt from mines. Salt from the sea is forbidden on celibate fast days, though salt from mines may be eaten.
3 This is, of course, a Vaiṣṇava festival, but every Brāhman, even though a follower of Śiva, is expected to observe the five great Vaiṣṇava Fasts, i.e., the two eleventh days of every month, this of Rāma-nāvami, Nrisimha-čaturdāśi, Janmāṣṭamī, and Vāmana-dvādaśi.
honour, but a man gains merit by performing a Śrāddha for their benefit during these days, even in his own town, and gains great merit if he performs Śrāddha in certain special places, such as Gayā or Siddhpur. In Kāṭhiāwar itself the best place to go to is Prabhāsa Pātan, where, not far from the famous temple of Somnāth, three rivers meet before falling into the sea; and if a man simply wants to gain lasting merit, or if his dead ancestors are causing constant illness in his household by a worrying habit the dead sometimes indulge in of drinking the blood of the living, he causes a Śrāddha to be performed. If the dead are causing childlessness, a householder often takes advantage of these three days to have the calf marriage¹ performed, either in his own house, or at places like Junāgadh or Prabhāsa Pātan.

Wherever he decides to have the Śrāddha performed, the householder unmurmuringly fasts for the day, and has his upper lip shaved, for he feels that he has won peace and punya (merit).

The ladies of the house during all these three days pay special devotion to pīpal trees.

Hindus regard pīpal trees as very sacred, since they are the abode of Viṣṇu, and they are accordingly much distressed when one is injured.²

During these three days the ladies get up very early in the morning, bathe, and put on silk clothes, and then start out to worship the nearest pīpal tree, carrying in their hands a couple of either copper or black earthenware pots full of water.

Arrived at the tree, they circumambulate it from right to left three times, first, however, pouring water very carefully round the tree-stem from the upper, and then from the lower, of the two vessels that they have brought. The ladies will tell you that this water-pouring soothes Viṣṇu, who lives in the tree,

¹ Cf. pp. 175 ff.
² They are careful never to plant a pīpal tree too near a house, lest its roots should burrow under the hearth and so get burnt; and riots between the two communities have arisen through Muhammadans cutting pīpal branches back to make room for their tábuts to pass.
and that he will in return try and help their dead ancestors, or at least prevent them from injuring their living descendants.

On the last day the householder and his ladies unite to feed at least five Brāhmans, so that the three days' worship resembles a Śrāddha on a small scale.

During the year there are three such groups of Pitṛi days; first, those in the month of Kārttika; secondly, those we have just been discussing; and finally and most important of all, the last three days of the dark fortnight in Śrāvana, when all Hindus, men and women, must pour water on pīpal trees.

During the last eight days of the month of Čaitra people anxiously look out for indications as to the coming of the monsoon. It is most important that no clouds at all should be visible, especially on the eighth and fourteenth days of this fortnight.

Seventh Month: Vaiśākha (April–May).

On the third day of the bright half of Vaiśākha, Aksaya Tritiyā, is celebrated the birthday of Parāśurāma (Rāma-with-the-axe), the sixth incarnation of the god Viṣṇu. (It will be remembered that this hero possessed only six out of the sixteen powers of the god.) Most followers of Śiva, at least in Kāṭhiaṅwār, observe the day by eating specially dainty food ¹ in its honour, though only the best instructed seem to know whose birthday it commemorates.

There is one very nice thing about the day: unlike some other festivals, it can never be inauspicious, and so it is a particularly good day on which to begin any enterprise, such as opening a new shop, marrying, betrothing, or starting out on a journey.

The anxiety about the monsoon is now deepening, and on this day farmers, in Kāṭhiaṅwār, and doubtless elsewhere too, note with apprehension the direction of the wind, and accord-

¹ Two special dishes eaten on this day are a mixture of wheat, treacle, and clarified butter, and another of tamarind-water and treacle.
ing to the way it blows expect a good or bad monsoon. To test it accurately, they often build a fire of bāvala-wood, or hold up smouldering cow-dung cakes.

To understand the Indian cultivator’s feelings about the monsoon, we must remember that, whilst good rains may mean prosperity, bad rains spell ruin, and as a man’s life-story is coloured by his desire for a son, so his sacred year and its ceremonies are largely directed to obtaining a good monsoon.

The following day, the fourth of the bright half of the month of Vaisākha, is Gaṇeṣa-caturthī, the anniversary, not of the birth, but of the mending or re-heading of Gaṇeṣa (or Gaṇapati). Gaṇeṣa is a god of such importance, and his name recurs so frequently in our studies, that it will help our work forward if we put together here some of the most important facts about him.

During the absence of the god Śiva, his wife Pārvatī, feeling lonely, created a daughter, Uṣā, out of the perspiration of her left arm, and a son, Gaṇeṣa, out of the perspiration of her right arm. The mischief-maker, Nārada, went and told Śiva what had happened, putting the worst construction possible on it all. Śiva returned home enraged, and his wrath was further kindled by the fidelity of Gaṇeṣa, who happened to be acting as door-keeper at the time and refused to admit an unknown stranger, whereupon Śiva incontinently beheaded the boy, whilst Uṣā, the daughter, saved herself by hiding in a jar of salt. Pārvatī was so distressed, when she realized what had happened, that to comfort her Śiva promised to replace Gaṇeṣa’s original head with that of the first animal his servant slew: this happened to be an elephant, and so to this day the god is represented with an elephant’s head. The trunk, however, may turn either to the right or to the left, and it is most important to notice in which direction it is turned, for Gaṇeṣa with his trunk turned to his own right hand is a dangerous god to worship. Only a Brāhman in a state of the utmost ceremonial purity dare attempt it,
and if he sets up such a god, he must worship it every single day without omission; the god is complacent if white darbha-grass be offered him, but woe betide the devotee who offers tulasi leaves in error, or makes any other slip in the ritual.

The god with his trunk turned towards his left hand, however, is in quite a different mood: even a Śūdra dare approach him, and he can be worshipped quite informally, and even though his worshipper be not ceremonially pure. So it comes to pass that the Gaṇeśa with the trunk to the right is seldom worshipped, whereas the leftward-looking idol is worshipped throughout the year on Tuesdays and Saturdays quite informally, by clarified butter and red lead poured over his image.

But there is a further point: Pārvatī was not only distressed, she was also extremely angry at this spoiling of her handsome child, and every one knows how much more difficult and dangerous an angry woman is than an angry man; so to soothe her, Śiva promised that, to make up for his ugliness, at every ceremony Gaṇeśa should be worshipped before any other god, and that he should have the power of removing every obstacle in the path of his worshipper.

He also endowed him with four wives: Intelligence, Opulence, Success, and Splendour; and two sons: Wealth and Profit, all of which things Gaṇeśa can bestow on his worshippers. Now, no one is going to offend a god with such gifts in his power so on every occasion the worship of Gaṇeśa takes precedence.

Not only so, but Gaṇeśa is also the lord of every orifice of the human body, and, if he is not worshipped, he could do things like stopping the breath and so causing death.

An image of Gaṇeśa is generally found over the entrance gate to a city and in the porch of a temple; and if the door of a house faces a side wall (a very inauspicious thing), a little image of Gaṇeśa is carved on the lintel of the door to remove the ill luck. It is very lucky to come upon an image of Gaṇeśa when digging the ground, but still luckier if the idol is
found near the root of an Arka tree, for in this case all the finder has to do is to place a gold ring on the elephant trunk of the god before worshipping it, and he knows to a certainty that his every desire and every wish will be fulfilled.

The fourth day of the dark of the moon in every month is sacred to the Elephant-god throughout the year, so people who are in pecuniary embarrassment fast all that day, and in the evening worship Gaṇeśa as Lord of Wealth. Then, about ten o'clock at night, they look out of doors to try if they can see the moon, and as soon as ever they can see it in the sky, they feel at liberty to break their fast.

But on Gaṇeśa-caturthī Hindus worship the god with greater zeal and observe the fast with greater strictness, and so look out for the moon with greater eagerness.

The difficulty is that in some other parts of India the Fourth of Gaṇeśa is celebrated on the fourth of the bright half of Bhādrapada, and so, to be on the safe side, many Kāṭhiāwāris observe this day also.

To commemorate the fact that the daughter, Uṣā, saved herself by hiding in a salt-barrel, many Hindu ladies abstain from the use of salt during Čaitra.

The fourteenth day of the bright half of the month Vaiṣākha, Nṛsiṁha-caturdaśi, is a great festival of the Vaiṣṇava, for it is the anniversary of the appearance of the god Viṣṇu as a man-lion to save his follower Prahlāda from the cruelty of his father, Hiranyakaśipu.

It will be remembered how Holī celebrates the failure of one attempt the father made to injure his son;¹ not content with that, the wicked parent ordered his boy to embrace a red-hot pillar, when lo! the pillar burst, and Viṣṇu came forth as a creature, half man and half lion, to rescue his worshipper. Brahmā had promised the wicked father that he should be invulnerable from the attacks of man or beast; on land, on sea, in the sky, or in the intervening space; and from weapon or poison; by day or night; inside or outside the house.

¹ See pp. 280 f.
Viṣṇu managed to evade this comprehensive safe-conduct by becoming half-man, half-beast, appearing from a pillar, taking the father on his lap, and tearing him to pieces at twilight (which could not fairly be considered day or night), on the threshold of his house, which was neither within nor without it.

Viṣṇu grows enraged when any of his followers are injured, and on this occasion he was so angry that Śiva thought he might injure the world; accordingly, Śiva assumed the form of an imposing beast called Śarabha, which is even more powerful than a lion, and this ‘more-than-lion’ rolled in front of the ‘man-lion’ so divertingly that the anger of Viṣṇu was appeased.

Followers of Śiva keep this fast, just as they do the anniversary of Rāma’s birthday, by observing celibacy, abstaining from salt, and fasting all day. Those who are in the habit of going to the temples do so, but very busy people content themselves with fasting.

_Eighth Month: Jyeṣṭha (May–June)._ 

The eighth month of the Hindu year is a good month and auspicious for marriage, excepting for the eldest son of a family (the Jyeṣṭha) whose name resembles that of the month too closely for it to be safe for him to contract a marriage during it.

Every one is now on the look-out for the _Signs of a Good Monsoon_, round which the whole conversation of the people circles, for this is the month, at least in Western India, when they hope the rains will burst.

On the second day of the month everybody gazes anxiously at the crescent moon and hopes that its two ends may be exactly level, for it is thought of as a balance, and it is lucky if the scales are even.

The northern end of the crescent is called the Muḥammadal end, and if that is weighed down with good luck, the Muḥammadans will have all the prosperity, and, amongst other evils, the Hindus (who are more often cultivators than the Muḥammadans) will have a bad harvest. If the Hindu or southern
end of the balance be weighed down, the harvest will be good enough to make them the richer portion of the community; but if both ends are equal, the harvest will be so good that both Hindus and Muḥammadans will be equally enriched.

If on this second day of the bright half thunder be heard and lightning seen, there will be scarcity of rain. The proverb runs: ‘If it thunders on the second of Jyeṣṭha in the bright fortnight, the rain that was in the clouds is dispersed; so don’t gamble or bet on the rains, O Astrologer’.

An astrologer is a very important person just now, for he tells which of the twenty-seven constellations (each of which lasts for about fourteen days) is in the ascendant. If it begins to rain under the Āśvinī constellation, there will not be much corn; if it rains or even drizzles under Revaṭi, there will be great scarcity of water; rain under Bharaṇi will destroy everything: the proverb says: ‘If it rains in Bharaṇi, the man will leave his wedded wife (to wander in poverty)’. If, however, during Kṛittikā thunder is heard, the year will be good; indeed, so strong is the influence of thunder at that time, that, even if it has rained under the three constellations, the evil will be nullified, and, in spite of everything, the year will be good. (The writer was once working in Kṛittikā with her pāṇḍits, who were very worried about the evil omens, when thunder was heard, and she will never forget their joy and relief.) When the actual bursting of the monsoon is expected, it is unlucky, according to another proverb ‘if the clouds appear in the morning and are of the grey colour of a crow’s breast, if the sun’s disk is like a broad plate with no warmth in it, and if the wind blows from the south-west, for all these things will drive the rain far away’.

The heat in Jyeṣṭha should be very great; in fact, many of us feel that the one time when Kāṭhiāwār is unendurable is the first fortnight in June; but we comfort ourselves with the saying: ‘When the sun gives heat, there is hope of rain’.

The behaviour of birds also gives a clue to the monsoon, for a proverb declares: ‘When fishes and alligators come to
the surface of the water, when sparrows take their baths in the dust, when ants are seen carrying their eggs in their mouths, then the rains will be very good'. On the other hand, 'If crows chatter at night, or jackals talk by day, the poet Bhaḍalī says that undoubtedly there will be a famine'.

The second of Jyeṣṭha is a very important date for forecasting the monsoon; but it is also necessary to notice whether rain actually falls on the fourteenth or fifteenth days of the month of Jyeṣṭha, for if so, there will only be enough water to fill pools and wells, not enough to fill the rivers.

In fact, so many proverbs are there about the monsoon, that a book has been compiled of them called the *Rosary of the Clouds*.

In Kāṭhiāwār the farmers, after consulting an astrologer to find the most auspicious day in which to begin, plough in winter and plough again in the summer, so that directly the rain falls they are ready to sow. (In many parts they do not plough till the rain falls.)

Usually Jyeṣṭha is the month for sowing, though, if the rains be late, that will have to be put off to Aṣāḍha.

The ten first days of the bright half of the month Jyeṣṭha are also concerned with water in another form, for they are sacred to the Worship of the River Ganges.

Once upon a time there was a king named Sagara, who acquired such power and merit by performing ninety-nine horse-sacrifices that the god Indra trembled for his superiority. If the hundredth sacrifice were successfully accomplished, Sagara, though a mortal, would be stronger than the god, which to prevent, Indra stole the last horse and hid it in the hermitage of the sage Kapila. Not to be outdone, Sagara sent the entire crowd of his sixty thousand sons to find it. They went to the hermitage and there most unwisely called the sage a horse-thief, a term no recluse in India, or even in the wild west, appreciates. The sage promptly produced fire from his eye (a way that gods and sages have in India) and burnt up the whole crowd. King Sagara then sent his one
precious grandson, his descendant by another wife, to the sage to ask him to allow his sons at least to attain Mokṣa, since men killed through the anger of a Brāhmaṇ are ordinarily relegated to Naraka. The sage would only promise to do this if the water of the Ganges, the river which cleanses from sin and gives deliverance to mortals, hitherto entirely a heavenly stream, were brought down to earth. The grandson performed endless austerities, but could not gain power enough to do this; after his death his son took up the task, but also failed; and so did his son; however, the first man's great-grandson, called Bhagiratha, performed such austerities that the Ganges consented to fall to the earth, on condition that some one should receive her flow. Bhagiratha turned his attention to the god Śiva, and by renewed austerities gained such power over the god that he persuaded him to receive the stream on his head, from whence it falls to the ground, as may be seen in the picture of the god to this day; and in Śiva temples an image of the Ganges may usually be found. The sage Kapila threw some of the water on the sixty thousand sons, who thereupon all attained Mokṣa. Ever since then it has been believed that any dead person on whose ashes the water of the Ganges is poured gains Mokṣa.

The stream of the Ganges first fell on the head of the god Śiva during the first ten days of Jyeṣṭha, so now during those ten days special reverence is paid to the Ganges, with the object of being cleansed from sin and all its consequences and obtaining Mokṣa.

Those Brāhmaṇ men and women who hold the ten days in special reverence—not all do so—bathe early in the morning in water from the Ganges; if possible, they bathe entirely in water brought from that river; if not, they put one drop of its sacred stream into ordinary water, or failing even this, bathe in an ordinary river.¹

¹ Sellers of water from the Ganges are a common sight in every Indian town. They carry the water-pots on a yoke, and cover each pot with red cloth.
During the ten days they only eat once in the twenty-four hours and listen daily to the story of the ‘Fall of the Ganges to Earth’, as it is read by some Brähman. At the end of the ten days they make up a somewhat heterogeneous collection of a red earthen pot filled with water and having a laḍḍu at the top, a fan, a square piece of white cloth, or a big loin-cloth, and some silver coins, and present it all to the reader and to their family priest.

Bhīma-ekādaśi (Bhīma’s Eleventh Day), the day immediately following the ten days’ fast in honour of the Ganges, is also a fast. Most of the devout, we have already noted, keep each eleventh day of every month as a fast, but even the lax and careless keep this great fast of the eleventh day of the bright half of Jyeṣṭha, so great is the merit to be won thereby.

Once upon a time there was an extremely fat man who had an enormous appetite. Some said his appetite was caused by gluttony, others that the poor man had a fire of the kind called Vṛika¹ burning inside him, which burnt up everything he ate.

Anyhow, this poor gentleman—Bhīma by name—the second of the heroic Pāṇḍava, the heroes of the Mahābhārata, found it quite impossible to keep the fast each eleventh day. So he asked Kṛṣṇa if he would be so kind as to assist him by naming one day—one special eleventh—by fasting on which he might gain the same merit as if he fasted on each eleventh. Kṛṣṇa consented and appointed this day, the Eleventh of Jyeṣṭha; so very busy people, as well as those who are very hungry by nature, follow his example, fasting from everything but fruit, and going to the temples to worship. Rigorists take neither fruit nor water (save Ācamana) on this day, but others say that, once a man has sons, the Scriptures permit him to eat fruit on any fast day, however strict. Although Bhīma turned to

¹ There are three kinds of fire: Vaḍavāgni, the fire which burns under the sea and causes the waves, and which consumes so much water that it keeps the ocean at the same level, no matter how many rivers pour into it; Laukikāgni, the ordinary domestic fire which burns on the earth; Vṛika, a subdivision of Jaṭharāgni, the fire in the stomach whose burning you can hear when you put your finger in your ears.
Kṛiṣṇa for assistance, yet he is accounted a special devotee of Śiva, and so every one goes to worship in the Śiva temples, which are specially illuminated, and, after visiting the temples, they are careful to keep awake all night.

Newly married ladies should observe the thirteenth, fourteenth, and fifteenth of the bright of the moon of Jyeṣṭha as a fast, if at all possible, the occasion being known as Vaṭa Sāvitrī Vrata. If they cannot hold out for the three whole days, they content themselves with fasting on the last day, but it is wiser and safer for them to fast the three days, and each day worship a banyan-tree\(^1\) under the direction of a Brāhmaṇa. The interesting thing is that no unmarried girl may keep this fast, or worship the tree. But young married women circumambulate the tree, with their right hands towards it, one hundred and eight times, water it, burn a lamp fed with clarified butter under its shade, and offer the fivefold worship (marking, incense, lamp, offerings, ārati).

The origin of the fast is thus explained. There was once a learned princess of great beauty, betrothed to a prince, who, poor man, was not only dethroned and exiled, but also fated to die within a year. Though the princess knew his doom, her love was so great that she married him, and they lived together in great happiness in a forest. A sage who pitied her love and fears advised her to fast and worship a banyan-tree and see if by so doing she could not save her husband. She obeyed, and when the term of their happy year was completed, she persuaded her husband to let her accompany him on his wood-cutting journeys into the forest. It was well that she was beside him, for at midday the dread god Yama appeared and sought the prince. Piteously the loving princess pleaded for her husband’s life; Yama, however, declined to spare him, but, influenced by her beauty and distress, granted her four boons. She asked for the kingdom to be given back to her blinded father-in-law, together with his sight, and for a brother, and then, with a loving woman’s craft, she said she

\(^1\) *Ficus Indica.*
had one petition to ask for herself, that she might bear this
her princely husband a hundred sons. Yama granted her
request, and then, seeing that he had already by implication
promised her husband a long life, remitted his sentence of
death.

So on this day married women fast, urged thereto by the
ever-present fear of widowhood, to gain their husbands a
hundred years at least of added life. They worship the
banyan-tree, seeing that it is the longest-lived tree in India.

The last fast mentioned was only for the married; but the
unmarried girls are not forgotten, either, for every Sunday in
the month of Jyeṣṭha the young girls fast from salt, eat only
the simplest food, 'bread,' rice, or fruit, and sit sedately in one
place all day long till evening. Then they go to the temples,
meet their little friends, and all make merry together, after
worshipping Pārvatī, the wife of Śiva, in the hope of getting
good husbands. Sometimes they just worship the goddess
mentally; at others they go down to the river bank, make
heaps of sand there and worship them, calling them Pārvatī.
But all this Sunday worship is looked on as just preliminary
to the great festival of Molākāta.

Ninth Month: Āṣāḍha (June–July).

This is a thoroughly auspicious month. We have already
described two possible New Year's Days, and now we meet
a third, for in one part of Kāṭhiāwār, the Hāḷāra Prānt, the
year begins on the Second Day of the bright half of this month.
It is observed with all the rejoicings and formalities we have
already described: the ruling chief holds a court and is greeted
in the usual manner.

In other parts of Kāṭhiāwār the second day of Āṣāḍha is
observed as a fast, no one eating till he has seen the moon;
but as soon as it can be descried, he must promptly eat both

1 This counting of the year, the Hāḷāra Sāṅvat, as it is called, is
specially observed in Jāmnagar and all the States descended from Jāmna-
gar, such as Rājkot, Gondal, Dhrol.
bananas and bread. The moment he sees the moon's crescent, a man must bring out a silver, or, better still, a gold coin, if he wants to be lucky the whole year through.

We have seen that the monsoon may burst in the month of Jyeśṭha, but it is often very late, and so this month of Āṣāḍha is as important as the previous one, and as full of signs and portents. For instance, if the second day and the ninth day of the bright half of Āṣāḍha fall on a Monday, a Thursday, or a Friday, torrents of rain will follow; if they fall on a Sunday, the heat will be terrific; if they fall on a Wednesday, there will be moderate rains, and not much heat; if they fall on a Tuesday there will be scarcity of rain; but if by some ill chance they fall on a Saturday, the rains will fail utterly, and only a few people will survive the year.

Another proverb says that, if on the fifth day of the bright half of the month Āṣāḍha there are both clouds and lightning, then sell out your old stored grain, get cash, and go and buy oxen, plough, and seeds, for it will be so good a harvest that the price of the last year's grain will go down.

(The writer noticed as a fact that in 1917, when clouds and lightning were visible on the fifth of Āṣāḍha, immediately all the grain merchants put their prices down.)

And now we are approaching one of the important crises of the year. for on Nīma, the Great Eleventh of Āṣāḍha, Viṣṇu will go down to Pātāla to sleep for four months. He is not only the protector of the Universe, but also the special protector of the newly married; so (seeing that, at their swiftest, weddings last two days) the latest date on which a wedding ceremony may be begun in the house of a Twice-born is the ninth of Āṣāḍhā.

The eleventh day of Āṣāḍha is not only the day of Viṣṇu's departure for Pātāla, it is also the first day of the all-important Molākāta Festival, which we have already described,1 and which is, perhaps, the greatest festival in a girl's year. It is likewise the ritual opening of the monsoon season—a 'ticklish' season

---

1 See pp. 51 ff.
ritually, for a man’s sins may spoil the monsoon crops for others as well as for himself.

This is the day on which vows are taken for the term of the monsoon as to what books people will read, how long they will fast, when they will observe silence, whether or not they will eat with the left hand, and so forth.

This day, too, is full of portents for the monsoon. If this Eleventh fall on a Saturday, Sunday, or Tuesday, cattle will die in great numbers, and men will suffer terribly. Even if there be good hay and grain crops, cattle and men will die from epidemics. Before the great famine of 1900, which is still remembered with horror, Nima fell on one of these unlucky days. In the evening of this Great Eleventh the temples are illuminated, and people go and worship both Śiva and Viṣṇu. In the Viṣṇu temple a cradle is placed, to signify that the god is resting in Pātāla, and it is kept there for a month.

On the Full-moon Night of this month every one should worship their Spiritual Preceptors (Guru), though nowadays this is not always done. However, laymen and disciples do very often worship the Śaṅkarācārya and Vyāsa at this time. On this night ascetics of all sects go to the temple of Viṣṇu in whatever town they happen to be at this date, and there take their special vow of not travelling during the monsoon. They, like the Jaina ascetics, are not allowed to travel during this season, lest they should commit the sin of killing by inadvertently trampling under foot some of the young life then so abundantly springing into being. So the ascetics go to the temple and promise not to leave that particular town for four months, or at least four fortnights. Meanwhile, as an ascetic cannot beg so easily when confined to one place, some wealthy householder, in order to gain merit, promises to be his host, or rather ‘food-provider’, once a day for the four months. This gentleman will therefore send food—the ordinary food from his own table—every day to the ascetic, who has taken up his abode in one of the rooms that surround the temple compound.¹

¹ The Brāhmans do not have Upāsarā for travelling ascetics in the same way that Jaina do.
Under *Molākāta*¹ we have already discussed the fun that young girls will be having on this full-moon night, and we have described what happens on *Divāso*, the last day of the month of Āśāḍha, under the vows of married women.²

**Tenth Month: Śrāvaṇa (July–Aug.).**

We have now to study the tenth month of the Hindu year, the most sacred of all for the followers of Śiva, as Phālguna is for those of Viṣṇu. (Each of the gods, it is believed, picked his own month.) This month of Śrāvaṇa is not auspicious: no marriage can take place in it, and no sacred thread may be given, though during it a child may be sent to school for the first time.

The first Sunday of the month, *Pasali*, is named after the palm of the hand (Guj. *Pasali*—Sans. *Prasṛiti*); it is another of those pretty festivals of brotherly and sisterly love and greeting whose Christian counterpart, we must hope, will be introduced into that great ‘Church of India’ which is yet to be born.

On this day brothers invite their sisters to their homes, and, in return for the invitation, sisters send a thread to which they have tied a crushed areca-nut, thereby symbolically declaring that they have crushed and destroyed all their brother’s troubles and worries.

Arrived at her brother’s house, the sister feasts on a special dish of wheat, treacle, and clarified butter, and after that prepares for the worship.

On a freshly-plastered piece of the floor she places a low square stool, and on that arranges three pipal leaves. On the centre leaf she draws a portrait of Jayā (another name of Pārvatī, Śiva’s wife), on the leaf to the right she arranges as many threads as she has brothers, and on the leaf at the left five morsels of the special wheat and treacle dish; on the stool itself she places an areca-nut and a pice.

A lamp fed with clarified butter is put in front of the stool,

¹ See pp. 51 ff. ² See pp. 108 ff.
and the whole household sits round it and eats wheat and treacle, and then the brother gives presents to his sister: money, cloth, or a bodice.

After the meal the things are removed from the stool and taken to the nearest pipal tree; there one of the threads is tied to the tree, and the others are tied to the wrists of the various brothers.\footnote{Nāgaras keep Pasali only by brothers inviting sisters to their homes, feeding them, and giving them presents. The sisters perform the worship of the pipal tree.}

If, however, the sister has no brother (a calamity which every Indian woman feels as keenly as her English sister), she vows that, if only a baby may be born to her mother, on every palm-day (pasali), she will eat only as much as will fill the little palms (pasali) of her baby brother.

Almost all Brāhmans observe the four Mondays of Śrāvana as fasts till about six in the evening. Every Monday in the year is regarded as sacred to Śiva, so the special devotees of the god fast for full fifty-two Mondays; but as Śrāvana is Śiva’s particular month, the Mondays in it are specially holy. Of the four Mondays, the first and the last are pre-eminently sacred, and on the evenings of those two days exceptionally nice food is cooked, and certain special dainties added. On all four Mondays people get as much merit as they can, by going to as many temples as possible in the evenings, when these are illuminated. The liṅga, too, is decorated every Monday afternoon in Śrāvana with mask, turban, scarf, and garland. It is specially meritorious to offer Bilva-leaves (\textit{Aegle Marmelos}) at the temples on these days, and as the worshipper places a leaf on the liṅga, he should say: ‘I offer this triple leaf to the three-eyed god Śiva, who represents the qualities of Sattva, Rajas, and Tamas, who removes the sins of three lives, the present, the past, and the future’.

Certain Brāhmans (not Nāgaras, however) sit all day in a Śiva temple, making clay liṅga, and each new worshipper
throws some tiny copper coin on these clay symbols as he enters the temple.

The four days are observed as holidays in both girls' and boys' schools, and many offices are also closed on these days.

Srāvaṇa is the best of all months in which to visit Benares (Kāśi), and if a rich man cannot afford the time to go there himself, he may pay a Brāhman to go as his deputy and worship the līṅga in his name for the month, especially on Mondays.

Outside almost every town or village in Kāṭhiāwār will be found a shrine of the goddess of Smallpox: as Hanumān guards the village from ghosts and robbers, so Mother Smallpox has it in her power to guard the village from smallpox, measles, and pestilence. The shrine in the writer's town stands high above the river, and there, under a tiny dome, is a reddened stone, adorned with eyes of talc (for the goddess also takes care of eyes), and beside it are pieces of coral and all sorts of stones whose pitting resembles smallpox-marking, which those who are benefited by her care deposit. Twice a year special worship is paid to the goddess, and of these the greatest day is the seventh day of the bright half of Srāvaṇa (Guj. Śīlī Sātama). On this day the goddess sleeps on each domestic hearth; no one dare therefore cook any food, for fear of disturbing her, and so every one feeds on cold viands prepared the day before. This peculiarity of the goddess is very convenient in some ways; for, released from the duty of cooking, every woman is free to attend the fair. Of all melas this is the one that the writer loves best to watch. Down below at the river-side is a regular fair, with merry-go-rounds and glittering stalls of mirrors, toys, and fruit; up the narrow lane that climbs to the shrine throng pleasant family groups of mothers and children, clad in their brightest blues and greens and reds. Arrived at the shrine, the happy mothers whose children have been guarded all the year from every childish ailment, chicken-pox, scarlet fever, German measles, as well as from smallpox, deposit in front of the goddess coco-nuts, or handfuls of flour,
salt, or gram, and little pots of whey, oil, treacle, or clarified butter. Some even go so far as to offer a tiny model of an umbrella, the sign of royalty or divinity (for every god loves an umbrella); or a silver eye, when delivered from ophthalmia. Or you might see a child being weighed against sugar or dates, in fulfilment of a vow made during illness. It adds to the fun, that the officiant at the shrine only keeps half the offerings for himself and distributes the rest amongst the children present. Within the enclosure round the shrine there is practically not a man to be seen, only the happy women with their sweet faces (for this is a festival which attracts the nicest type of women, especially Brähman and Kaṇabī), rejoicing in true mother-fashion at the restoration of their sick children to health, or praying for their preservation during the coming year. In the sunshine the charming scene glows like a veritable tulip-garden and seems all fragrant with mother-love. Do we Christian mothers, too, not need a thanksgiving day?

If children actually have smallpox, besides vowing to make presents to the smallpox-goddess on their recovery, it is a wise thing to feed donkeys on balls of wheat and clarified butter, as well as grass, for Mother Smallpox rides on a donkey, and by pleasing them she also is placated.

In this same month there is another day sacred to the goddess, the seventh of the dark half of the moon; on that day, too, people eat only cold food, and there is another gathering of women at the shrine. But the first fair is the happiest, for then the women are paying their vows, and there seems a special atmosphere of gratitude and thanksgiving.

Full-moon Day in the month of Śrāvaṇa is as important as any day can be, for it is marked by three distinct ceremonies, and called by as many names. It is Śrāvaṇi, the day on which Brähmans change their sacred thread; it is Baleva, the day on which honour is paid to Bali, the Hindu king; and it is Coco-nut Day, when the sea is worshipped.

To begin with The Changing of the Sacred Thread. Any one who walks by the side of a great river on the
morning of this day will be struck by the number of Brāhmans worshipping there. To many of them this full-moon day marks the beginning of their sacred year; so they are eager to purify themselves from the ritual sins of the past year.

First they cleanse their bodies by rubbing clay on forehead, throat, forearms, wrists, chest, heart, and thighs, and afterwards they sprinkle water (Mārjana) over themselves with darbhagrass. Then they immerse themselves three, five, or ten times in the river, whilst the priest enumerates a long catalogue of sins of body, mind, touch, and specially speech, from which the penitent desires to be purified. The writer's friends have told her that the sins from which they themselves specially hope to gain purification on this day are making mistakes in repeating the sacred mantras, uttering them in the presence of Śūdras, in the streets, or before women. This done, they bathe again, and now, their bodies being cleansed from ritual defilement, their minds are purified by listening to mantras.

After donning a silk cloth, they go through their regular morning worship, paying special attention to Tarpana.²

On its completion they worship Viṣṇu under the form of a Śālagrāma, request all the deities to be pleased with the ceremony they are about to perform, and worship the seven great sages.

The priest then orders the worshipper himself to break the old thread, whilst repeating the sacred Gāyatrī Mantra. This done, the worshipper hands the discarded thread to the priest, who flings it into the river, and ties a silken or gold thread on the worshipper’s right wrist, blessing him for every day of the ensuing year.

Going home, the Brāhman eats specially dainty food, and begins the reading of some new sacred book. If possible, he should complete the reading of this sacred book before next Śrāvanī comes round.

¹ To the Western observer it is deeply interesting to watch this yearly self-baptismal rite by both immersion and aspersion.
² See pp. 229 ff.
Of course, it is not always possible for every Brāhman to go to the river bank on this day, though strict ones will make every endeavour to do so. Others just change their own sacred threads themselves in the presence of a priest at the close of their morning worship.

But this same full-moon day is also Baleva, the day sacred to King Bali, about whom the following legend is told.\(^1\)

When Bali was king of the historic town of Vāmanasthali (the modern Vanthalī, near Junāgadh in Kāthiāwar), he performed a great sacrifice, to which the god Viṣṇu came in the form of a dwarf. The god asked and was granted all the land that he should stride over in three steps. First he strode over heaven and hell, next over the upper worlds, and then, behold, there was no place left for his third stride. Seeing this, King Bali meekly offered his head, and Viṣṇu, treading on it, thrust him down to Pātāla. The touch of Viṣṇu had, however, purified the king, and so he obtained the boon he asked, namely, that the god Viṣṇu should stay with him constantly. But the other gods found heaven itself empty without Viṣṇu, and his wife Lakṣmī felt herself no better than a widow, so she went down to Pātāla herself to plead with Bali. In order that she might speak without shame to the king, she tied a silken thread to his wrist, and thus, making him her brother, proffered and gained her request that Viṣṇu should only stay four months in Pātāla, and that Śiva and Brahmā should each take four months of his time.

It was, they say, on the full-moon day of Śrāvaṇa that Lakṣmī tied the silken thread to the wrist of Bali, and so on this day many Brāhmans\(^2\) go to their patrons and tie silken or golden threads to their wrists.

In many coast towns the sea is worshipped on this same date, known in many places as Coco-nut Day. From the beginning of the monsoon till now the sea has been so rough and fierce that no boat has dared to put out to sea, but now, to

---

\(^1\) There are many variants of this, as of all the other legends.

\(^2\) Nāgara will never do this.
make future sea-going safe, the people of the town go in procession to the shore, and there make offerings to the ocean. It is worth noticing these offerings carefully, for some have seen in them a reference to the long-ago days when, perhaps, a virgin was offered to win safety for sailors. First, they throw in a coco-nut, then a piece of red silk representing the sārī of ceremony which girls wear on their wedding day, and lastly a crown of dried plantain-leaves that is only worn by a bride, and by a bride’s mother as she gives her child away. Not until these gifts are made will the ships that have been lying idle in the harbour since the beginning of the monsoon put out to sea.

Since we are studying sea-worship, perhaps we may digress here for a moment and, leaving the calendar, turn aside to see what is done in Kāṭhiāwār, for instance, to assuage a river in flood. If a village seems in imminent danger of being swept away by the rising of the river or the breaking of a reservoir-dam, the ruling chief, or the headman of the village, goes to some high place overlooking the stream or reservoir, and there first drops into it a coco-nut, and then, cutting his own little finger, lets the blood drip into the water, whilst he also throws in a special piece of cloth (about two yards in length, red in colour, and such as is only worn by an unmarried girl as a sārī, or by her mother when she is going to give the bride away) and the crown of plantain-leaves which the mother also wears on that occasion. Every one declares that, the moment these things are thrown into the river, the flood abates. One fine old officiant at a Hanumān temple told the writer how he saw these symbols of a young girl thrown into the flood by an old chief, when his own temple, built out over the river, was in the greatest danger of being swept away. The peril was averted, but the priest hinted that in the long long-ago days it was a virgin daughter of the chief’s that would have been sacrificed, not merely her symbols.

Similarly, if there is terrible fire raging in a village, after all other means have been tried to save the remaining houses
from destruction, some people (though others laugh them to scorn) believe the best thing to do is to throw these same things, a coco-nut, the special piece of cloth, and the crown of plantain-leaves, into the flames. They are, they say, making an offering to the consort of Śiva of these symbols of virginhood.

But all the writer's informants agree that these special offerings to a river in time of flood differ entirely from the things thrown into the river at the close of almost every rite and ceremony. That final throwing into a river, they say, is simply to put things that have been used for sacred purposes out of the way of possible defilement, such as being eaten by dogs or crows.

We have already described 1 how women who have no sons fast in silence, during the third day of the dark half of the month of Śrāvaṇa.

On the fourth day of the dark half of Śrāvaṇa (Guj. Bola-cotha) all Twice-born women worship the cow. A tragic legend is told to account for this worship. Once upon a time a cow which had a calf called Ghaunilo was the occasion of a misunderstanding between a mother-in-law and her daughter-in-law. One day, when the mother-in-law was leaving the house, she said to her daughter-in-law: 'Cook ghaunilo for my dinner', thereby intending only to order a dish of pounded wheat and treacle which bears that name. Unfortunately the daughter misunderstood the drift of her command, and so killed, cut up, and cooked the calf Ghaunilo. There was a terrible to-do when the elder lady returned and found what had happened, and with many tears the broken-hearted young daughter-in-law buried the accursed dish. In the evening, when the mother cow came back from the fields, she lowed and bewailed her calf, and then, to the amazement of all beholders, she went to the spot where the unlucky dish of minced veal had been buried and dug up her living, lowing calf.

1 See p. 110.
To commemorate the wonderful way in which a daughter-in-law was thus saved from the sin of cow-murder, and to show their detestation of that sin, women fast till evening from all products of the cow and from anything cut with a knife (the veal, it will be remembered, had been minced), and also from wheat and treacle, the unfortunate dish which had led to the mistake. In the evening, when the women break their fast, they may eat buffalo butter or buffalo milk, but even then nothing that is connected with a cow. During the day the women go in companies to worship the cow.

On one occasion when the writer was present, a cow and its calf (both of the same colour) were tied to a nim-tree in the courtyard of the leading temple of the town. A well-known Brähman, a personal friend of the writer’s, was presiding over the ceremonies. At the commencement all the women sat with their faces to the east, and the Brähman, after offering prayers to Gañëśa, said: ‘I, so-and-so, the son of so-and-so, on this day perform the worship of Pārvati, the wife of Śiva.’ He next bathed the right hoof of the cow in water and made a red auspicious mark on the head of the cow. Then, having placed a red-coloured thread of twisted cotton-wool on the head of the calf to represent the auspicious sāri of a young girl, he proceeded to perform the ordinary worship, such as he would offer to the god Śiva in a temple, i.e. marking, offering flowers, red and white powder, incense, lamp, and waving of lights; but instead of the ordinary offering of food, he gave the cow moistened millet, moistened wheat, and lañḍu to eat.

Each of the women present then did her part by walking round the cow four times, holding in her hand the things she needed for worship and pouring water round the cow as she walked; each of the four times, as the woman passed the cow’s tail, she would pour water on it and then lift the wet tail to her eyes and to her head.

1 In native States in India men can still be imprisoned for this crime of cow-killing.
Each woman also marked the cow’s forehead and its right hoof with the auspicious mark; finally, kissing the cow, she whispered in its right ear: ‘Truth belongs to you, it is our duty to keep our vows’. The women then paid the Brāhman in pice, areca-nuts, and grain, and went home, singing: ‘We have been to (such-and-such a place) to worship the cow, and now return after worshipping it’.

The writer watched a constant stream of women performing this auspicious circumambulation of the cow till sundown.

Our study of the calendar has now brought us to one of the most anxious periods of the year, for, if by the end of the bright half of the month of Śrāvāṇa no rain has fallen, there is every reason to fear a failure of the monsoon and consequent famine. At such a critical time the Brāhmanas sometimes resort to the expedient of Flooding Śiva, or rather the inner shrine of the temple where the liṅga is kept. Different reasons for doing this are given: some people say it is done to make the god realize how serious things are; others, that they do it to propitiate the Destroyer (Śiva) by giving him so much water¹ as to make him good-tempered enough to spare man and beast; the more modern see in it a sympathetic rain-charm. A Brāhman friend of the writer’s saw the liṅga flooded in Rājkot in 1911. Several Brāhmans fasted all day, and all day long brought pots of water and poured them over the liṅga, which in every Śiva temple is kept in an inner shrine with a very high threshold. The liṅga stands in a yoni, which drains off into an aperture called the ‘cow’s-mouth’. On this day the cow’s-mouth was blocked up, and so the water gradually deepened in the inner shrine, till the liṅga was covered, and the Brāhmans found themselves standing knee-deep in water.

In the evening the plug was taken out of the ‘cow’s-mouth’, the water allowed to drain off, and the ordinary evening worship performed

¹ The sun is placated by salutations, Viṣṇu by kind acts done to others, Brahmā by laḍḍus, Śiva by water.
On the same day the town was deserted by order of the chief, who proclaimed an Ujâni (Guj.) : no one cooked in his own home, but every one had a picnic outside.

The writer has known an Ujâni to be proclaimed several years when the monsoon has been late in breaking.

The monsoon season is not only a very anxious time owing to fear of famine, it is also marked by the presence of a great number of snakes, for in India ‘it is the wet season that brings forth the adder and that craves wary walking’.

It is not surprising, therefore, to find that a special day, the fifth of the dark half of Śrāvana, called the Snake’s Fifth-Day (Nāga-pañēcamī), is set apart for worshipping and placating snakes. On this day the women of the house either draw a picture of a snake on paper, or fashion a model of one out of cow-dung. They then worship the picture or the model by sprinkling it with red turmeric and sandal-wood paste and placing flowers on it.

On the previous day they have filled a wide earthen or brass pot with water and dropped into it millet, gram, and pulse. This wide pot they now place in front of the pictured snake, and beside it they put a vessel of milk. The women observe a partial fast all day, only eating the three kinds of grain that have been offered to the snake in the wide water-pot, and sugar and clarified butter; but of this permitted food nothing must have been cooked over a fire on that actual day. If the snake has been worshipped under the form of a picture, that is kept on the wall till next Śrāddha day; if it has been modelled in cow-dung, the model is thrown into the river the next day.

If all is properly performed, it is believed that not only will no member of the family die of snake-bite for twelve months, but also that no snake will be seen in the house for a year.

If any ancestor of the family has died of snake-bite, a special Śrāddha for him is performed on this fifth day.

If, despite all these precautions, some one is bitten by a snake, he vows a coco-nut to some shrine. In almost every
village there is a snake shrine, and in many Śiva temples stones carved with upright snakes can be seen.

The most famous of all snake-temples in Kāthiāwār is in the State of Meṅgaṇî, and this, through the kindness of the ruler of the State, the writer was once able to visit. It was quite a small shrine in an ordinary house and rather resembled a cupboard; on its shelves were models of silver snakes and silver horses. Any one bitten by a snake goes to the shrine bearing coco-nut, clarified butter, and sugar, and vows to distribute these to the Brāhmans if he survives.

In the State of Junāgaḍh there is a famous well, to the head of which young married people go, to worship the snakes that inhabit it; but their object is, curiously enough, not to obtain immunity from snake-bite, but a happy wedded life.

Perhaps here we might digress for a moment to notice some extraordinary people called snake-bards (Nāga-bārota). They are wandering folk from Mālvā who possess books handed down to them from their ancestors, telling them where certain big snakes live. These bards never beg from any one, and if they draw water from a river or a well, they throw a pice into it for payment; but if they need money, they go to the specified places where the snakes live, and call on them by name. The snakes come out from their holes and bestow on their bards gold mohurs or some precious stone from the secret hoards which each snake guards. If a mortal wants to get rid of his sins, he can do so by listening to the reading of their genealogical tree. The same holds good for snakes, and any serpent desiring purification asks one of these bards to read the serpentine record of his ancestors.

We saw that, on the fifth day of the dark half of the month of Śrāvaṇa, in honour of snakes, no one ate cooked food; on the seventh day, too, in honour of the goddess Smallpox, no cooking will be done: so no wonder that the intervening sixth day is a special Cooking Day. It is a great day for the women (and the children too!). The women try and cook enough
sweets in clarified butter and in oil to last for the four following days: they fry pancakes in oil and make laḍḍus and rich sweetmeats, if they are wealthy enough. Even the poorest try on this day to make some sorts of inexpensive sweets. But besides the sweets, at about eight or nine at night the women prepare vegetables in a delicious way that will keep them fresh for breakfast next morning at ten or eleven. Of course, the children get delightful ‘tastes’ and bonnes bouches, for the cooking lasts from noon till nine at night, and the bairns (trust them!) are round about their mothers’ feet all the time.

At night, when the cooking is over, the women worship the hearth. The hearth in a Kāṭhiāwār house is like a large and very much raised horseshoe, and stands in the midst of a square of plastered floor. All this square and the hearth itself they wash, and then replaster with fresh cow-dung and earth. Inside the horseshoe itself they place a fresh green branch of cotton-tree stuck into a ball of clay, as proof positive to the goddess of Smallpox that, the hearth being now cold, she may come and sleep there, for how could a green plant flourish unless the hearth were really cold? Then they worship the hearth by making the auspicious Svastika mark on it with red turmeric and scatter millet grains over it.

Next, they turn to the threshold of the house and wash it, replaster it on either side for about a span, and then worship it by marking it, too, with an auspicious red mark, and drawing on it the Svastika cross.

And now at long last, with the cookery and the worship all completed, the tired ladies are allowed to go to bed and to sleep, otherwise there would be irritable mammas the next day!

A perfect whirl of religious dissipation follows, for the Srāvāṇa Fair is held on the seventh, eighth, ninth, and tenth days of the dark half of the month; and so on the sixth the shopkeepers go to the ground, erect their stalls, and arrange their goods; for the fair starts ea... the next morning.

1 This replastering is done every day.
The seventh day of the dark half of Śrāvana is, as we have already seen, like the bright seventh, sacred to the Smallpox Goddess, and the women with their children go and worship at her shrine on their way to the bigger fair. Sometimes the men of the house are lax enough, or greedy enough, to insist on having fresh food cooked for them; if they do, the women cook for them on a new and different hearth from that on which the Smallpox goddess is sleeping. Whatever they eat, all of them go to the fair.

The eighth day of the dark half of Śrāvana is observed as Kṛiṣṇa’s Birthday, and it and the seventh day are the two greatest of the four days of the fair.

About ten o’clock at night men, women, and children all go to a temple to listen to the recital of the story of the birth of Kṛiṣṇa. Followers of Śiva also in Kāṭhiāwār all observe this day, and the recital may even be held in a Śiva temple, if it contains a shrine dedicated to any one of the incarnations of Viṣṇu.

The recital ends exactly at midnight, when the birth of Kṛiṣṇa took place. At that hour the doors of the inner shrine are thrown open, and an image of the infant Kṛiṣṇa lying in a cradle is shown to the worshippers by a priest. The crowd hail the image with cries of ‘Victory! Victory!’ and some amongst them offer rice, and copper or silver coins. The image is then bathed in the five nectars (milk, curds, clarified butter, honey, and sugar), and this is afterwards distributed by the officiant, who pours a spoonful into the hand of each worshipper. Then a mixture of things connected by custom with child-birth (pounded dry ginger, sugar, small pieces of coco-nut, and grains of fennel) is offered to the image of the baby Kṛiṣṇa and afterwards distributed amongst the people, who eagerly partake of it.¹ The worshippers go

¹ The difference between the calendars of western and northern India makes this festival fall in the next month in upper India. In western India the month begins with the bright half, in northern India it begins with the dark.
² We shall frequently have cause to notice that this common meal between the god and the people, so usual in Viṣṇu temples, never forms part of the worship before Śiva’s shrine.
home about one o'clock and keep awake all night singing songs.

Next morning in the actual Viṣṇu temples the officiants hold up big pots of curds mixed with turmeric, and throw their contents in the air in such a way as to besprinkle the congregation, who like to receive it on their clothes. The officiants say that they do this to celebrate the removal of Kṛiṣṇa to a shepherd's house after his birth.

On the next day, the ninth of the dark half of Śrāvana, Twice-born folk break their fast, eat specially dainty dishes, and go to the fair. The Bhils keep this day for the Bathing of Kṛiṣṇa. On the previous day they have made a clay image of the infant Kṛiṣṇa and coloured it gaily; on the ninth day they go in procession with singing and drumming to the river bank to bathe the infant. Arrived there, they throw the image of the god right into the middle of the stream and leave the poor thing to sink, which seems rather an over-energetic method of washing an infant! It is indeed 'to throw away the baby with the bath', as Germans would remark.

On the tenth day the fair ends. The really devout amongst the Twice-born object strongly to the gambling that nowadays is connected with these fairs, which, they say, should find no place in gatherings of such religious importance.

Following the calendar, we come upon a total change of ideas, for these happy Fair days are followed on the thirteenth, fourteenth, and fifteenth of the dark of the moon by sombre days sacred to the dead. We have already studied the two other groups of these 'Days of the Dead' that fell in Kārttika and in Caitra; the observance of those, however, was voluntary, only women who had vowed to do so regarding them; but the special worship on these days is compulsory on all women, and, if there be no woman in a family, the men of the household must perform the worship. On the mornings of the

1 The writer has never seen this done in a Śiva temple, even if it had a shrine to Viṣṇu.
days one may watch women dressed in silk or wet cotton clothing coming up from the river, where they have bathed, to worship a pipal\textsuperscript{1} tree in the courtyard of a Śiva or Viṣṇu temple. With the charming friendliness so characteristic of the Indian lady, they often allowed the writer to accompany them as they watered the tree (preferably from a copper pot), and then offered barley and sesame seeds to it (never rice), together with a tulasī leaf. Regarding the tree as a god, they each walked round it four times, with their right hand towards it, watering it as they walked. Often, too, they wound a thread round it, to symbolize the offering of clothes to it.

A Brāhmaṇ\textsuperscript{2} sat by, and every woman gave him grain or pice, while he, in return, marked her forehead with the auspicious mark.

Some women on these days also water tulasī, bāvala, and jujube trees and grass, and also their cow-stalls. If they have no cows of their own, they go to the place where the cows are all collected before going to pasture and throw water on the ground there.

During the first two days the women feed Brāhmans, but feed themselves also as usual on two meals a day. On the last of the three days they only eat once in the day, and only then after they have fed at least three Brāhmans.

The fifteenth day of the dark half is the \textit{Last Day of the Holy Month} the day on which all vows taken for that month must be paid. Some people have perhaps engaged a Brāhmaṇ at anything from four annas to five rupees a day to worship for them every day in a Śiva temple, where the worship is more meritorious and more elaborate during this month. This they now pay, and in addition they send a present of a white loincloth, a coco-nut, and a pound and a quarter of rice to the

\textsuperscript{1} \textit{Ficus religiosa}.

\textsuperscript{2} Such a Brāhmaṇ could receive uncooked grain, milk, or pice from any woman of the Twice-born classes, but the Brāhmans who receive the offerings of the low-castes are utterly despised by other Brāhmans.
particular temple of Śiva where the worship was performed.
All these presents (including even the loin-cloth, as well as
the food) the officiant of the temple hands over to the special
class of ascetics (Atīta), who alone can make use of them.
Rich people sometimes ask their relatives and friends to dine
with them on this day, to celebrate the close of the month and
the fulfilment of their vows.

Eleventh Month: Bhādrapada (Aug.–Sept.).

The tenth month (Śrāvana) is accounted the most sacred
month of the year, but the eleventh, Bhādrapada, is known to
be the most solemn and dangerous. So often in western
India do people fall ill and die during this unhealthy season,
that it is known in the vernacular as 'the jaws of the god of
death', and also as 'the mother of physicians'.

The whole month is inauspicious for contracting engagements or marriages,
for moving to a new house, starting out on a journey, or
sending a child to school, but the dark half of the month is
the worst time of all, and far the most terrifying, and it is then
that Śrāddha for the dead are performed.

The Sundays, Tuesdays, and Thursdays of the bright half
of this month are days of Goddess-worship, when the goddess
Rāṇā Devī is summoned and worshipped. This goddess is so
powerful that she can cure a blind man of his blindness, or
a leper of his leprosy, so it is all important to gain her favour
and persuade her to guard the children of the house from
harm and disease.

We have already seen how the goddess is represented by
tying paper faces on several coco-nuts, each perched on a brass
vessel.

Then seven lucky married ladies are fed, and a sorceress
(Guj. bhui) is asked if the goddess is placated; if not, the

1 It is often quite difficult for people at home to realize that it is the
autumn, not the hot weather, that is the most unhealthy season in western
India.
2 Cf. the proverb: 'If you are a well-bred man, don't leave your house
in the monsoon'.
seven ladies are fed again. As soon as the sorceress shakes, she is believed to be possessed by the goddess, and she then proceeds to divination by grain in the way already described.1

The bright half of this month is the best time of year to gain relief from dead ancestors who are worrying their living descendants, by either performing the Cow and Bull marriage, or by reading the Bhāgavata Purāṇa.2

The ordinary Brāhmans of Gujarāt and Kāthiāwār do not pay very great attention to the worship of Gaṇēśa on the fourth day of the bright half of Bhādrapada (Gaṇēśa-caturthī), contenting themselves with eating laḍḍu and worshipping the god either at home or in the temples; but foreign Brāhmans often spend enormous sums on his worship at this time.

For instance, Brāhmans from the Deccan living in the writer's town have a clay image of Gaṇēśa made and installed in a separate room set apart for the use of the god, where, for nine, or sometimes fifteen, days, they worship it with great pomp, as though it were a king, offering it Royal Worship (Rāja-pūjā).

Women, if they stand behind their husbands, are allowed to be present at this Royal Worship, when the men hold an umbrella over the idol and a mirror in front, wave two whiskers before it, and place either the pictures or the clay images of two attendants beside him. As the image of Gaṇēśa, though highly decorated, is only made of clay, it cannot be bathed in water, nor in the five nectars, for fear of injury; but it is worshipped by marking and by offering of laḍḍu, lamp, incense, and rice. Twenty-one blades of darbha-grass, corresponding to his twenty-one names, are placed on the god's head, and his devotees circumambulate him and wave the auspicious five-branched lamp in front of him, with much ringing of bells and beating of drums. Finally, the abundant food (laḍḍu and many other sweets) offered to the god is distributed amongst the worshippers.

If a man is very rich, he might spend a thousand rupees on

1 See p. 121. 2 See pp. 124, 128.
the worship of Ganesa during this month, inviting all his friends every day, and making very expensive offerings of food to the god, which is afterwards given to them, and spending lavishly, too, on all materials for the Royal Worship and on the decorations of the room. On the last day of the worship, whether the tenth or the sixteenth, all the worshippers go in procession with music and bands to the river, and there throw in the clay image. The householder at whose expense the Royal Worship has been performed feels recompensed, however, for all the money he has disbursed, believing as he does, that in return the god will remove every obstacle from his path during the coming year.

It is extremely unlucky to catch even a glimpse of the moon on the fourth of this month, and people will take meticulous care to avoid looking at it, for they believe that some false charge is sure to be brought against any one who does so. If, despite all their precautions, they do accidentally see the moon, they instantly go and throw stones on their neighbour's houses, so as to induce the inhabitants to come out and abuse them. As Indian abuse always contains false charges, they feel that they have experienced the worst at once and got it over.

Children, to be on the safe side, go and throw stones on their neighbour's houses, whether they have seen the moon or not, for it is too good a chance of stone-throwing to be wasted! But wise housewives, however ready to scold 'those tiresome boys' at other times, know what the little rascals are after now, and will not scold them, since it is the fourth day, and if they did, the boys' sins might all accrue to them! So the prudent thing to do is to have supper betimes on this evening and, having gone to bed before sunset, to stay there undisturbedly, whatever small boys may do.

Even in the bright of the moon the dead are not forgotten during this solemn funeral month, and a most interesting fast for their benefit is observed on Rishi-pancam, the fifth day of the bright half of Bhadrapada. Men and women fast from all grains and from all vegetables, save those that (like marrows)
can be grown without ploughing the ground. The merit acquired by thus fasting accrues, not to the living who actually observe the fast, but to that member of the family who has died most recently. The fast is a strict one, for it is maintained all night, whereas most fasts may be broken at sundown. In order that it may be quite clear to whose account the merit is to be entered, before breakfasting the next morning the fasters pour water on some knotted blades of darbha-grass, which have been arranged to represent the dead members of the family, and say: ‘O (so-and-so), I give you water. May you, O (cousin, or father, or aunt, as the case may be), gain the merit of my fast.’

The dead are again commemorated on the eighth day of the bright of Bhādrapada (Dūrvāṣṭami), when every member of the family observes a partial fast in their memory, taking only one meal during the day. On this day special gifts are made to Brāhmans for the use of the dead. For instance, if the last member of the family to die has been a man, they give a loin-cloth, a bronze bowl, a laḍḍu, a top, a wooden wheel (such as children play with), and a mirror.

But if a woman has died more recently, they give instead a bodice (deep red or black for a widow, and green for a wife), a comb, a hair-tie, and also, in the case of a woman happy enough to die during her husband’s life-time, the toilet articles used by one who still cares to enhance her charms, such as pigment to blacken her eyelashes, a pot of red turmeric to make the auspicious marks, and a mirror. In any case, the things are all arranged in a wicker basket and presented to the family priest, or any other Brāhman.

A fast (Vāmanā-dvādaśi) in honour of the Dwarf Incarnation of Viṣṇu is observed on the twelfth day of Bhādrapada, but it is not a very severe fast, as the observers of it are permitted fruit and sweets made from milk. As a rule, a Brāhman who is a follower of Śiva performs his worship in a Śiva, not a Viṣṇu, temple, but he makes an exception for each of the
festival days that celebrate one of the great incarnations of Viṣṇu, such as his birth as Rāma, or Kṛṣṇa, or this Dwarf Incarnation. The dwarf incarnation is celebrated, not at midnight, as it was in the case of Kṛṣṇa, but at the time of the god’s waking from his afternoon sleep, and so all devout Brāhmans try and go at that time, either to a Viṣṇu temple, or to the Viṣṇu shrine in their own temple, and worship the god who is shown to them.

Women—not men—observe a terribly severe fast called Gotrāta, abstaining from everything save water for three days, the thirteenth, fourteenth, and fifteenth days of the bright half of Bhādrapada. Every woman who possesses a cow and a calf takes them in procession through the streets with much rejoicing and playing of cymbals, either to the river bank, or to the rendezvous of the cows. There they worship them by circumambulation, just as we saw done at Bojačotha,¹ and then bring them home and keep them in the house for three days.

The following legend is told to account for this cow-worship. Once upon a time a king of the solar race, named Dilipa, was very sad, because he had no son. At last he went to his family priest and asked him why, though he led a virtuous life, he was childless; he told him, too, that often, when he offered water to his dead ancestors, he heard them receive it with a sob, so great was their longing for descendants. Now the priest had had the reason revealed to him in a trance, and it was this: Once, when Dilipa was returning home, after calling on the god Indra, he had most unfortunately passed by the celestial cow Kāmadhenu, without perceiving or bowing to her. No lady likes being cut, least of all a celestial cow, and so, to pay him out, she cursed him, vowing that he should never have a child. If he wanted children, said the priest, the only thing to do was to placate this heavenly animal. Of course Dilipa, being on earth, could not get into touch with the cow herself, but discovering that her calf was living on the earth in the house of a sage, Dilipa and his wife promptly paid their

¹ See p. 311.
court to her. They worshipped her for twenty-one days, but on the twenty-second the calf most ungraciously tried to run away to the Himalayans. As it happened, this sudden move to the hills only gave them a further chance of showing kindness to her, for on its journey the calf was seized by a tiger, whereupon Dilipa most handsomely offered his life as a ransom in her stead. The tiger, bowing, let the calf go for nothing; and, of course, the calf could do no less than offer to grant any boon Dilipa wished, whereupon he promptly asked and obtained a son. Ever since, women, especially childless ones, have worshipped the cow and calf on these days.

The fast lasts three days in any case, but a little carelessness may turn it into a four-day fast, for at the end of three days' fasting (i.e. on the morning of the fourth day), the general cowherd of the village is given laddus and asked to lead the cow and calf to the rendezvous of the cows. If by any mischance the cow or its calf escapes from the cowherd's care and slips back home again, it is considered so unlucky that the poor women who own it have to fast a fourth day and perform all their worship over again. The writer is credibly informed that this very rarely happens, so elaborate are the precautions taken against it. The moment the cow and calf are safely off, the women settle down with eager enjoyment to a really delicious meal.

One is rather glad to know that the men do not get off entirely scot-free from all fasting at this time, and one of the women's three fast-days is also a fast-day for men. (As the women are already pledged to a three days' fast to the cow, they cannot, of course, observe this, but just go on with their own.)

The object of this fast on the fourteenth of the bright half of Bhādrapada (Ananta-caturdāśi) is also to obtain a son, for it is natural that in this month sacred to funeral obsequies the mind of both men and women should be full of desire for a son, who alone can rightly perform them. A man fasts all day and vows that, in order to gain a son, he will tie
a red thread to his right forearm every fourteenth of Bhādra-
pada for (a specified number, perhaps) ten years to come. Even if no son be born to him at the end of the ten years, he must feed ten Brāhmans to mark the completion of the vow.

Following the Hindu year, we are brought now to a very solemn time, for the dark fortnight of the month of Bhādra-
pada is given up by the Twice-born to the remembrance of their dead. Whatever day in whatever fortnight (bright or dark) of whatever month the near relatives of the family may have died, their death is commemorated on the same date in this Dark Fortnight of the Dead. Supposing the father of the family died on the third of the bright half of Kārttiika, his memorial Śrāddha (Mahālaya Śrāddha) is performed on the third of this dark fortnight, though the yearly (Śāṅcavatsari) Śrāddha is performed on the anniversary of the actual date on which the man died; and if a son died on the seventh of the bright half of Āṣāra, his annual Śrāddha is performed on that date, but this (Mahālaya) Śrāddha on the seventh of the dark fortnight of Bhādrapada. If, however, a man die on full-moon day, his Mahālaya Śrāddha is performed on the day that his father’s Śrāddha is performed. Until the annual Śrāddha has been performed, this memorial Śrāddha in Bhādrapada (the Mahālaya Śrāddha) cannot be offered, so it is never performed within a year of the person’s death.

Again, if the ceremonial defilement (sūtaka) that automatically accrues on a birth or death in a family still continues, this Śrāddha cannot be performed. If a wedding is about to be, or has recently been, celebrated, it cannot be offered, for a wedding is so auspicious that no man may transfer his sacred cord from the auspicious right to the inauspicious left shoulder (as is done when performing Śrāddha) for two months before, or six months after, a marriage.

The object of all the Śrāddhas which are offered during this dark fortnight is, of course, to provide the dead with sustenance, for they profit by food eaten by a Brāhman, and the proper
food to offer Brāhmans at this time is wheat, rice, milk, oil, or black pulse.\footnote{1}

Certain days in this dark fortnight are, as it were, appropriated. For instance, no matter on what actual date a ‘fortunate’ woman died, her Mahālaya Śrāddha is performed on the ninth of the fortnight, and in actual practice this Śrāddha for all women, whether lucky or widowed, is performed on this day.\footnote{2} Not only so, but though gifts to Brāhmans in regard to each are made separately, their Śrāddha is performed together.\footnote{3}

On the twelfth day a memorial Śrāddha is performed for all dead ascetics who were members of the family. No Śrāddha was done for these when they died, nor is the annual Śrāddha performed for them on the date of their death, for they were literally dead to the world when they became ascetics and performed their own Śrāddha; but this one Śrāddha is performed in their memory every autumn.

All infants dying under eighteen months, all children dying before they were eight years old, all boys who from any cause died without receiving the sacred thread, and girls who died unmarried are remembered on the thirteenth day.

No ordinary Śrāddha was performed for these when they died, neither are they remembered on the anniversary of their death day by Sāṁvatsari Śrāddha, and even now no regular Śrāddha with ritual offerings of rice-balls is performed; but in memory of all these children who have died untimely deaths Brāhmans, and especially Brāhman children, are fed, and presents are made to Brāhmans.

\footnote{1} If the yearly Śrāddha (Sāṁvatsari) fell in the winter, the seasonable food to offer Brāhmans now is clarified butter and laḍḍu (pressed, never rolled, between the hands); in the summer mangoes can be given, together with curds mixed with saffron and sugar; but the Brāhmans have most wisely laid down the law that never at the yearly or the Mahālaya Śrāddha can any inferior grains, such as millet, be given to them.

\footnote{2} Their Sāṁvatsari Śrāddha is performed on the anniversary of the actual day on which they died.

\footnote{3} On the other hand, if several men’s Śrāddha fall to be done on the same day, they are never performed together, but each Śrāddha is offered separately.
On the fourteenth day a Śrāddha is performed for all who died violent deaths, honourable or dishonourable. On this day all relatives who died in battle, were drowned, bitten by snakes, hanged as criminals, were murdered, or committed suicide, are remembered.

If there is no certainty when a man died, he is commemorated on the Śrāddha day of his father. If by accident some person’s Śrāddha has been omitted, it is performed on the last day of the dark fortnight. As a rule, the Śrāddha of all male relatives on the mother’s side is performed in the maternal family, but an exception is made for the maternal grandfather, whose Śrāddha takes place on the first day of the following month of Āśvina.

Each Śrāddha day the actual ritual is much the same. The house has been specially purified and swept overnight, and the hearth replastered, all the water standing in the water-pots thrown away, and the pots refilled. On each actual Śrāddha day the women get up specially early, bathe, and make the auspicious mark on their foreheads, being careful, however, not to wash their hair. They wear silk or newly washed sāris, and are more than ever careful to preserve the food from all defilement, ritual or actual. Until the Śrāddha ceremony, however, is over, no one, not even a child, may eat of the food thus meticulously prepared.

A family priest directs the ceremony, which begins about midday and lasts till two o’clock. But the actual rite is performed by the senior member of the family, clad in silk or newly washed loin-cloth. First, he worships Viṣṇu under the form of the Śālagrāma. Then he offers rice-balls (which have been pressed, not rolled, into the form of an egg) for his father, grandfather and great-grandfather, and, if he wishes, he can also offer one for a sister or a guru to whom he was specially attached. Each ball is placed on darbha-grass and covered with a loin-cloth, if the ball is offered for a man, and silk bodice, if offered for a woman. Then the ritual we have
already studied in the case of an ordinary Śrāddha is gone through, the balls at the close being thrown into a river or given to a cow. The bodice or loin-cloth, together with the copper coin and areca-nut used during the Śrāddha, are given to the Brāhman directing the service.

When all is over, a rich feast is given at two in the afternoon to all the relatives present, special honour being paid to the daughters and sisters of the performer, who are invited, together with their husbands and children. The performer himself, on this or on any other Śrāddha day, dines at two with his relatives, but does not breakfast or even drink tea before the Śrāddha, neither can he take any supper that night. It is interesting to notice that, as a rule, the performer of the Śrāddha is the senior member of the family acting alone. If, however, she specially desire it, his wife may associate herself with him, when, as this is not an auspicious occasion, she will sit at his left hand.

Twelfth Month: Āśvina (Sept.–Oct.).

The twelfth month of the Hindu year is an auspicious season, though, as Viṣṇu is still in Pātāla, no wedding can be celebrated.

The first Nine Days of the month are sacred to the goddesses Mahālakṣmī, Mahākāli, Mahāsaravatī.

Different families have different traditions as to how these days should be observed. Some people observe all nine days as a partial fast, only taking one meal of fruit and milk-sweets in the evening. During all the time they observe celibacy,

1 See pp. 182 ff.
2 These balls are so sacred that they cannot be touched by any except a Brāhman, or some one belonging to the family gotra.
3 On two auspicious occasions, however, the wife sits to the left of her husband: the coronation of a king, and when, as a bride, she sits in a cart going to her husband’s village.
4 In Bengal these are called the Durgā Pūjā Holidays.
5 Lakṣmī is the wife of Viṣṇu, Kāli the wife of Śiva, Sarasvatī the daughter of Brahmā; but the writer’s pāṇḍits, when they called them Mahā Lakṣmī, Mahā Kāli, Mahā Sarasvatī, appeared to regard them as independent female deities.
and neither shave, wash their hair, wash their clothes, nor give them out to washermen. (It is quite a comfort, however, to learn that they are allowed, even the strictest, to wash themselves!) Others only fast for two or three days. In some houses a lamp of clarified butter is kept burning night and day for all the nine days, in others oil lamps are lit on either side of the dish in which (as we shall see) wheat grains are sown.

The object of propitiating the goddesses is variously given as: to be free from worries and illness, to obtain good seasons, to have one's ambitions fulfilled, or, very often, to obtain children.

The goddesses are invited and installed by the family priest with even more care than usual.

A coloured earthenware jug is placed on a little heap of dust previously sown with wheat grains. The jug is filled with water, and in it are placed a rupee, some rice, some turmeric, an areca-nut, and the leaves of five trees (viz. a mango leaf, a pipal¹ leaf, a pipalo¹ leaf, a jambu² leaf, and the leaf of an Udumbera.¹ On the top of the jug is put a plate filled with rice, and on that another priest arranges a coco-nut covered with the little sari of ceremony and surmounted by a triangular crown of dry plantain leaves.

Whilst the assistant is arranging the coco-nut, the chief priest summons the goddesses by performing the appropriate gestures (Mudrā). First, he places his hands in the attitude of prayer, allowing only the thumbs and fingers to touch each other, and prays to the jug.

Next he asks the goddesses to come, arranging his joined hands to look like an open bowl, with the little fingers touching each other all along their length and the tips of the other fingers touching. Afterwards, with flat hand stretched out, he, as it were, pats the goddesses into their places, asking them to remain there.

Whilst the assistant is veiling the coco-nut, the priest puts

¹ Various kinds of Ficus. ² Rose-apple.
his hands palms downwards with the thumbs inside and the first fingers touching.

Then he unites all three goddesses into one by crossing and then bending the first finger of each hand. Just at or before this uniting, a gold image, or three gold images, of the goddesses are placed on the veiled and crowned coco-nut.

Lastly, he stands with his hands in the ordinary attitude of prayer, and then proceeds to offer the goddesses now installed in the coco-nut the full sixteenfold worship.

The Mudrās installing the goddesses are only performed once, but the sixteenfold worship is offered daily, both morning and evening, during the nine days, and only after the evening worship is completed will those eat who are observing the nine days' fast.

People who cannot afford to install the goddesses in their own homes go and worship them in the houses of their friends and receive the auspicious marks and sweetmeats.

In the evening unmarried girls, carrying pierced earthen pots with lights burning in them, go round and sing in their neighbours' houses, and in return beg oil for their lamps and pice. Sometimes booths are erected at this time at the corners of all the main streets of the town. The booths are decorated with flowers and pictures, and inside in wooden shrines lamps burn to represent the goddesses. Different parties of men¹ go round the town visiting the booths and singing before them from nine at night till two in the morning.

On the ninth day of the festival the Homa sacrifice is performed in the principal temples of the town and in those houses where the goddesses have been installed. At the completion of the Homa the divinity in the coco-nut disappears, so that, though they do sometimes scatter rice grains on it to give her permission to go, it is not actually necessary to do so.

The coco-nuts are given to the priests, and the jugs taken into household use without further ceremony.

¹ In some parts of India groups of women go round also and sing at the different booths.
Then the food offering (Naivedya) is prepared for the goddess, consisting of a special dish made of rice, milk, and sugar, and of another dish of nine kinds of vegetables cooked together; these are offered to her in the family room, and afterwards eaten by the family. The ceremony closes, as almost every ceremony does, by the giving of alms to Brāhmans.

Once the Homa sacrifice has been performed, people may give their clothes to washermen and may shave or wash their hair once more, for the ceremony is then ritually completed.

Most of the holy days that we have been studying are observed by all the Twice-born, but now we come to the great festival, not so much of the priestly as of the military caste (Kṣatriya), Vijaya Daśāmi, or Daseṛa, the Warriors' Day. It was the great good fortune of the writer to have the whole description of this Festival of the Warriors revised, amplified, and corrected by one of the oldest of the Ruling Chiefs in Kāṭhiāwar, the late Ṭhākor Sāheb Surāji of Virpur, a typical old-world Rājput prince.

The day, he said, commemorated two main ideas: it was the day of victory; it was also the day of preparation. On this day Rāma, the hero of the Rāmāyana, set out on his victorious expedition to Ceylon, and on this day, too, the heroic Pāṇḍava, after being disarmed for thirteen years, resumed their weapons.

In the morning Ruling Chiefs go to their armouries to inspect and worship each and every weapon (except the Chief's spear) that is kept there—cannon, guns, pistols, swords, and knives—by sprinkling them with the auspicious red powder; in the same way they worship all the insignia of the king, including the state umbrella, and especially the royal sceptre. They then proceed to worship and inspect all the elephants, horses, chariots, and carriages in the state stables and see that everything is furbished up and ready for use to the last button, in case war should break out.

In the afternoon the Chief goes in procession with all the
great officers and leading men of the State to worship the
goddess of victory, probably in a Khadira tree. (There is
some doubt, however, as to whether the Pāṇḍava found their
weapons under a Śamī or under a Khadira tree, for the two
trees much resemble each other; so others say that the
worship should be done under a Śamī tree.) The Chief’s spear
is placed under the tree chosen, and worship is offered to it
and to the tree in the regular fivefold, or, if time permits, the
sixteenfold, way. Then the Chief takes the spear in his hands
and thrusts with it north, south, east, and west, in order that
he may gain victory in every direction.

This done, the Chief’s guru takes the spear and with it digs
up some earth from all four quarters. He rolls some of this
into a ball, which he presents to the Chief, wishing him posses-
sions everywhere, and forms the rest into other balls, to give
to as many of the ruler’s family as are present. In the balls
he puts some tender sprouts of wheat, an areca-nut, and either
a Śamī or a Khadira leaf. The guru also tells the Chief that
the ball of earth will guard him from evil all through the year,
so it is put in the treasury and kept with great care for the
ensuing twelve months.

In many Muḥammadan States, where the Chief cannot him-
self be present or worship, he deputes some leading Hindu
officer to go through the rite for him, that the State may
not lose any of the undoubted benefits this ceremony
ensures.

Directly the ritual is completed, the Chief summons four
of the leading grain merchants of the State and asks them
what the price of grain is likely to be during the next twelve
months. They give a rough estimate, but, in order not to be
held to it too closely, say: ‘It is in God’s hands’; in return
they are presented with turbans.

Then cannon are fired, and the Chief returns home in state,
being careful not to enter his city till after dark. Finally,
he distributes sweets and special biscuits fried in clarified

1 A kind of acacia.  
2 Mimosa Suma.
butter and coated with sugar (Sātā) and sends dishes to his officers. Private persons and friends also send presents to each other.

In many parts of India the day’s ceremonies include the slaying of a male buffalo. All the horses in the whole State are also inspected on this day to see that they too are ready for war. In the old days all warfare was stopped during the monsoon, but after this festival preparations were begun, and the armies could go out to fight after Divāli.1

Some people consider this day to be also a special holiday for brides and betrothed people, when they should receive presents of sweets or jewellery or clothes from their ‘in-laws’. ‘Divāli’, runs one proverb, ‘is all men’s day, but Daserā is the bride’s day.’ Others, however, insist that Daserā is entirely a warrior’s day, and that the bride’s turn comes at the Nine Nights.

The most poetic of all the festivals is celebrated at the full of the moon in the month Āśvina (Śaratpūrṇīnā). As our thoughts turn lovingly to the memory of sunny May-days in leafy English lanes, when happy children circled and sang round May-poles decked with flowers from English meadows, so Indians sing and speak of this pure festival of the cool white autumn moonlight. The terrible heat of the summer and the deadly season of autumn are past and gone, and the beautiful Indian winter is ‘icumen in’. The harvest, too, is safely garnered, and in the still moonlight everything speaks of peace and harmony.

So happy-hearted men and women dress themselves in white array and dine on open moonlit verandahs, taking, however, as befits so white a night, only white food-cakes made of the whitest flour, and dishes fashioned from milk, whilst young girls dressed in white circle and sing round lighted booths.

The Hindu scriptures are silent about this festival, but

1 Others say that the armies could go out directly after Daserā, without waiting for Divāli.
many folk think that, if they keep awake, the goddess Lakṣmī will come to their homes. It is believed, too, that oysters lie all this night with their mouths wide open, for they know that if one drop of rain or dew falls into their mouths, it turns into a pearl. In the still, white night nectar falls from the moon on the roofs of the houses, so people climb up and arrange lumps of sugar to receive it, for they feel sure that for a whole year death cannot touch one who has tasted of this nectar-drenched sugar. Others believe it confers actual immortality, and that, if only the dead could eat it, it would bring them back to life.

On this happy night the gods are not forgotten, and many of the images of Viṣṇu from temples or from private houses are dressed in white and brought out into the full moonlight and there offered white food.

The great Feast of Lamps (Dīpāvali, Dipāli, or Divāli) occupies the last three days of the Indian year (the thirteenth, fourteenth, and fifteenth of the dark half of the month of Āsvina) which are sacred to Lakṣmī, the goddess of wealth.

The first of these three days (the Day of Wealth-worship, Guj. Dhana-terasa) is extremely auspicious. Indeed, so invariably auspicious is it, that no astrologer need be consulted about a child being put to school for the first time that day,¹ a move being undertaken, newly married brides being sent to their husband’s homes, or gold being given out to a goldsmith to fashion into jewellery.

As a rule, before this day there is bustle and stir, excursions and alarums, in every Twice-born home, for the houses have to be whitewashed throughout and decorated, the compound cleaned, and the square before the door replastered and marked with a Svastika in chalk and coloured powder, and all the metal vessels, polished till they shine like gold, have to be arranged in glittering rows round the rooms in the ladies’ part of the house; all the ornaments, gold and silver, have similarly

¹ The only practical difficulty being that there are always holidays at this time!
to be cleaned and, if necessary, sent to the goldsmith's for repair; and all the bills called in and paid. Every old-fashioned household has its own tailor, washerman, and goldsmith, whose dues are paid once a year now at Divāli; for not one single debt may be left outstanding. This is the time, too, when new vessels and new cloth are first taken into use. Old-fashioned people who do not trust in such newfangled things as banks take out their hoardings on this day, wash them in milk, and worship them. A fine old Chief in one part of India regularly worships a thousand gold mohurs on this day. He puts them all into a huge copper dish, pours water over them, and offers them the full sixteenfold worship, giving alms to Brāhmans at the close. All three days the children let off crackers, and help to illuminate their homes by putting lights on the gates. But on this first day the boys tie white strings and clips to the end of sticks to make buzzers (Guj. Bhambhūḍā).\(^1\)

These they whirl over their heads, so that their buzzing may frighten the cows. Any dust these animals kick up on this day is considered specially sacred, so the boys go and stand in the perfect dust-storm caused by the stampeding cows running away from the buzzers, and so acquire virtue without a trace of boredom!

The women, with their spring-cleaning finished, cook specially nice food and wear their best clothes. The houses, not only of the Twice-born, but of all the Hindus, and also of Jaina and Pārsīs, are illuminated, and there is universal rejoicing in the fact that debts are paid, the harvest garnered, and the rainy season over, so that every one seems happy, and the entire holiday is a festival of light-heartedness. Far different will be the following night!

The morning after the Day of Wealth-worship is still a time of gladness and rejoicing (Rūpa Čaturdāśī, The Day of Beauty). Men and women get up early, take extra pains over their toilet,

\(^1\) Compare the Bull-roarers so universal over the known world. Haddon, Study of Man, p. 277.
and wear their finest clothes. Every one is dressed before six, and they all have great fun calling on different friends, breakfasting with them and eating special dainties.

But the *Witches' Night* (*Kāla Rātri*) that follows is a parlous time, the most hag-haunted season of the whole year, for then all the evil ghosts of the wicked, or of those who have died violent deaths, and the terrifying spectres of women who have died in child-birth, come out and walk the streets. But, besides these black malignant spirits, ordinary ghosts, demons, ghouls, wraiths, and witches are also all abroad. All through the year rash fools who wished to meet ghosts could find them after nightfall, when they haunt cemeteries and burning-grounds, or in the particular trees where they dwell, but on this fourteenth night of the dark of the moon of Ṛṣvina they are not confined within their usual limits, but move freely wherever they please.

So all wise people bide at home if they possibly can, especially if, like women or children, they are also very timid.

Hanumān, the special guardian against ghosts, has, you may be sure, more than the usual number of worshippers this night, who pour oil and red lead over him and offer him coco-nuts. In return, his devotees take some of the oil that drips from his right foot, burn it with soot, and mark their eyes with it, for this not only ensures their being under the special protection of the god for the year, but also improves their sight for the same period.

Other people quiet the ghosts by making circles where four roads meet and put cakes of grain and pulse fried together in oil within the circle, and Indians of other than the Twice-born castes would worship certain Mother-goddesses within these circles.

Venturesome men who know the right mantras for laying ghosts sometimes try and get control over spirits on this

---

night and go alone to the burning-grounds. There they make a circle, either with cold iron or with water, and sit carefully within its bounds, keeping some pulse of a special kind ¹ near them.

All sorts of ghosts, ghouls, demons, fiends, and witches attack the man. If they come too near, he throws the pulse at them, and this frightens them off; and as long as he keeps a brave heart and repeats the right mantras one hundred and eight times without stumbling, all goes well, and he is their absolute master for the ensuing year; but if he steps outside the circle before the day dawns, or if for one moment during the terrible ordeal his heart fails him and he blanches, or if he stumbles as he repeats a mantra, he is in the fiends’ power for ever!

Other Indians, such as Kolis, Bhils, and the low-castes, go down on this night to the desolate places where corpses are burnt and, making similar circles, burn within them as sacrifices to terrible Mother-goddesses, such as Mahākālī, or Bhairavī, or Melaḍī, offerings of evil forbidden food, spirits, and meat, and give them a sārī of ceremony and bangles to wear.

If, in spite of all her fears, a woman has to go outside her house on this terrifying night, she walks very carefully, for there are circles drawn in every street, and if she so much as put her foot inside one, an evil spirit will take possession of her. If, by some mischance, this terrible catastrophe does happen to her, she knows it, and so do her friends, by her constant shaking. Sometimes the woman herself says who the ghost is, how it came, and how to get rid of it.²

The last day of the three is the greatest of all the Dīvālī days. In the morning children get up early, bathe as soon as they are dressed, and let off crackers to their heart’s content.

¹ Phaenolus radiatus.
² In the writer’s part of the world ghost-ridden men or women generally go on pilgrimage to Siddhpur in Gujarāt or Gayā in Bengal, where they perform a Śrāddha or a marriage of cow and bull; or to Sarangpur in Kāthiāvār to worship the image in a famous Hanumān temple; or to a Muḥammadan shrine in which even Hindus believe, Mīna Dātāra in Gujarāt, at which they offer coco-nuts.
The children have had a fine time all three days, for their elders believe that, if the children are indulged and kept happy in every possible way, the year will bring good fortune to both parents and children, and the children, you may be sure, make the most of so congenial a creed!

On this last day they take a cake of cow-dung, thrust in it a piece of sugar-cane for a holder, and arrange on the cow-dung a tiny earthen lamp, in which a wick floating on sweet oil is burning. Carrying this light (Guj. Meriyun) the children go round from house to house begging oil for their lamp, that their dead ancestors may get light.

Their elders spend the morning in meeting and entertaining their friends, and preparing for what is the main ceremony of the three days’ holiday, the *Worship of the Account-books*, by putting bigger lamps than ever in the windows of their houses, for this night the illuminations must be ‘gorgeous and grand’. All the old accounts must be closed, and the new ones opened, in preparation for the worship.

The astrologer fixes the exact moment for this all-important rite to be performed.

The new account-book is opened, and on its third leaf a Brähman writes the word Śrī (i.e. Laksī, the goddess of wealth) over and over again, in such a way as to form a pyramid of the syllable Śrī.

In the centre of this pyramid a betel-leaf is placed, and on it a current rupee—the newer the better.

The fivefold worship is offered by the presiding Brähman to the account-book, still open at this page, concluding with ārati, and at the end the food offered is distributed to visitors, and alms are given to the Brähman, who in turn blesses his host, saying: ‘May you be happy all the year’.

Then, as an omen, the rupee from the account-book is tossed up, and if it falls with a clear ringing sound, it is a lucky presage for the new year.

1 Monier Williams overlooks this main rite (*Brähmanism and Hinduism*, p. 432), and so does Burne (*Handbook of Folklore*, p. 243)
Afterwards every one gathers round to eat sugar and grain, sends trays of it to friends, and lets off crackers.

The account-book is left open all night with a lamp burning beside it, and early in the morning the Brāhman returns. His host says to him three times: ‘Lakṣa Lāhha’ (a hundred thousand profits), and the Brāhman replies: ‘May you have a hundred and twenty-five thousand profits’, and shuts the account-book.

All night long every one in the house has kept awake, and now, with the dawning of the New Year, they sally forth to wish their friends all happiness.

*The Additional Month.*

As the Hindu luni-solar year consists of 354 days, at the end of about thirty-two months an additional month falls to be inserted.

At the beginning of every year it is announced in the press, after consultation with pāṇḍits at Benares, whether or no an extra month is to be added, and when it will be inserted. For instance, in 1917 an additional month (*Adhika Māsa*) was inserted after August, or rather Bhādrapada, and this was called *Adhika Bhādrapada Māsa*.

Such an extra month is considered as sacred as the month of Śrāvaṇa, and particular merit is gained during it by bathing in the river, or by going on pilgrimage.

The women get up early throughout the month, bathe in the river, and then perform an interesting ceremony. They draw deep furrows on the sandy banks of the river and sow grain in them, then circumambulate them, telling their beads, winding threads of cotton round their ‘field’, as they term it, and worshipping it. They hope to gain the fruit of this field in their next life.

During this additional month, too, interesting moral stories are read which show the benefit to be gained at this time by ceremonial bathing. For instance, once upon a time a good young man bathed, and after bathing took his jug home with him and set it on the grain jar; some drops of water from it
happened to fall on the jar, and lo! every single grain that the water touched turned into a pearl.

Women not only bathe with special care, but also fast in different ways, eating perhaps only one meal a day; or only one morsel the first, two the second, and three the third day; or, again, fasting entirely on alternate days; but whatever method they adopt, the intention is the same: to store up merit for their next life.

This intercalary month, being originally without the protection of a god, gained the evil name of Mala Māsa, 'the month of droppings'—sure, was it not made up of just 'the droppings' of the preceding thirty-two months? Accordingly, so tradition tells, it went weeping to Viṣṇu, who charmed away all tears by graciously promising that henceforth to this month should attach his own name of Puruṣottama. So now it is reckoned to be the most sacred of all months, and is often called Puruṣottama Māsa.¹

The month ends, as every season, rite, and ceremony in India seems to end, by gifts being made to Brāhmans.

We shall have spent our time to small advantage during this year that we have been accompanying our Hindu friends in their round of festivals and fasts, unless during it we have learnt to understand better what must be the nature of the faith that is to touch and hold the loving heart of India. It must be a faith that can enter in at lowly doors and laugh or weep with the women and the children, no less than with the men, over the dear intimate domestic joys of home, its love, its fears, and its sorrows. It must be a faith, too, which can appreciate to the full the storied life of the country-side, the fierce heat of the Indian sun, the white glory of its moonlight, the deep quiet of the stars, the pregnant scent of cool rain splashing down on the hot parched land, the green of the wheat-fields, and the joy of harvest in famine-haunted lands.

¹ The writer is indebted for this legend, as, indeed, she is for so many other suggestions, to the late Rev. Dr. Taylor.
To lovers of humanity the circle of the Brähman year seems to unfold a scroll on which are pictured the urgent needs, the fears, and hopes of the common people, and this outstretched scroll pleads silently but pitifully for nothing less than the revelation of the Incarnate Christ, and the knowledge that the watchful tender care of the village Carpenter—the Guru, who with His célás lived and walked through the pleasant hill country of Galilee—is with them all the days from the beginning of the year to its end.
CHAPTER XIII

OCCASIONAL RITES AND CEREMONIES

FIVE GREAT OCCASIONAL SACRIFICES: Mahá rudra — Gáyatrí Puráścaraṇa — Three ways of propitiating the consort of Rudra.
ECLIPSES.
WELL-DIGGING.
WAR, PESTILENCE, AND FAMINE: Plague Cart.

We have studied the fixed Fasts and Festivals that occur at regular intervals all through the year, but besides these we must also note occasional rites and ceremonies that are performed once in a lifetime to gain some special merit, or which mark some special event, such as an eclipse, a move into a new house, or an epidemic.

_Five Great Sacrifices._

Every Twice-born Hindu owes a threefold debt: to his fellow-beings, to his dead ancestors, and to the gods.

He pays the debt he owes to human beings by reading the Veda, teaching them, and performing his fivefold duties from day to day, which include almsgiving.

He performs his duty to his ancestors partly by the offering of Śráddha, but chiefly by having a son.

The debt he owes to the gods he particularly discharges by performing his daily worship; but absolutely to acquit himself of it, he should once in his life perform one of the five great

In the autumn of 1916, through the great kindness of a widowed Brāhmaṇ lady, the writer was invited to be present at a Mahārūdra sacrifice which that lady was having performed for the benefit of her dead guru. The writer owes a debt of gratitude, not only to her hostess, but also to the officiants and the other guests, who took infinite trouble to help her to obtain full notes of the sacrifice at the time, and who corrected and amplified her notes the next day.

The Mahārūdra is the greatest of all the sacrifices, and is performed to pay off completely some particular person's debt to the gods, and to wash his sins absolutely away. The ceremony lasts for either five or eleven days, and is extremely expensive, as eleven Brāhmaṇs are invited to take part as sacrificers (Hotri), and besides these there are five directors. One of these last five, called Ācārya, superintends and guides the sacrifices; another, the Brahmad, supervises the sacrifice and guards it; a third is the Sadasypati, who decides any difficulties or differences according to the Scriptures; the fourth Brāhmaṇ is the Gaṇapati, who listens to the pronunciation and sees that it and the recitation of mantras are absolutely correct; whilst the fifth man, the Upadraṣṭrī, supervises the whole ceremony.

In addition to these there are four Brāhmaṇs acting as door-keepers (Dvarapāla), who each guard a different quarter from the demons that would try and spoil the sacrifice. Each of these guardians follows a different Veda. At the sacrifice the writer saw, the Brāhmaṇ who sat at the north of the booth followed the Atharva-veda; the Brāhmaṇ on the south the Yajur-veda; the one on the east the Rig-veda, and on the west the Sāma-veda. As our hostess was a widow, a friend was acting for her as host, or Yajamāna. The Yajamāna had performed Prāyaścitta the day before the sacrifice began by bathing in the river, smearing himself with cow-dung and white clay, and sprinkling water over
himself with darbha-grass. He had also made the gift of a cow, or rather of its conventional value, to a Brähman, and got himself shaved.

The booth or pavilion under whose shade the sacrifice was offered had also been erected the day before, and in the centre of it there was an altar in which the actual offering to Rudra would be made, Mahādeva, in his terrible form of Rudra, being pleased with fire and the offering of clarified butter and coco-nut. The officiating Brähmans all sat within the booth. They had performed their usual daily worship and then took the special places assigned to them, still fasting.

This sacrifice is a very severe physical test of endurance, for the Brähmans should, if possible, fast till noon, though working hard all the time. About twelve they are given a light breakfast of plantains, milk, sweets, and fruit, but at six, when the repetition is complete, they all feed sumptuously on wheat, treacle, clarified butter, sugar, rice, milk, and potatoes, or any green vegetables. (No Brähman may ever, of course, touch fish, flesh, fowl, eggs, garlic, red vegetables, or sea salt.)

They must never leave the premises on which the great sacrifice is being performed, and they can neither shave, nor have their hair cut, nor do anything to adorn their persons. Of course, too, they observe strict celibacy, and strive in every way to keep as holy as possible. All night they watch by turn the fire in the altar, which, once it is lit, must never be permitted to go out.

Any time during the days of the sacrifice men and women come and worship them and make offerings to them, hoping thus to gain some of the merit of the sacrifice. The host in especial worships them every morning and makes the auspicious mark.

At the beginning of the sacrifice on the first day the deities were installed.

1 When the writer witnessed the sacrifice there was only one altar, but she was told there might have been fire on nine additional altars, each of a different shape.
First, Rudra was installed in the north-east corner of the pavilion. He was represented in this particular case by a coco-nut standing on a copper jug and covered with some silk. He might also be represented by a gold linga or a crystal; or (more rarely) by a tiny idol of gold seated on a golden bull, with the Ganges on his hair, snakes round his neck, the moon on his forehead, wearing a garland of skulls, possessing three eyes, and having a bow in his hand.

Beside the Rudra there happened to be in this case a photo of the dead guru for whose benefit the sacrifice was being performed.

In the same way, in the centre of some special design, a square, a circle, or a lotus flower, which differed in each case, was the veiled coco-nut on a copper jug that represented the Nine Planets (placed close to the Rudra); the Vāstu (to the south-west of the pavilion); the Yogini (to the south of the pavilion); the Kṣetrapāla (to the north-west); the Gaṇapati (south-east).

The Ācārya directed the installation of these gods, and every morning they were worshipped with the fivefold worship or with the sixteenfold, according to the money to be spent, and every evening with ārati (waving of a lamp). At night also mantras were repeated in praise of these gods, with the object, not only of pleasing them, but also of guarding the sixteen Brāhmans taking part in the ceremony from snake-bite, seeing that they have to sleep out in the compound.

In front of the square-built central altar was the yoni of the kunda or altar, made of brick in an oval form and covered with a green cloth. It, too, was worshipped every morning with the fivefold or sixteenfold worship.

The sacrifice began about eight a.m. The fire was brought, carefully covered, from the hearth of a ‘fortunate’ householder who possessed many cattle.

At the right moment the Ācārya gave the sign, and all the Brāhmans began to repeat the mantras from the sixteenth chapter of the Śukla Yajur-veda. There are sixty-six
mantras in the chapter, each of which is divided into one hundred and sixty-one parts. Every time that a noun in the dative case occurs in the mantra all the eleven Hotri say Svāhā and pour clarified butter into the fire, great care being taken that the butter is poured into the fire just as the final long ā of Svāhā is being pronounced. At the same moment the other Brāhmans, who have been holding sesamum seeds fried in clarified butter between the tips of their two middle fingers and their thumb (this is called the ‘deer’ mudrā), fling them into the fire. When the whole of the sixteenth chapter has been said, it is one-eleventh of one Rudrī; and the whole chapter has to be said at least eleven times each day. (If, for the sake of economy, the host tries to curtail the time taken by the sacrifice into five instead of eleven days, he gets the priests to repeat the chapter eleven times the first day, twenty-two times the second day, thirty-three the third, forty-four the fourth, and eleven times the fifth, in order that it may be said one hundred and twenty-one times.)

Once, whilst the writer watched the sacrifice, the fire went dim, and instantly the ‘Brahmā’ poured clarified butter on the embers, and, as he did so, all the other priests threw their arms up. If the flames had grown too fierce, she was told that boiled milk and clarified butter would have been poured in to temper them.

The last day of the sacrifice is the most important of all. It is called the day of completion, when the leading people of the town, and sometimes the Ruling Chief, are all invited. On this day the mantras are repeated more loudly, and the clarified butter poured in more lavishly, and many of the guests make small donations to the Brāhmans. On the other days the sacrifice lasts from eight a.m. till about five p.m., with a pause for lunch at noon; but on this last day no break was made, and the last Rudrī was said about two in the afternoon. Then a coco-nut, marked with a red svastika and wrapped in the red sārī of ceremony usually worn by a bride,
was thrown into the fire, and clarified butter poured in in abundance. (Sometimes as much as eighty pounds is sacrificed on the last day, and occasionally a pierced pot of clarified butter is hung over the fire that the stream of clarified butter may be continuous.)

At the close the host bathes, every one is feasted, the gods are given leave to go by scattering rice grains over them, and the fire is allowed to go out of itself.

The ashes remaining in the altar after the fire has gone out are used ceremonially for marking one's body when worshipping.

When the writer witnessed this sacrifice, she was also allowed to see another ceremony, called Abhiṣeka, proceeding in a little room off the veranda of the house, where a Śiva liṅga was being continuously bathed with water. For, as Mahādeva in his terrible form (Ghoratana) as Rudra is appeased by fire and clarified butter, so in his auspicious form (Śāntatana) as Śiva he is pleased with offerings of water. Six Brāhmans sat round the liṅga, which had a seven-headed silver cobra over it and was adorned with a rosary and with flowers.

These Brāhmans also were repeating the same chapter (Rudraajapa) one hundred and twenty-one times, but instead of the repetition of svāhā and the pouring of clarified butter into a fire, a continuous stream of water trickled down on to the liṅga from a pierced pot which was suspended above it. This ceremony is not an integral part of the great Mahārudra sacrifice but is done or not at the host's pleasure.

The whole ceremony, when the writer witnessed it, cost fifteen hundred rupees, the main expense being the payment and gifts made to Brāhmans. The Ācārya, for instance, was paid two hundred rupees, and the others sums varying from sixty to eleven rupees. Each of them was also presented with an entire suit of clothes.

*Great Repetition of the Gāyatri (Gāyatrī Puraścaraṇa).*

Every householder and every Brāhman is expected during
his life to repeat the great Gāyatrī mantra altogether twenty-four hundred thousand times, in order to purify his heart. Towards the end of his life, if a wealthy gentleman feels uncertain as to whether he has repeated it often enough, he sometimes has a special service of repetition performed. The length of time that the ceremony lasts depends on the number of Brāhmans invited and the rate of speed at which they can repeat the mantra. Not long ago a Nāgara gentleman in the writer’s town had this ceremony performed. He summoned seventy Brāhmans, each of whom repeated the Gāyatrī four thousand times every day, so the requisite number of repetitions was made in thirteen days; but it is not every Brāhman who could repeat a mantra so quickly, so that often, of course, the ceremony takes longer.

There are five divisions of the ceremony, and for the sake of symmetry, since the Gāyatrī mantra contains altogether twenty-four syllables, all the five rites are multiples of twenty-four.

First, the mantra itself is repeated twenty-four hundred thousand times.

Homa is next offered two hundred and forty thousand times.

The offering of Tarpana to the gods is made twenty-four thousand times.

The Yajamāna, the man who pays for the performance of the ceremony, is sprinkled two thousand four hundred times to purify him (Mārjana).

Finally, two hundred and forty Brāhmans should be fed, but if this proves too expensive (since every Brāhman has a very large appetite!), the number may be reduced to twenty-four.

The erection of the booth or pavilion, the appointment of Brāhmans, their different offices and rules of conduct, all resemble those already described in the Mahārudra sacrifice. The same gods, too, are installed, but the place of honour is now given, not to the altar for Rudra, but to the Gāyatrī
which is sometimes represented by a tiny golden image of a goddess with six faces and ten arms.

The priests sit inside the booth and repeat the Gāyatrī, pouring clarified butter, but this time mixed with sesame seeds and a little barley, into the fire at the end of each mantra. At the end of the whole ceremony, a coco-nut marked with a svastika, together with a bride’s sārī of ceremony, is thrown into the fire.

The average expense of such a repetition of the Gāyatrī is about two thousand rupees. It wins almost as much merit as the Mahārudra sacrifice, and he is accounted a happy man who can afford to have both performed for his benefit.

**Propitiating the Consort of Rudra.**

Caṇḍī, the consort of Rudra, is a terrible goddess, and, if people can afford it, it is well once in a lifetime to propitiate her. There is a book called after her (Caṇḍi-pātha),¹ which contains seven hundred mantras in her honour, and if this is read aloud one hundred times (Satacaṇḍī), the goddess, hearing seventy thousand mantras repeated in her praise, is naturally pleased.

Generally ten Brāhmans are employed, and it takes them ten days to repeat all the mantras.

A pavilion is erected, and in it three goddesses are installed: Mahākālī, Mahālakṣmī, and Mahāsarasvatī; and these are worshipped either in the fivefold or sixteenfold way. The Homa offering to the fire is only performed once, however, on the last day, when clarified butter mixed with sesame seeds and barley is usually offered; but sometimes the offering consists instead of rice pudding and bilva leaves.

This whole ceremony usually costs about two hundred and fifty rupees. The repetition, however, may be done in a more elaborate form (SahasraCaṇḍī), when the book is read one thousand times instead of one hundred, and many more Brāhmans are employed.

¹ Viz. the Caṇḍi-māhātmya of the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa.
OCCASIONAL RITES AND CEREMONIES

But the most elaborate and expensive way of placating the goddesses is called the Lakṣaṇaṅdī, when the book is read one hundred thousand times.

The writer once saw a regular encampment of Brāhmans, when the wife of a Ruling Chief in Kāthiāwār was having this ceremony performed. Five hundred Brāhmans (of whom the writer's pañḍīt was one) spent one hundred and five days over the repetition. The cost of the ceremony was three hundred and fifty thousand rupees, but the Rāṇī felt that in return she had not only secured purity of heart for herself, but, by propitiating the dread goddess, had also guarded the State against famine and pestilence. During all the days that the ceremony was being performed the Rāṇī only ate once a day, and wore yellow silk clothes all the time. (This lady always puts on yellow silk clothes to worship, because she is a devotee of the goddess Pītāmbarā.)

In the Homa sacrifice at the close so much clarified butter was offered that the smoke of the fire was visible for twenty miles round.

Eclipse of the Sun or Moon.

An eclipse is caused by a planet, Rāhu, which tries to swallow either the sun or the moon. The legend runs that once upon a time a demon named Rāhu was going stealthily to steal nectar from the store of the gods. He had only time to drink just a little, when the sun and the moon both saw what he was up to, and reported him to Viṣṇu. Viṣṇu thereupon threw his wheel at the thief, and it severed his head from his body. The body died, but as the head still had some of the nectar of the gods in its mouth, it could not die in the ordinary way, but instead became a planet, still called by its old demon name of Rāhu. Even yet it remembers its grudge against the sun and the moon, and to this day occasionally tries to swallow one or other of them, and in doing this throws its shadow across them. Now the shadow of a demon is as defiling as the touch of a scavenger (Bhaigī) and pollutes
everything it falls on, so the sun or the moon are themselves defiled during an eclipse, and not only so, but they pollute all that their light falls on. All Twice-born Hindus, therefore, dine twelve hours before the eclipse, and then empty out all the water remaining in their water-jars and shut up their houses. Very often, too, they lay a blade of darbha-grass on the grain or pickle-jars, in order to guard their contents, which cannot be thrown away, against contamination.

As the eclipse begins, the more devout bathe, and so long as the eclipse lasts, however long it be, they continue to repeat the Gāyatrī mantra; for this not only guards the worshipper from contamination, but also helps to remove the sin of the world. Ordinarily, the moment the eclipse is over, and the sun or moon reappears in all its glory, the devout bathe, wash their clothes, and replaster their houses, especially their hearths, being meticulously careful to cleanse all their water-vessels with clay or ashes before they take them into use again.

But sometimes things fall out so untowardly, that the sun or the moon actually sets whilst under the shadow of the demon eclipsing it. Then, indeed, is there much sorrowing of heart amongst the Twice-born, for the day following is also regarded as an eclipse, which the devout must spend, too, in Gāyatrī repetition and in fasting.

When once the eclipse is really over, the Sweepers reap a rich harvest, for all the alms which would naturally be given to Brāhmans are too defiled for them to accept, being only suitable for outcastes. So the Sweepers go about the streets begging and receiving any old cooked food that has fallen under the shadow of the eclipse, as well as gifts of new grain, rice, and sugar.

1 Darbha-grass is considered specially holy, for once, when Viṣṇu was undergoing the boar incarnation, a hair of his mane fell out as he killed the demon, and this became a blade of darbha-grass.
Building a New House.

The building of a new house is a great undertaking in India and is attended at every step with almost as much ritual as a wedding, for the Twice-born are obsessed by two fears: that the house itself may fall down, or that those living in it may die an untimely death, either of which may happen if the rites are not perfectly performed.

First, the owner consults an astrologer and asks him to name a favourable time for the commencement of the undertaking. On the day chosen the owner and his priest go to the building site together, and the priest selects a particular corner where the worship may be performed. There the owner worships the ground by throwing rice and red turmeric powder on it, and performs either the fivefold or the sixteenfold worship to it.

Next, the priest, on behalf of the owner, prays forgiveness from Prithivi for digging in the earth and asks her to drive away every evil spirit, in order that all may live happily in the house.

Coolies then begin to dig the ground, and when a little soil has been dug up, raw sugar is distributed amongst the friends and relatives of the owner. After this the friends go home, and the Foundations are dug according to the plan.

This plan has first to be passed by the astrologer, for it is only he who can tell the builder where the two most ceremonially important rooms of the house—the kitchen and the room of the gods—can be placed. His aid has also to be called in if, in digging the foundations, they come across a bone or any coal, for either of these render the ground impure, and it has to be purified by the sprinkling of water and the offering of the fivefold worship. An astrologer can often predict beforehand where such a bone will be found.

The Twice-born are much more meticulous about these rites for building a house or a bridge than low-caste Indians.
Before a single stone can be laid, another ceremony has to be performed. The astrologer shows what spot in the foundation is exactly above the head of the snake that supports the world. The mason fashions a little wooden peg from the wood of the Khadira tree, and with a coco-nut drives the peg into the ground at this particular spot, in such a way as to peg the head of the snake securely down. This seems a tactless thing to do, but the reason given is that the snake has a tiresome habit of shaking its head and so causing earthquakes and wrecking houses (even a tiny shake knocks a house down), but this peg keeps it and the house firm.

The foundation is then filled with water, to make the earth holy, and also to make it cake, whilst the owner, accompanied by the priest, worships a most interesting selection of gods.

First, of course, now as in every ceremony, he worships Gaṇeśa, the remover of obstacles; next Viśvakarmā, the architect or master-builder of the gods; and afterwards all the tools belonging to the masons who are going to work at the new house, especially the measuring-rod. This measuring-rod is placed on a green silk cloth (which is afterwards taken away by the masons as their perquisite) and worshipped by the owner in the fivefold way, Brāhmans being called in to recite appropriate verses of blessing.

When all this has been completed, an earthenware, or better still a copper, pot is taken and filled with the five nectars, and into this is put the following heterogeneous collection of articles: a gold or silver coin, an areca-nut, grains of rice unhusked and unbroken, five different kinds of leaves, a lump of turmeric, which must be so broken as to have three projections, to signify increase, and also some dūrvā-grass. (The reason that dūrvā-grass is put into the pot on this occasion is not only its holiness, but also its extraordinary prolificness, for it knots itself and spreads very widely, so, as the owner puts it into the pot, he

1 Acacia Catechu.
2 If this snake should ever shake its head really violently, it would shake the whole world to pieces.
wishes that he may be knotted into the place, and that his family may increase.) This filled pot is then worshipped in the fivefold way, and another pot is afterwards placed on it, so as to cover it completely. Then these two pots are put in the foundations on the head of the wooden peg, and a mason builds it all in with concrete most carefully, so as to form a little platform. On this platform the foundation stone is well and truly laid, and, as with us, it should be laid with a silver trowel. The foundation stone is called the Lotus-slab (Padma-śilā), because an eight-petalled lotus flower is carved on it, and on this lotus they make an oriental cross (svastika) in saffron powder (Kunikuma).

Next, the Brāhmaṇ brings a coco-nut marked with the red auspicious dot and hits it on the stone, being careful, however, not to hit it hard enough to break it, but, taking it a little distance off, he breaks it there and distributes it as prasāda amongst the people present. In return he is presented with wheat, sugar, coco-nut, and money, and sometimes with some green corn and green cloth. (The object of thus giving green-coloured things is to prevent the family ever becoming dried up and withered, and to obtain perpetual prosperity and fertility for them.) Other Brāhmaṇs are also summoned, and money distributed amongst them.

The building then proceeds, but before the frames of the principal Door can be inserted an astrologer must again be consulted. If this authority asserts that the planet Rāhu (the demon who causes eclipses) is at that precise time in such a position that it is able to glance through the projected doorway into the house, the builder will wait for a few days till the ill-omened planet changes his position. In extreme cases they might change the position of the projected doorway, but as a matter of fact this is hardly ever done.

As soon as ever the frame of the main doorway is erected, they either carve an image of Gaṇeśa on it, or else write his name on it. Afterwards they either pour clarified butter on the threshold, or they seat a Brāhmaṇ near the threshold and
ply him with clarified butter till he can swallow no more, but at last allows some to drip from his mouth on to the threshold.

Finally, to guard against the evil eye ever falling on the door, or on any one entering the house, some of the blackened oily substance from an image of Hanumān, together with black thread and an iron hook, are fixed in the upper part of the door.

The lintel of the door is covered at this time with green or white cloth.

An astrologer, too, is consulted as to the most favourable moment for fixing the Main Beam of the house. When he has decided, thread is wound round the beam, and sometimes it is garlanded with pīpal leaves. They write on it in red letters of turmeric mixed with clarified butter and oil: ‘Salutation to Śrī Gaṇeśa’. Rice grains are then placed on the letters, and at the auspicious instant it is hoisted up and fixed in its place.

But there are also many other things to remember in building a house. The rafters, for instance, must always be of an uneven number, though the pillars supporting the veranda must be even in number. Nor must any supporting beam ever rest over a doorway or a window, or the household will surely be unhappy.

The Roof may have the small tiles placed on it as soon as ever it is ready for them, but the big tiles that cover the junction of the roof should not be put in place for at least a year. This is to avoid the appearance of over-completion. Perfection, they say, belongs to gods alone, man's work is incomplete at its best.2

No one will go to live in a house till after the Vāstu ceremony has been performed. Sometimes the owner has to wait

---

1 Three sorts of food are specially sacred: clarified butter eaten by a Brāhmaṇ; the foam that remains round the lips of a calf when it has finished drinking its mother's milk; and honey, which is thought of as having been previously eaten by bees.

2 In the same way, when reading a sacred book, some chapter should be left unread.
some time until the auspicious moment fixed by the astrologer for this ceremony comes round. If so, he is careful to light a lamp every night in the unoccupied house, lest unclean spirits, finding it swept and garnished, but uninhabited, should enter and dwell there.

An astrologer is asked to name the day when the Worship of Vāstu may be performed, but the astrologer’s choice is limited, for every one knows that it cannot take place on a Tuesday or a Sunday, nor on the fourth, ninth, fourteenth, or last day of any month. The months in which the ceremony should be performed are, according to a well-known verse, Mārgasīrṣa, Phālguna, Vaiśākha, or Śrāvaṇa. However, somehow or other the astrologer does settle on a suitable date, and two or three days beforehand Brāhmans are employed to repeat ten thousand mantra in praise of Vāstu, the deity that presides over a house. This Vāstu is a male god much addicted to slumber, for he sleeps stretched out in the house all day and all night, with his head in the north-east corner, his feet in the south-west, one arm flung out to the east corner, and another to the west, and his chest and trunk in the centre of the house. When the actual day for the Vāstu worship has arrived, the ceremony begins by the worship of Gaṇeśa and of the sixteen goddesses, in the same way that we saw them worshipped in the marriage ceremony (p. 62).

This done, an unmarried girl or a ‘fortunate’ woman, wearing the special sārī of ceremony, with her forehead besmeared with red, and wearing clothes of any colour save black, brings into the house at the exact moment fixed by the astrologer a new copper vessel filled with fresh pure water from the river.

1 Brāhmans are most interested to see the use our Lord made of this superstition, which seems to be common in the East, of the invitation which an empty house (or mind!) offers to evil (S. Luke xi. 25, 26). If He did not disdain to weave the legends of the people into His open-air preaching, we missionaries of a later date need scarcely grudge the time and sympathy it takes to learn the legends and customs of an Eastern people, in order that we may cast our thoughts into an oriental mould.
In the vessel five auspicious leaves have been placed, and five auspicious things: turmeric, a silver coin, areca-nut, a jewel, and some rice. On the top of the vessel is an earthen dish filled with rice and wheat, and, resting on that, a coco-nut covered with a green cloth.

Near the head of the god in the north-east corner a svastika has been made of grains of green pulse. On this the woman places the copper pot and all its accessories, and it is worshipped with the fivefold worship, the god Varuna being asked to take up his abode in the vessel.

An altar is now made in the very centre of the principal room of the house. The earth for this altar is brought by some 'fortunate' women from some specially fertile field, and they all sing happy songs as they carry the earth to the house. With this earth an altar one yard square is built, either four or nine inches in height, the ground i.e. the centre of the altar being hollowed out. (Sometimes the altar is simply a raised platform.)

All is now ready for the installation of the god Vāstu. He is represented in the south-west corner of the house by a design having either forty-five or eighty-one curves and bends, each curve being afterwards worshipped as representing a separate god.

A gold image representing Vāstu is placed in the centre of the design and worshipped with the fivefold worship, and a copper vessel containing the usual auspicious articles is also placed amongst the curves of the design and worshipped.

Next, the Nine Planets are invoked and installed in the north-east corner of the house, close to the copper vessel we saw placed there, and are then worshipped in the usual way.

Fire is now to be placed in the altar, but before it can be put there, the ground inside the altar must be purified. This is done after the following manner. The enclosed ground is first swept with darbha-grass and plastered with cow-dung. Next, lines are scooped out from inside the altar by means of a long wooden spoon, and the dust from these furrows is
picked up between the thumb and the third finger. Lastly, water is sprinkled over the ground to purify it.

The wife of the householder then goes to bring fire from the hearth of the house where she is living, taking special care to bring with her only smokeless fire. To carry it from one house to another, she places the fire in one bronze vessel and covers it over with another, which fits so exactly that no space is left between. Arrived at the new house, she lets the glowing embers fall into the altar, and additional fuel is placed over them, so that the fire may blaze brightly. The householder, under the direction of the officiating priest, makes oblations of clarified butter to Agni, pouring them into the fire with a wooden spoon. Sesamum seeds, cooked rice, and two or three pieces of sacrificial wood are also offered. After this, oblations of black pulse and rice are made to the guardians of the ten quarters (Dikpāla), and finally the last offering is made to Agni. This last offering is always a coconut, which represents the full and unbroken fruit of prosperity. It is besmeared with some red substance, such as red lead, red turmeric, or reddened saffron, wrapped in green or red silk, adorned with a paper crown, and, after appropriate mantras have been said over it, it is thrown into the fire to Agni. This marks the end of the ceremony, and the different gods who had been installed are all given leave to go in the auspicious way by throwing rice grains over them.

Three separate untwisted cotton threads, which have been dyed yellow in turmeric, are now placed outside all round the roof of the house, and at regular intervals ten triangular Flags are also put on the roof to the gods of the ten directions. A small oblong piece of coloured bunting is stuck into a lump of clay and arranged beside each triangular flag. All the flags are brightly coloured, save only that which points towards the south, the abode of the god of death; this must be black, but the colours of the others seem to be of no ritual importance. The long untwisted thread is supposed to wish for the family long life, long sojourn in the house they have
built (indeed, they will not undertake the erection of a new one lightly!), and long unbroken prosperity. The flags and the bunting are to show forth the protection of the gods.

In the evening a feast is given to relatives and Brāhmans.1

On the night after the Vāstu ceremony some one must sleep in the house, even if there be not time to move in all the furniture. If possible, it should be the owner and his wife who sleep there; they must observe celibacy and mark with great care what dreams do come to them that night. If they sleep quietly and peacefully, it presages a peaceful life together in their new home; but if in their dreams they are worried with evil visions, or their sleep is disturbed by any alarums and excursions, it is a sure sign that their life will not be a happy one in the house they have built with so much care and such fear-filled precautions. A lamp filled with clarified butter must burn steadily all the night through; it would be a most terrible presage of ill omen for the future of all in the house, should it flicker and go out before the dawn.

Well-digging.

Before a well is dug, much the same ceremonies of purifying the ground, &c., are gone through. As soon as everything is completed, a cow is led round the well once, or, in the case of a tank or reservoir, is made to swim across it.

When a well has been dug, there is always great excitement to know if water will flow into it, and the moment the water appears, it is welcomed as the god of water, and worshipped in the fivefold way.

Every Brāhmān keeps some water drawn from the river Ganges in a sacred vessel in his house; some of this is poured into the well to make all its water as holy as the water of the

1 The writer and her husband were once present at a house-warming feast. The difficulty about caste was got over by their bringing their own vessels and sitting at a separate table, with no carpet connecting them with the other guests.
Ganges, and white mustard-seeds are thrown into the water to drive away evil spirits.

As a well should always have some living thing in it, a tortoise, frogs, or fish are very often put down it.

People say that there was a well on Mt. Girnar which turned all the iron thrown into it to gold. Unfortunately this well cannot now be found, though a man who threw an iron axe into it and received a golden one in exchange tied his turban to the place so as to know it again.

*War, Pestilence, and Famine.*

It is believed that, when an epidemic or a war breaks out, it is because the goddess of destruction, Kāli, the consort of Śiva, is hungry, and so means should be taken to satisfy her dreadful longings. To do this, as many altars as possible are raised in the town square and in all the principal streets, where coco-nuts, clarified butter, fruits, sesamum seeds, sacrificial wood, and incense are offered on behalf of all the people, whilst Brāhmans read verses praying for relief and peace. Meanwhile the Ruling Chief and leading Hindus of the town go to the principal temple and offer prayers and sacrifices there.

During the recent war this worship was performed each year on August 4, as it is at any time of special distress, when famine, cholera, or plague is raging.

By the kind invitation of the Ruling Chief of the State in which she lives, the writer saw the special worship performed after Lord Hardinge’s miraculous escape from the bomb in Delhi. A fire was lit in the altar in the centre of the temple courtyard, and, whilst the priests recited mantras, the Chief himself, standing with bared feet, poured the clarified butter into the flames to appease the dread Mother and to guard the Viceroy from future harm.

Besides this worship, if a severe epidemic is raging, people burn incense day and night to ward off infection, and some
of the more enlightened are willing to be inoculated or to pay special attention to cleanliness.

But the common people put their faith neither in sacrifices nor in sanitation; to them the Cart is far the better way.

This cart (of which their canonical scriptures know nothing) is about the size of a child’s toy; it runs on two wheels and contains an iron pan. They fill this pan with burning charcoal and throw into it sulphur, tar, and incense, and, believing that all this smoke acts as a disinfectant, pay a man to pull the cart through the streets of the city. The inhabitants in the meantime burn nim leaves in their houses, and tie festoons of nim leaves across the doorways of their houses and across the streets to disinfect them.¹

If the cholera or plague² does not abate, sacrifices to the terrible goddess Kāli are again performed in the way already described, but at the end of the sacrifice another cart is brought. This, too, is about the size of a child’s toy, but this time it is covered with red cloth to look like a chariot.

The goddess of the special disease is installed in it, and then the cart, bearing her, is taken through the streets in procession. All the musical instruments in the town are pressed into the service, and men playing on bugles, conch-shells, cymbals, and drums walk before the chariot to do her honour. But, despite all the outward respect evinced by the music, the inhabitants of the town mean business, and two men with naked swords walk like grim jailers on either side of the cart, to prevent the goddess from escaping from it, for they are going to get her out of their town at any cost.

Brāhmans walk behind the cart repeating verses from the Veda or Purāṇa, or the praises of Śiva or Devī. The idea in so doing, the writer was told, was to bring peace to the long-tormented place, once the goddess had passed by.

In order as soon as possible to purify the streets, over which

¹ These festoons of nim leaves must not be confused with the festoons of asoka leaves which are a symbol of rejoicing.
² These methods are never adopted for an epidemic of smallpox.
the terrible goddess has moved for so many days, another Brāhman pours a mixture of water and milk after the cart as it goes along.

The town is now pacified and purified, no trace of the goddess remains to recall the evil she wrought or to invite her back again, and, in order to guard the city, immediately the cart bearing the goddess outside has passed, and all has been made safe and right by verses and milk, a Brāhman takes three yellow or white threads of cotton and ties them round the city walls to make a rampart which the terrible goddess cannot re-pass. If the city be a very large one, each ward is often thus fenced in separately, the artisan class in particular, who place special faith in this defence, being almost certain to have threads wound separately round their ward, even in quite a small town.

The cart is taken about a mile outside the town, a circle of water is made round it, and there it is left to its fate.

_Pilgrimages and Sacred Sight-seeing._

Besides the rites and ceremonies attendant on birth, death, marriage, and every other crisis of a man’s life-story, and those brought round by the circling year, or by special occasions, every Hindu who is trying to follow the ritual path to salvation—the _Karma-mārga_—hopes to go once at least in his life on pilgrimage to some sacred place. The ordinary routine for every pilgrim on arrival at his destination, wherever it may be, is to offer a Śrāddha for his dead ancestors, to get himself shaved in order to show his separation from worldly concerns, and to fast for at least one day. The details, of course, vary at every shrine.

Space is running out, so here we can only mention one or two of the most famous places of pilgrimage, suggesting, however, to the reader that he can easily procure a map of India with all the pilgrim resorts marked on it and himself visit the one nearest to his own station.

Of course the most meritorious of all places of pilgrimage
for followers of Śiva is Benares (Kāśi). Bathing in the Ganges removes all sin contracted during every previous birth, and if a man dies there and is burnt on the river bank, he immediately attains Mokṣa; for Śiva at once comes down and whispers the Tāraka mantra, which ensures deliverance from rebirth, in his ear. So the right ear of all that die in Benares is found to be raised a little above the left, since it has heard the god’s own voice.

It is in the hope of thus winning salvation geographically that many old people, when they retire, go to Benares and ‘live there in order to die there’.

But, besides this, the most sacred liṅga called Vaiśvanātha is also to be found in Benares, and bowing to this liṅga brings the highest merit and removes all sin.

We have already noticed that the best place for a man to offer a Śrāddha for his dead male ancestors is at Gayā in Bengal. Once a man has offered a Śrāddha in Gayā, he need perform no annual Śrāddha for his ancestors and may omit all reference to them in his daily morning worship, for he can save others geographically too.

The best place to offer a Śrāddha for a female ancestor is Siddhpur in Gujarāt, and in the same way, once a man has offered a Śrāddha in Siddhpur, he need do no annual Śrāddha for his dead women-folk.

We mentioned the liṅga in Benares; besides it there used to be eleven other sacrosanct liṅga in India, several of which still exist, one of them being at Somnāth, near Verāwal, on the sea-coast of Kāthiāwār. The writer saw the comparatively modern temple that has been erected over the liṅga, but the liṅga itself is underground and can only be seen by the Twice-born. Her friends told her that it was about four feet high and owed part of its special sanctity to the fact that it was uncreated and had appeared of itself (Svayambhū).

It will be remembered that it was the doors of the old temple of Somnāth that Maḥmud Ghaznī carried off in triumph. If the idol enshrined in the temple was then, as
it is now, just a plain stone cylinder, it is entertaining to remember the stories that illustrated the sermons of our childhood, when we were told how the idol-breakers smote the image, terrible with its gleaming eyes, and how, when its awful body was smashed to pieces, the jewels streamed out! 1

After worshipping the linga, pilgrims go on to the place near by where three rivers fall into the sea, and there they offer a Srāddha to quiet any dead ancestors who may have been worrying them. There are other sacred linga,2 and the more of them a man can visit the better.

But besides the linga, there are specially holy rivers: some, like the Ganges, Jamnā, Indus, Sarasvatī, Godāvari, Narbadā, Kāveri, Sarayu, and Gaṇḍaki, which are famous all over India, and others whose names every reader can supply in his own district. Every river is holy, but by bathing in these special rivers at places like Allahabad, where two or three streams join, all sins, even the very worst, are washed away. The source of a river, too, or the place where it issues, from the mountains, like Hardwar, is sacred.

1 Cf. also J. R. Lowell, *Mahmood the Image-breaker*:

Mahmood once, the idol-breaker, spreader of the Faith,
Was at Sumat tempted sorely, as the legend saith.

In the great pagoda’s centre, monstrous and abhorred,
Granite on a throne of granite, sat the temple’s lord.

Mahmood paused a moment, silenced by the silent face
That, with eyes of stone unwavering, awed the ancient place.

Then the Brahmins knelt before him, by his doubt made bold,
Pledging for their idol’s ransom countless gems and gold.

(And so on for several stanzas in best penny-reading style, till at last):

Luck obeys the downright striker: from the hollow core
Fifty times the Brahmins’ offer deluged all the floor.

2 According to one proverb, the other specially sacred linga are at Kedāra (in the Himalaya, where the pilgrims often suffer terribly from cold), Tryambakanātha (near Nāsik), Vaidyanātha, Mahākāla (in Ujjain), Omkāra (near the source of the Narbadā), Rāmeśvara, Mullikārjuṇa, Bhimaśāṅkara, Nāgeśvara, and Gṛiṣṇeśvara.
Geographical Salvation is also attainable on the summits of mountains, whose holy soil has been further sanctified by the tread of the great sages who have lived there and the temples that have been built in their honour. The most sacred of all mountains are the Himālaya, but holy, too, are Vindhyačala, Ābu, Girnār, Nilgiri, and Arāvallī.

The writer's pāṇḍits, being followers of Śiva, hope once in their lives to do a tour of their holy places. Their ambition is to go first to Benares, then to Nāsik, afterwards to Rāmeśvara, and lastly to Somnāth. A similar tour for followers of Viṣṇu would be Śrī Nāthāji, Muttra (Gokula), Allahabad (Prayāg), Dwārakā, and Jagannātha Purī, but any follower of Śiva would go and see these also, just as a Vaiśṇava would go and see the Śaiva holy places, if opportunity offered; this is specially true of women, for the female followers of Śiva have a great devotion for Kṛiṣṇa.

But merit is not only acquired by going to sacred places, it is also—and this is less understood in England—acquired by looking at sacred people, such as Brāhmans, true ascetics, Ruling Chiefs, and still more by gazing at the face of the King-Emperor. This was why King George's visit in 1911 had such a happy religious significance; quite poor village people were anxious to do 'darśana' to him, i.e. to obtain 'vision' of him. Many folk tried to sit on the seat that he had sat on, for by so doing they showed reverence to him and also acquired merit for themselves. No Governor's, or Viceroy's, or Heir Apparent's visit could have had this religious significance, for you would gain more merit by seeing the humblest Ruling Chief than by the sight of any Heir Apparent. Hence the visit of the German Crown Prince to India was, from a religious point of view, totally valueless! The ruler may be of any caste or creed, Muḥammadan, Christian, Rājput, but once he comes to the throne, however bad his private life may be, he instantly and automatically acquires the sanctity of thirty-six holy men.

In the special case of King George, as he had five sons,
he resembled King Pāṇḍu, and so there was peculiar merit in seeing him. Every Queen who is acknowledged as the Chief Consort is as holy as a king, indeed, more holy, since she is looked on as a goddess (Devi), and so holier than the equivalent of thirty-six holy men.

Queen Mary, being the mother of five sons, was looked on as specially blessed, and a bringer of blessing wherever she went. Moreover, that nothing might be lacking, Her Majesty had one daughter, who to the Indians represented Lakṣṇī, the goddess of prosperity.

It is surely a beautiful omen for the future in which Indian and English shall labour together for the up-lift of the world that, just at this critical moment of transition, India should be linked to the imperial throne, not solely by its own proud loyalty, but also by these special beliefs whose strands are interwoven, not alone with its Vedic but also with its Epic and its legendary past.

To-day the eyes of India are turned more and more eagerly and lovingly backwards towards that rich and storied past, and it is thence that they would fain draw inspiration for the future. To many it is a real joy that they have found from it fresh proof that they are most loyal to their own traditions when they are most loyal to the King-Emperor and his Gracious Consort, who so exactly fulfil the ideal of which their own poets have sung.

1 This resemblance convinced Hindus even in the darkest days that King George would win the war. For in the Mahābhārata it was King Pāṇḍu’s sons who defeated the Kaurava in the great battle of Hindu legend.
PART III
TEMPLE WORSHIP

CHAPTER XIV
ŚIVA WORSHIP


MIDDAY WORSHIP — AFTERNOON — EVENING WORSHIP: Divine Concert.

VARIETIES OF ŚIVA WORSHIP: Royal Worship — Svayambhū Liṅga Worship — Samādhi-pūjā — No Worship — Great Toe Worship — Human Sacrifice.

It remains for us now, who have followed a Brāhmaṇ's ritual during his whole life from infancy to death, and have studied the different opportunities for worship which the years, his life and his travels have unfolded, to study his worship in his shrines.¹

Accordingly, in this third part of the book the writer is going to ask the reader to visit with her a Hindu temple, and since most (though by no means all) Brāhmaṇs in her part of India are of the Śaiva sect, the temple we visit shall be one sacred to Śiva.

¹ Perhaps the writer might venture to suggest that those two invaluable books for the student, the Handbook of Folklore and Notes and Queries on Anthropology, would be more complete if they had an extra chapter on Temple Worship.
A Śiva Temple.

In every city or large village there is almost certain to be a Śiva temple in the centre of the town for the convenience of the women, the old men, the children, and those who have no time to go down and bathe in the river.

But it is a shrine on the river bank that the reader and writer will in imagination go together to see, and they will choose for the time of their first visit the delicious freshness of an Indian morning.

The situation of the temple, perched above some stream, adds to the picturesqueness of the buildings, and from far away we can see, white against the dark foliage of the distant trees, the ornate domed roof of the shrine itself, rising above the courtyard wall that surrounds it, its loftiest pinnacle bearing on high a glittering brass or gilded vase.

During her happy life in India the writer has knocked at the door of countless temple courtyards, always to be welcomed most courteously by the officiant (pujārī) and any ascetics who might be sitting about in the rest-houses built for them inside the walls, so that we need have no doubts as to our reception.

Probably within the compound we shall find a garden, where the flowers needed for the temple worship are grown, a well which supplies the temple with water, and one or two small shrines; but let us look first at the most important temple, the large domed shrine, standing by itself on a high plinth in the centre of the courtyard.

Before we can ascend its steps, we shall have to stay for a minute and take off our shoes. Some people have conscientious objections to doing this, lest it should imply that they were about to worship the idol; but they really need not hesitate, for, as a Brāhman, with whom the writer was discussing the subject, said to her recently, 'I take off my shoes before coming into your drawing-room, but I don't propose to worship you!'
The rule about shoes is that they should be taken off before entering a house or a temple, and before drinking water or tea, because they are made of the skin of a dead animal and so are impure; their removal has no ritual significance.

But, as we take off our shoes, we do remind ourselves that we take up a sympathetic attitude to the longings of the worshippers in the temple, for in anthropology, perhaps more than in any other subject, it is true that a loving heart is the beginning of knowledge. Often, when entering a temple to watch some special rite or ceremony, the writer has said to the officiant: 'You will remember that I serve a different spiritual King, and I trust you not to let me do anything disloyal to my King', and always she has received the most understanding response to her petition, being shown exactly what she may or may not do.

And now, having climbed the platform, we notice as we look round that the temple probably faces east, and that it has two main divisions: the porch (Sabhā mandapa) and the inner shrine (Garbha mandira).

At the entrance to the outer porch hangs a Bell, and each worshipper, as he enters the temple, rings it with a twofold purpose: first, to draw the god's attention to his worship, for the sound of a bell is always pleasing to the gods; and secondly, to frighten away demons who might throw obstacles in the way of his worship, or defile it by throwing invisible impurities over him. At the sound of the bell all demons flee away.

Before the doorway that leads into the inner shrine there kneels a stone image of a Bull, looking for ever with loving adoration towards the stone linga within. Heaped up before the kneeling bull are very often carved stone laṭṭu, of

---

1 And, lest to the arm-chair critic at home visiting temples should seem mere waste of time for a missionary, the writer may perhaps add that over and over again at the end of her visit the priests have said: 'Now we have told you all about our gods, won't you tell us about yours?'

2 It may, however, face north, if the exigencies of its river situation so demand; but it may never face south or west.
which, however, the animal in his love for the god is quite unconscious.¹ An invisible rope, it is believed, ties the head of the bull to the god's hand, and as that god, in his character of the great ascetic, is represented as lost in meditation and oblivious of all that goes on around him, each worshipper, before paying his devotions to the liṅga, touches for a moment the head of the stone bull: the animal thereupon shakes his head, and in so doing jerks the rope in the god's hand and makes him realize the fact that a devotee is paying him reverence.²

It is worth looking carefully to see if on the ground just in front of the bull a small stone model of a Tortoise has been carved. One does not expect to see a tortoise, the representation of the second incarnation of Viṣṇu, in a Śiva temple, but its presence here between the bull in the outer porch and the liṅga in the inner shrine serves a special purpose. It is never courteous to walk between a husband and wife, a guru and his disciple, a master and an attached servant, or a god and his devoted worshipper. So, unless the tortoise of Viṣṇu already separates them, it would be sinful, and also (with so quick-tempered a god as Śiva) highly dangerous, for any worshipper to pass between the bull and the liṅga, when in his ambulation he has to walk half-way round the shrine and back again. So, if there be no tortoise to sever the connexion, the worshipper will have to keep on the outer side of the bull in his ritual walk.

The door leading to the inner shrine is often elaborately carved. On the walls at right angles to it are the two watchmen of Indian mythology, who stand there to act as aides-de-camp to the god and to usher in the worshippers. Hanumān, the monkey god, with his foot on Panoti, faces the south—the region of ghosts and death—which is also, of course, the

¹ In all the temples the writer has visited she has never seen the bull represented as eating the sweets.
² The writer has sometimes seen an old countryman stand and yell in front of the shrine to attract the god's attention.
direction of Ceylon, where Hanumān won undying fame in the help he gave Rāma against Rāvana.

Hanumān, it will be remembered, is the embodiment of strength, and also the god who keeps off ghosts, whose name it is well to take if, in a dream or on a dark night, you see an evil spirit approaching you; so, of course, he is in his element guarding the worshippers against the attacks of demons. But he is also the ideal celibate,¹ and so he guards them from the ravages of passion whilst worshipping.

So helpful to the worshipper is Hanumān, that one often finds outside the main shrine a life-size image of the god in a separate cell. In any case the image is painted red, in whole or in part, and worshipped every Tuesday and Saturday² by pouring oil on the big toe of the right foot (which is over Panoti), for this foot of the god was once accidentally wounded.

On the other side of the doorway facing the north³ is the image of Gāneśa, the elephant-headed son of Śiva. This image is so auspicious, that it may never look towards the ill-omened south. Gāneśa keeps away obstacles that might hinder the worshippers at their devotions.

The Threshold of the inner shrine is raised about a foot above the level of the plinth. On it are carved two mysterious flat animal faces, with or without legs supporting them. The writer has had many explanations of these two creatures given to her, for they are to be found not only in every Śaiva but also in every Jaina temple. She has been told, for instance, that they represent the evil passions which the worshipper must leave outside ere he can enter the inner shrine. Another explanation which was given to her in a temple where they had been reddened and worshipped (this is very rarely done)

¹ It is as the ideal celibate that his image is put in so many monasteries and boarding-schools. Monier Williams seems to miss these other characteristics of Hanumān. Brāhmanism and Hinduism, p. 221.
² Sometimes only on Saturdays.
³ In some shrines one finds Hanumān and Gāneśa on the same wall as the doorway, not at right angles to it.
was that they represented two of the Gaṇa or troops, over which Gaṇeṣa is lord. The wife of a Ruling Chief who is well known for her interest in religious matters told the writer that she always looked on them as the two tigers belonging to Śiva and his Śakti, and it is certainly true that Śiva is represented as sitting on a tiger-skin, while his terrible female power rides on a living tiger. The latest explanation the writer has received is that they are two ‘white horses’, waves or billows of the sea. The able Indian architect who told her this pointed out that the threshold was raised in order to pen in the water when the liṅga was ceremonially submerged, and it was over these ‘white horses’ that the water would come lapping when it overflowed the threshold. On the other hand, many Indian friends have told her that those two mysterious animals are purely ornamental. The entrance gate to a chief’s house is always guarded by stone lions, and it, like the doorway to this inner shrine, is called ‘the lions’ doorway’. These may therefore simply be a sign of the god’s royal state.

Sometimes on either side of the doorway are cut the standing figures of Indra and Indrāṇī, but these are not nearly so common as the two mysterious animals.

The writer has always been permitted to come up to this raised threshold of the inner shrine, but never to pass beyond it. It is noticeable that no one who does cross it ever puts his foot on the threshold itself. Standing at the doorway, however, one can easily move from side to side so as to see every part of the inner shrine.

In the centre of the floor, and on the same level as the outer porch, is the Liṅga itself, the rounded stone pyramid that represents the male organ of generation, under which phallic symbol the god is always worshipped.

1 The writer has never seen a woman pass the threshold, though she has been told that they do so.
2 Some say this is because the threshold is the seat of Gaṇeṣa, others that it is the dwelling-place of the Gaṇa, of whom he is the lord (Gaṇapati).
There are two types of liṅga: the Svayambhū which comes up by itself from the ground and is the most holy, the most miraculous, and the most dangerous to touch. Wherever a Svayambhū liṅga appears, a temple should if possible be built over it.\(^1\) The other type of liṅga, called the Sthāpita, is either found on the banks of the Narbadā, already rounded by the action of the stream, or else is freshly manufactured by a mason from a block of marble or black stone.

The whole legend that explains why the god Śiva is always worshipped under the phallic symbol is too impure to write here,\(^2\) for the writer is deliberately trying to record the nobler side of ritual Hinduism (the only fair way to judge any religion); but the story ends by Śiva declaring: ‘My shame has killed me; but it has also given me new life and a new shape, which is that of the liṅgam! You, evil spirits, my subjects, regard it as my double self! Yes, the liṅgam is I myself, and I ordain that men shall offer to it henceforth their sacrifices and worship. Those who honour me under the symbol of the liṅgam shall obtain, without fail, the object of all their desires and a place in Kailāsa. . . . Let my priests go and teach these truths to men, and compel them to embrace the worship of my liṅgam.’\(^3\)

But though the god is thus always worshipped under the livery of his shame, his pictures or his statues may be found in other parts of the temple. Sometimes he is represented as a white god, blue-throated, wearing snakes and a garland of skulls, with three eyes and four hands. In one of his four hands is a trident, his particular sign (which is painted in red on the outside of his temple and which marks every country shrine dedicated to one of his female principles); in another a

---

\(^1\) Sometimes this is very difficult to manage; for instance, in the riverbed in Rājkot there is a Svayambhū liṅga, round which a masonry platform has been built, since it was impossible to build a temple in a frequently flooded area.

\(^2\) The English reader will find one version of the legend recorded in Dubois, *Manners and Customs*, 3rd ed., pp. 620 ff.

\(^3\) Dubois, *loc. cit.*, p. 630.
musical instrument; in the third a human skull, and in the fourth an axe.

We have already seen that in some rich temples on certain great festivals, such as Śivarātri, and every Monday in Śrāvana, the liṅga is dressed in a mask of gold or silver, a necklace, and a turban. All of these are kept in the temple ready for use, and it is most interesting to note that in many parts of India the shape of the turban changes in every native State, so as to be the ‘national’ turban of that particular State.

The liṅga is set in a stone Yoni, which represents the female organ. Philosophically the liṅga is thought of as representing the primaevval male from whom the race was evolved (purusa), and the yoni represents the primaevval female, or nature (prakṛiti, procreatrix). The liṅga and yoni are so arranged that any water poured on to the liṅga drains off through the yoni into a narrow drain, which ends outside the inner shrine in a cow’s-mouth or some other animal’s head ¹ not unlike a mediaeval gargoyle.

The visitor may next notice a movable metal Snakṣ, whose body is twined perhaps once or thrice round the base of the liṅga, and whose hood shelters the top of the liṅga. This serpent is sometimes said to represent Māyā, illusion. Sometimes it is explained as the attribute of the forest-dweller.

If the reader is visiting the temple during the hot weather (from Śivarātri ² to the second of Āśāḍha), he will notice that above the liṅga there is suspended by a metal chain from the centre of the roof of the inner shrine a pierced metal Water-pot, from which water slowly trickles on to the apex of the liṅga. As clarified butter is offered to Agni, so water should be offered to Śiva to keep him in a state of coolness and calmness. Some people say that the poison the god swallowed, and still has in his throat, makes him always thirsty, but it should

¹ Sometimes a tiger’s; in a temple near Porbandar a crocodile forms the gargoyle.
² Sometimes the water-vessel is put in position after Holi instead of after Śivarātri.
be noticed that the water-vessel is only hung up during the hot weather.

Behind the liṅga on the wall facing the east is an image of Parvati, the auspicious form of the wife of Śiva. She is carved in stone, and is generally represented with four hands, in one of which she has a shell and in another a rosary; Gaṅeśa is in her third hand, whilst in her fourth is a water-vessel.¹ The goddess may or may not be robed in sāri, camisole, and petticoat, but in any case she is almost always carved only in bas-relief, and so the muslin can only rest on her.

On the side above the tiny water-drain (which, it will be remembered, ends on the other side of the wall in the cow's-mouth) is carved in bas-relief a figure of mother Ganges. It is quite true that this faces the ill-omened south, but, as the liṅga and yoni intervene, it is not inauspicious for her to look in that direction. Indeed, she is thought of as concerned with the water-course, not with the south. Strictly speaking, Śiva has only one consort, Pārvatī, but sometimes the Ganges (which, as may be remembered, fell from heaven on to the matted hair of the ascetic) is regarded as a second consort.

In the inner shrine there may be another image of Pārvatī in one of her countless forms as Ambā, Annapūrṇā, Kālī, or Durgā, or the walls may be decorated with pictures or frescoes. (You frequently see such things as a picture of Kṛiṣṇa, a symbolic outline of the sacred cow, or a photo of the reigning Śankarācārya; but here again variations are endless.)

Passing now to the Outside and walking round the shrine, we may find there three carved niches on each of the three sides, containing images of Gaṅeśa, or perhaps Indra; Viṣṇu, or perhaps the four-faced Brahmā; Śiva with Pārvatī holding Gaṅeśa in her lap; or a Rishi. But these are very variable, and occasionally instead three Śaktis of Śiva are depicted in these outside niches.

Sometimes on the plinth or in the porch, or even in the inner shrine, will be the stone on which the yellow powder for

¹ These adjuncts often differ.
making the auspicious dots is rubbed and prepared. This, the writer has been told in two temples, but in two only, is looked on as Brahmā; she has never been able to get this strange statement confirmed elsewhere.

By now we shall know enough to be able to understand the actual worship offered in a Śiva temple.

The officiants, or Pujāris, are, as a rule, most friendly and only too willing to explain everything. It is difficult to differentiate them from the ordinary worshippers, as all are alike clad only in clean loin-cloth and sacred thread, and wear a necklace of thirty-two rudra-beads.

In every temple there should be two officiants. One should be a Brāhman who knows and performs his six daily duties, and who is allowed to marry and perform his duties as a householder. He undergoes no initiation, but the proprietor or committee of the temple may examine him, or depute a learned Brāhman to examine him, in the details of temple ritual.

In a small temple he is paid about a hundred rupees a year, but he also gets presents of food or clothing (of course not previously offered to the god) from the regular worshippers. In a big temple he might become a rich man, but, because he takes pay, he is not held in high esteem by other Brāhmans, who could never, for instance, touch his feet in reverence, as they would the feet of a guru.

One of the writer's personal friends, a Vedantist and philosopher, can be found in the early morning and in the evening performing the duties of pujāri in a temple, but during the day he occupies a position of trust in a Government office.

As no Brāhman is allowed to eat the offering, or to remove the flowers and leaves placed on the liṅga, the second officiant

1 In a Śvāmī Nārāyaṇa temple the officiant must never speak to a woman. It is well to remember this, for Indians are naturally so courteous that it really worries them not to be able to reply.

2 Except a Tripoḍhaṇa Brāhman, who can touch the flowers and eat the offering, though he is not an Atīta.
should be an *Atita*, an ascetic who has fallen away from his high estate, and by marrying has become involved again in the things of this world and so again takes an interest in the *Karma-mārga*, and temple-worship in particular. But because he has once been an ascetic, he has 'passed beyond' to where he has done with caste and can eat the offering and touch the flowers.¹

An *Atita* is regarded as degraded, since he has fallen morally, broken his vows and returned to the world, but he is not untouchable. His children are also called *Atita*, even if they never attempted to become ascetics, and so gradually a caste has sprung up called *Atita*, from whom these secondary officiants are drawn.

If the temple is not rich and can only afford one attendant, he is generally an *Atita*, because he can do everything that needs to be done.

In any case, however, a temple officiant is not, as a rule, a man held in high honour, and very often the long hours without enough to do—unless the officiant has some other profession—leads to the taking of opium or smoking dry hemp. As a body they are not learned.²

The formal *Worship of Śiva* should be performed three times a day; he should also be awakened in the mornings, though this is not counted as worship. Very often he is only worshipped twice in the day during ordinary months, and thrice during the sacrosanct month of Śrāvana.

In ordinary months the officiant in a small temple is generally paid between ten and twelve rupees a month, and only given about four or five annas daily for the materials for wor-

¹ There are four classes of ascetics from whom *Atita* can be drawn: Tirtha, Āśrama, Sarasvati, Pārvata.
² A proverb says that there are six professions, by adopting any of which a Brāhman loses respect and is regarded almost as a Śūdra: earning his living by the sword (i.e. as highwayman, thief, or soldier); selling ink or doing anything else that is black, e.g. blacksmith’s work, or selling charcoal; acting as an officiant in a temple, or becoming a village priest and begging from every house in the village irrespective of caste; washing clothes; going on errands for the rich; cooking for wages.
ship, so he often performs the worship perfunctorily and cheaply. But during Śrāvaṇa a rich gentleman often gives an extra officiant seven and a half rupees to perform worship for his benefit, besides the materials needed, and also during this month the temple patron would on four separate days (i.e. the Mondays) provide the temple officiant with all the raw materials for his own daily food: grain, rice, sugar, and clarified butter. So we will watch the officiant at work on some morning in Śrāvaṇa, for then the worship is more carefully performed.

The god should be awakened before sunrise, but before waking him the officiant should bathe, perform his own Sandhyā, and wash the inner shrine, being very careful not to touch the liṅga. Then, to rouse the god, kettle-drums are beaten, bells rung, and a conch-shell blown.

Morning Worship.

About 7.30 a.m. the morning worship is performed. The worshippers must have performed their morning bathing duties and worship and come wearing only loin-cloth of silk or freshly washed cotton, sacred thread, and rosary of thirty-two or a hundred and eight rudra seeds, and bearing in their hands a brass vessel of pure water.

The officiant’s body ought to be, but is not always, marked with three horizontal lines of ashes in eighteen different places. He sometimes wears a folded cloth over his shoulder, so that, if he happens to touch his own body during the performance of the worship, and so makes his hands unclean and has to wash them, he may be able to dry them at once.

The officiant begins by worshipping all the things in the outer shrine; the order varies in different localities, but the ritual that the writer has most usually seen followed is that the officiant (and after him, or together with him, the other worshippers) first marks the big Bell in the porch with sandal-

---

1 For interesting local differences see Monier Williams, Brāhmanism and Hinduism, p. 93; Bombay Gazetteer, vol. ix, p. 341.
wood, and then proceeds to worship Ganașa. The Atīta has already removed the flowers of the day before, and the officiant either washes the whole idol of Ganașa, or else sprinkles water on the right foot, repeating, as he does so, appropriate mantras, asking the god to accept the gifts to be offered, and to be propitious. He then, with his auspicious third finger, marks the forehead of the god with sandal-wood and puts flowers on the head of the god. In a rich temple the officiant might wash the idol with the five nectars, throw white and red scented powder on the flowers, and offer the full fivefold worship, but in an ordinary way only the threefold worship of washing, marking, and offering flowers is given to the subsidiary symbols and deities. Ganașa can only be washed once, but each worshipper as he comes in can, if he so choose, offer flowers and make the auspicious mark on the idol.

In the same way the Bull is worshipped, being washed entirely, or just between the two horns; the auspicious mark is made either between these horns or on the bull’s forehead, flowers are placed on the head, and appropriate mantras repeated.

In worshipping the god Hanumān the same three things are done, the feet only being worshipped and the mark made on the forehead, while the same mantras are repeated.

The Tortoise in front of the Bull is then worshipped, its back is washed and marked with sandal-wood, mantras are repeated, and flowers placed on it.

In some temples, but by no means in all, the stone on which the sandal-wood paste is prepared is worshipped in the same way.

1 According to others, the Bull should be worshipped before Ganașa. Sometimes the first thing that is done is the Worship of the Sun. The officiant takes the little brass vessel and the brass spoon outside the porch and, standing on the platform, pours five spoonfuls of water towards the sun, flicks sandal-wood paste towards it, and then throws oleander blossoms to it.

2 The writer has heard this worship of the sandal-wood stone (Orașiya) alluded to as worshipping Brahmā, but in all the numberless temples she has visited she has only heard this said twice.
The officiant next enters the inner shrine, being extremely careful not to step on the high threshold as he does so.

Within the shrine of a Śvayambhū linga a lamp is often kept burning day and night, some rich pious person meeting the expense.

All the old flowers have already been removed by the Atita, so the officiant proceeds at once to the worship of Pārvati, the wife of Śiva, whose fourhanded image faces the entrance to the shrine. The goddess often wears a bespangled muslin skirt, bodice, and little shawl head-dress. On great days these are removed, and she is washed by the officiant with five nectars, and richer clothes are put on her, first the skirt, then the bodice, and then the shawl. But on ordinary days only the two big toes are bathed in water, the left toe being washed first (because she is a female deity, whereas with male deities the right toe is washed first) and marked with sandal-wood; an auspicious mark, either in sandal-wood or in red turmeric, is next made on her forehead, and flowers are put on her head. If possible, a garland of flowers should be hung round her neck. Appropriate mantras are repeated, asking the goddess to be propitious and to accept the worship.

This done, the officiant moves over to the image of Gāṅgā (Ganges) if there be one on the wall, presiding over the water exit, and worships it in the same way.

The rule is that the attendant gods, goddesses, and things

---

1 Others, however, say Śiva is worshipped first, and then Pārvati.
2 In very simple shrines she and her dress are often just carved in stone.
3 In a temple belonging to the Left-handed sect of Śakti worshippers Pārvati’s image is often surrounded by a glittering framework.
4 As a rule, no ordinary worshipper, but only the officiant, is allowed to wash her, but she is not bathed behind a curtain.
5 The writer’s pandits insist that this is the correct ritual, but the writer herself is bound to say that she has practically always, even on ordinary days, seen all Pārvati’s clothes removed and the whole image washed with water, dried, and then dressed in the same clothes again, no special attention being paid to the toes.
6 The image of this goddess, unlike that of Pārvati, is not invariably present.
used in worship must all be worshipped before the liṅga itself.¹

So now, before the great act of worship to the liṅga itself can be performed, all the accessories must be worshipped.

First the brass vessel for holding water, the small sanctuary bell, and the pierced pot through which the water drops on to the liṅga (if it be the hot weather) are all worshipped separately in turn in the threefold way by sprinkling with water, marking with sandal-wood, and putting flowers in or on each, whilst the appropriate mantras are said. The officiant then removes the metal snake from the liṅga, washes it with water, polishes it if dirty, marks it with sandal-wood, replaces it, and puts blossoms on its head. It is only now when the snake has been replaced that the real worship begins.

In this, the Worship of the Liṅga, the ordinary worshipper can join with the officiant, if in a state of ceremonial purity, but no woman can ever perform it, although she might have marked the other idols with the auspicious mark and, entering the inner shrine, might even, it is said, wash the toe of Pārvatī and Gaṅgā and drop a flower on to the head of the liṅga from a distance;² taking elaborate precautions not to touch the symbol.

The officiant and the male worshippers performed the other acts of worship standing; now, however, they all sit for this, the great moment of their ritual.

After sitting down, the officiant, and the worshippers after him, sip water three times,³ perform the breathing exercises,⁴ and then say to themselves:⁵ 'I (so and so) on (such and

 ignorant officiants, however, often break this rule. The beginner, by the way, must be on the look-out, not only for local differences, but for real mistakes made by un instructed temple officiants. Quite recently the writer saw the liṅga worshipped before Gaṅgā and, on asking a learned old guru who stood beside her why that was done, got the answer: 'Because the officiant is mad, quite mad; every one is mad in Kālīhiāwār. But how did you know he was making a mistake? Are you a German, or an American?'³

³ Her pandits assure the writer that a woman could do this, but she has never herself seen it done, though she knows a very distinguished lady who is reported to do so.

¹ Aṭamanā. ⁴ Prāṇāyāma. ⁵ Nyāsa.
such) a day shall begin the worship of (such and such) a god'.

The officiant proceeds to install the different gods in the different parts of his body, and finally strikes the first and the second fingers of his right hand on to his left palm, saying to himself as he does so: 'Harmful creatures, be ye far from me'.

Before going further, he engages in Meditation on the līṅga and, closing his eyes, says to himself: 'I fix my mind on the great god Śiva, who is absolutely bright, whose crown is as bright as the moon, whose body has the shining brightness of jewels, who has an axe in his hand to destroy the worldly worries of his worshippers, who is self-controlled and helps his worshippers to exercise self-control, and who protects his worshippers from harm and grants them all their desires, who sits cross-legged, surrounded by all gods who pray to him, who is the creator of the universe, who is to be adored by the universe, and who has five faces and three eyes'.

The officiant next proceeds to the Bathing of the līṅga, washing it with his hand, and pouring water on it from a brass or copper vessel with a brass or copper spoon. If there are other worshippers present after the officiant has done so, they also pour water from their spoons, or direct from their vessels, on to the līṅga, repeating as they do so, if they know it, the appropriate mantra which declares the water to be as holy as that from the holiest of rivers, and asking the god to accept it. This, like every other mantra, has to begin with the word Om, but if the worshippers do not know the appropriate mantras, they just say 'Om! Salutation to the god Śiva, Om!'

They then pour milk, curds, clarified butter, honey, and sugar over the līṅga. Sometimes each ingredient is poured separately, sometimes they are mixed together and poured in one stream over the līṅga. It is also immaterial whether they are poured

1 Saṅkalpa.
2 Never from a bronze vessel or a bronze spoon. Bronze is never used in worship.
direct from a vessel, or ladled out with a spoon on to the liṅga.

But if the clarified butter has been brought separately, it is considered very important that it should never be touched by the finger-nails, and so it is often ladled out with a flower.

After this is all completed, the liṅga is washed again with water, and the serpent, if it has not been washed before, is removed and washed now. The observer should note that all this laving and bathing is done quite openly, and not behind a curtain, as would have been the case in a Vaiṣṇava temple.

If it is a great day, and the full ritual is being offered, as soon as the liṅga is washed, a small sandal-wood mark (not the big one) is made on it, one or two blossoms and a bilva leaf are put on it, an incense-stick is waved in front of it, and a lamp lighted. Then water, even if it is not the hot weather, is put into the pierced vessel which is suspended over the liṅga, and it is allowed to drop for some considerable time, perhaps an hour, on to the symbol, until it is thoroughly washed, and if the officiant be a learned man, he sits all that time repeating mantras in a low voice.

But on ordinary days this can be omitted, and in a small temple the officiant often passes straight from the first washing with water to the Sandal-wood Marking.

To mark the idol, the officiant draws three lines, with two fingers of his right hand¹ held closely together, round the liṅga from right to left.

Then Rice grains, unbroken and carefully washed, are either placed or thrown ² on the liṅga.

Next Blossoms are placed on the liṅga: these may be oleander, roses, jasmine, or marigolds, but never the lying ketaki.

On the top of the blossoms one or two bilva leaves are arranged, and scented white and red Powder are piled on the blossoming heap.

¹ The left hand is not used in worship.
² A woman can throw rice on the liṅga.
When this is all arranged, an *Incense-stick* is waved, and the small sanctuary bell\(^1\) is rung whilst the waving is going on.

Each act has its appropriate mantras, there being separate ones for the rice, the flowers, the powder, and the incense waving, and now a fresh mantra is repeated, whilst a little lamp is lit and offered, and the bell is again rung.

Now all is ready for the *Offering*. This offering is called *Naivedya* before it has been eaten by the god, but once it has been accepted and eaten by him, it turns into *Praśāda*. The Brāhmans themselves consider this distinction of great importance, but the writer has never seen the distinction stated anywhere. She may perhaps be able to make it clear to her reader by quoting what her pañḍit said: 'The god eats the offering as Naivedya, the worshipper\(^2\) eats it as Praśāda'.

At this time no cooked food is offered to the god, but such things as cloves, spices, areca-nut, betel leaf, lump sugar, fruits, grapes, milk. Any or all of these are arranged on a plantain-leaf or on a plate and put in front of the linga.

After the ceremony *Atīta* or *Tapodhana* Brāhmans would eat this offering as Praśāda. (No one, as we have seen, but the god ever has the opportunity of eating it as Naivedya.)

As it is *uncooked*, sometimes children eat it, but before doing so they ascertain very carefully if at the north-east corner of the inner shrine there is or is not an image of Čaṇḍeśvara, the fierce leader of Siva's servants; if that is present, then, even although the food were uncooked, no child would eat it. Of course, if the food is cooked, no child would touch it even if there were no sign of an image of Čaṇḍeśvara; cooked food offered to Śiva is too dangerous and too inauspicious for any but an Atīta or a Tapodhana to eat, and if none are present it can be given to cows.\(^3\)

An *Offering* is also made: some coin—a pice will do—must

---

1. If there be no bell in the sanctuary, some worshipper rattles his spoon against the sides of his brass vessel whilst the incense is being waved.
2. In this case, of course, an Atīta.
3. The writer has seen the uncooked food given in some temples to cows, in others to dogs; but rigorists do not approve of this.
be offered to the god, either with Naivedya or afterwards. If no worshipper provides the coin, the officiant gives it himself.

Next comes the Waving of the Fivefold Lamp (Arati). When the offering is completed, the officiant takes up a fivefold lamp, the centre wick of which is fed with camphor, the other four with clarified butter, and waves it in his right hand, either five or seven times, in front of the linga. All the time he is doing this with his right hand, he rings the small sanctuary bell with his left, and the other worshippers ring the big bell, rattle the spoons in their brass vessels, or, if the temple possesses them, bang and beat the kettle-drums; whilst with his mouth the officiant repeats loudly a mantra in praise of the god Śiva.

This is followed by the waving of the fivefold lamp in front of the attendant gods and goddesses. The officiant either goes and stands directly in front of their images to do this, or just waves it in their direction. Strictly speaking, the lamp should be waved first in front of the feet of an idol, next in front of the body, and lastly in front of the head.

The flaming lamp is then very often put on the threshold of the inner shrine, and worshippers in ordinary dress, who are standing outside in the porch, stretch out their hands towards it. One of the beliefs about this fivefold lamp is that its light guards the linga, the goddesses, and the worshippers from the attacks of demons, so it is only logical that more attention should be paid to it in the evening, when the demon-haunted time of night is approaching, than in the day.

Flow-er-throwing follows. When he has put the lamp down, the officiant stands and holds some blossoms between his hands whilst he repeats a mantra from the Rig-veda. As soon as he has finished, he throws the flowers on to the linga. The other worshippers also throw blossoms on to the linga, without, however, repeating the mantra.

1 The writer has noticed that her friends amongst the priests always say to her: 'Don't hold out your hands to the ārati', as though that would be an act of disloyalty to her spiritual King.
This is followed by ceremonial Circumambulation. The officiant alone may circumambulate (or rather partially circumambulate) the liṅga inside the inner shrine. The other worshippers must walk round on the outside of the shrine, being very careful, as they do so, not to walk between the bull and the liṅga at which it is gazing, unless the presence of the carved tortoise has already broken the connexion, in which case they will pass closely round the inner shrine; but if no tortoise be there, they will make a longer circuit and pass round outside the bull. But neither inside nor outside the shrine will officiant or worshipper ever step across the water-channel which carries away the water that has been poured on to the liṅga and has drained down to the yoni. (The belief is that this water is both sacred and highly dangerous.) The officiant inside and the worshippers outside the shrine begin the circumambulation with their right hand towards the liṅga, but as soon as they reach the channel (which passes first across the inner shrine and then across the outer plinth, till it reaches the edge of the platform and spills the water on to the ground) they retrace their steps and walk back to the starting-place in front of the entrance. From there they begin anew, this time, however, walking with their left hand towards the liṅga.

They repeat this divided circumambulation once or twice. The very devout stoop down each time they reach the water-channel and, dipping their third finger into it, put drops of the water on their eyes (to gain divine vision) and on their heads (to give them divine knowledge). Some also touch the outside wall of the inner shrine above the water-channel with a drop of water.²

¹ The rule is that circumambulation should be done once to Śakti, seven times to Sūrya, three times to Gaṅeśa, four times to Viṣṇu; only half a circumambulation is done to Śiva, though this half is repeated.
² The circumambulation may often be done in comfort in the open air outside the shrine on the plinth of the temple. On one occasion at a certain place of pilgrimage the writer was permitted to explore a covered-in passage which had been built outside the shrine for the purpose of circumambulation. The exit for the water had been so arranged that the worshipper on reaching it, instead of having to turn back, crawled
In the case of other gods, such as Viṣṇu, the worshippers sip the water in which the god’s feet have been washed, but no one dare drink the water in which Śiva’s liṅga has been bathed; such water (like the flowers that have been offered to Śiva) is called nirmālya,¹ whereas the water in which one of the avatāra of Viṣṇu (Raṁa or Kṛiṣṇa) has been washed is called caranāmrita and is devoutly sipped by his worshippers, who consider it as holy as food that has been offered to him (i.e. prasāda).

The drinking of the water in which the beloved has been bathed is common in India. Very devout disciples drink the water in which their guru’s foot has been washed, and a very loving and submissive wife sometimes drinks the water in which the left toe of her husband has been washed.

The Telling of the Rosary follows² the ceremonial circumambulation. The officiant and any other worshippers who desire to do so sit near the liṅga in the inner shrine³ and tell their beads. They close their eyes and put their right hands into a bag (often red in colour), resembling an enormous edition of an infant’s fingerless glove, which has, however, a separate division for the thumb. The hand is placed in this in order that it may be hidden, and the rosary is so held that it passes over the second finger (for, of course, it must not touch the inauspicious first finger) and is moved by the thumb. There are one hundred and eight seeds of the Rudrākṣa on the rosary, and each time that a bead, or rather seed, is moved, the teller says: ‘Salutation to the god Śiva’. Worshippers tell their beads as often as time allows, sometimes once, sometimes thrice, and sometimes ten times.

under it. The passage itself was so narrow that you touched the walls on either side as you walked, and being pitch dark terrified the hapless researcher with a very present dread of snake-bite!

¹ It is interesting to compare with this the food offered in a Jaina temple, which is called devadrauṇya.
² The writer has also seen the rosary told before instead of after circumambulation.
³ In most temples there would not be room enough for more than three or four worshippers within the inner shrine.
At the completion of the rosary each teller pours a little water from his brass vessel, or from the spoon, on to the base of the linga.

Then, with their hands joined together in the attitude of prayer, the worshippers sit for some considerable, though varying, time, and sing Hymns in praise of the god.

At the end of the hymn-singing each worshipper takes one of the Flowers or a bilva leaf from the pile arranged on the top of the linga and touches with it successively his eyes, his head, and his breast, and then throws it away with meticulous care into the farthest corners of the shrine, where no one would ever be likely to tread on it. So full is it of power, danger, and sacredness, that, if any one did tread on a flower that had been offered to Śiva and so had become nirmálya, he would for ever lose the power of motion.

This closes the special morning worship; any worshipper who gets up early enough can go through most of it, sitting beside the officiant and sharing the worship and the merit with him. The merit gained by morning worship is very considerable, for any who go in the morning and gaze on the face of the god and circumambulate his symbol burn up thereby all their sins committed during the night; but the merit is not restricted to those who worship at the same time as the officiant. These are limited to three or four; but all through the morning one sees worshippers, who have bathed, performed Sandhyā, and put on ceremonially pure clothes, coming to the temple, copper pot in hand, to perform their own individual worship.

As they enter the temple, they ring the outer bell, touch the bull’s head (to make him shake his invisible rope and so draw the god’s attention to the worshipper), step carefully over the threshold, and, entering the inner shrine, mark the linga with sandal-wood, drop flowers on it, sprinkle it with water, circumambulate the outer side of the inner shrine and retire, touching the bell again.

Worshippers who come wearing their ordinary clothes take

---

1 Śiva temples do not seem to have the store room for special clothes.
off their shoes, touch the bell and the bull, and then bow to the linga from a distance with hands joined, or sometimes (though one sees this done more often in the evenings) prostrate themselves to the linga, repeating mantras as they do so. The worshippers in ordinary dress are not permitted to enter the inner shrine. If, however, such men are gentlemen of position, the officiant from within the shrine sometimes offers them, as they stand without at the threshold, a blossom or bilva leaf taken from the linga. They touch their eyes, head, and breast with it and then hand it back to the officiant, who himself throws it safely into a far corner.

Women pass in and out during the day, depositing a coin and a handful of grain on the threshold of the inner shrine. These are collected by the officiant and given to the trustees of the temple every night. As a rule the grain or the rice thus given in a Śiva temple is either thrown to pigeons or given to an Atita; but sometimes merchants, asking no questions as to the particular shrine at which it was offered, buy the grain and rice from a big temple and sell it in open market. One rule holds good for all worshippers, whether men or women: in whatever dress they come, they may never appear empty-handed before their god.

During the holy month of Śrāvaṇa devout people sometimes pay four annas a day for the morning worship to be performed for their benefit. Sometimes, too, at the great festivals they provide clarified butter enough to fill a hundred lamps to be burnt in the temple.

Midday, Afternoon, and Evening Worship.

In some Śiva temples Midday worship is always performed, in other smaller temples it is only offered during the holy

that one sees in a Jaina temple. Nor does the rule hold good with Brāhmans as it does with Jaina, that any money in their pockets at the time of worship must be given to the temple service. The writer has not yet heard Brāhmans repeat Nisahā or Avassahā, which Jaina say on entering and leaving a temple, words that would delight the author of Les Rites de Passage in the clear way they first cut the worshippers off from the world and then allow them to enter it again.
month of Śrāvaṇa, whilst in many temples it never takes place.

Where it is performed, it consists of the offering to the god of cooked food\(^1\) such as the worshipper himself likes to eat. It is offered between eleven and twelve, i.e. before the officiant has himself breakfasted.

The special interest of this midday worship and its insistence that the officiant shall be fasting is the likeness it bears to Christian ideas of fasting communion. As this is a point which the writer has never seen mentioned elsewhere, she may perhaps be allowed to explain it in full.

The officiant prepares a tray of food as rich as the temple funds permit, and this he offers to the god as breakfast, but it would be accounted sin if the officiant first breakfasted himself, even though the food for his breakfast had been placed separately on a separate tray.

If the officiant had breakfasted himself, the food he offered to the god would no longer be \(\text{naivedya}\) but \(\text{ucchiṣṭa}\), a remnant of food ceremonially impure.

In the same way in an Indian house a trustworthy cook would not think it respectful to put some food on a separate plate whilst he was cooking, and eat from that separate plate before his master had eaten his breakfast.\(^2\)

The emphasis of this fasting communion does not lie in the fact that the officiant has taken no food since the previous midnight, and so has an empty stomach; for he may take his early cup of tea, since this is not a meal that he is going to offer the god; but it lies in this, that he must not partake of

\(^1\) Some see in this offering of food to the god a trace of the influence of Viṣṇu worship.

\(^2\) The writer received a pathetic illustration of the strength of this belief since these words were written. Her old cook, the faithful servant and friend of a dozen years, lay dying. They brought him the soup she had had specially prepared for him, but he waved it aside and declined to touch it till his master and mistress should have begun their dinner. When it was urged that the mistress herself wished him to try and take the soup while it was still hot, he replied: 'It would ill become me to dine before my mistress'. And not till they could assure him that we had half finished dinner would he taste the soup.
the particular meal he is going to offer the god until the god has first eaten of it, for if he touched a morsel of it, albeit from a separate dish on a separate tray, the meal offered to the god would be a 'remnant', not an 'offering', and so ceremonially impure.

It may make for clearness if we put the names of the offerings together here.

Food offered to the gods is Naivedya.

Food accepted by the Vaiṣṇava gods is Prasāda.

Food accepted by the god Śiva is Nirnālya as regards the offerer.

Food of which the officiant has already eaten is Ucchīṣṭa.

And now to watch the actual midday worship. If the officiant has performed the full morning worship, there is no obligation on him to offer flowers, sandal-wood marking, or incense again, though he may do so if he wishes. In no case, however, can he bathe the liṅga again with water at midday, but he must light the lamp in the inner shrine if it has gone out.

As we have already seen, the main point of the midday worship is the offering of food. The officiant himself prepares with scrupulous care, or gets his wife or some one of Brāhman caste (not an Atīta) to prepare, such food as rice pudding, laddus, curry and rice, pulse, chutney, vegetables, pickles, curds and milk, if the temple be a rich one, or if a poor one, just pulse and rice, bread with one vegetable, and milk. All the food is arranged in separate little dishes and put on one tray, together with some betel-leaf and areca-nut.

The officiant then sprinkles with water a square of ground within the inner shrine, just in front of the liṅga, and places the tray on this purified ground. On the tray he then puts a bilva leaf. The officiant, having deposited the tray, stands erect outside the shrine, holding a piece of cloth in front of him, so that he cannot watch the god eating, and rings a bell.

1 If the offering had been made to Viṣṇu or one of his avatāra, a tulasi leaf would have been substituted for the bilva leaf.

2 In a Viṣṇu temple a curtain is drawn in front of the door of the inner shrine whilst the god eats, and also when he is washed or sleeps.
He waits for a moment or two till the god has finished eating, then, dropping the piece of cloth, removes the tray and hands it to an Atita. The Atita transfers all the food from the god's dishes into his own vessels, giving back the empty ones to the officiant, and finally the ground in front of the linga is again purified.

Great merit is gained by going to a temple at noon: indeed, the saying is that by worshipping at midday the sins committed since birth are destroyed.

In some Śiva temples the doors of the inner shrine are closed from twelve to four,1 whilst the god rests.

Sometimes in the Afternoon a learned Brāhman reads in the outer porch to a congregation of women, who are then free from their household duties. He reads from some religious book, such as the Śiva Purāṇa, the Bhagavadgītā, the Mahābhārata, or the Rāmāyaṇa. In return the women each give him a handful of grain, or a pice.

Evening Worship is offered in the temples at twilight. The rule runs rather prettily: 'As soon as the first star can be discerned in the heavens, worship should be offered to the gods; as soon as the first lamp is brought into a room, reverence should be paid to it and to every senior present'.

The Atita removes the old flowers from the images of Ganesa, Hanumān, the tortoise, and the bull,2 and then, going into the inner shrine, removes all the old blossoms and bilva leaves from there also; but as the linga must never be left without a blossom or a bilva leaf, a fresh specimen of each is placed on it.

The linga is washed with water, or with the five essences, is marked with sandal-wood, has incense waved in front of it, a lamp offered to it, and sometimes, but by no means invariably, milk is offered to it, as naivedya. This done, the officiant waves the fivefold lamp (ārati) in front of the linga and the

1 This again is said by some to be due to Vaiṣṇava influence.
2 If there were no Atita at the temple, the ordinary officiant would remove the flowers.
attendant deities, whilst the crowd of worshippers ring bells, play on cymbals, and bang drums, making even more noise than they did in the morning. The officiant either comes out of the shrine and waves the ārati to each worshipper, or else deposits the lamp on the threshold, and they hold out their hands to it. Much more attention is paid to ārati at night than in the morning, in order to ward off the powers of darkness.

In the evening the worshippers come in their ordinary clothes, so none of them can enter the inner shrine.

If they wished, they could offer sandal-wood, incense, light, and flowers to the bull, tortoise, Hanumān, and Ganeśa, who are all outside the inner shrine, but there is no obligation on them to do so, and, as a matter of fact, few do.

Generally they stand respectfully whilst the officiant is worshipping, and while ārati is being waved make as much noise as they can. After the evening ritual is finished, the linga is left with one blossom and one bilva leaf on it and a light burning beside it. Worshippers who could not be present at the actual evening service come in when they can to do darsana, i.e. to see the face of the god, sometimes gazing at it, sometimes prostrating themselves before it, until nine or ten o’clock, when, with more bell-ri...
temple in the evening, not only are the sins of the past seven lives destroyed, but as much positive merit is acquired as if the worshipper had offered a whole mountain of gold, or had given a lākh\(^1\) of cows or five crores\(^1\) of horses.

The reason why so much merit is then gained is that in the evening all the thirty-three crores\(^1\) of gods come to the temple, and simply going to gaze at the līṅga is accounted as meritorious as gazing at each of these thirty-three crores of gods separately.

In the evening the gods themselves hold a *Divine Concert*\(^2\) (*Pradoṣa*) at which each of the great gods performs, playing on a different instrument. Sarasvati plays the lute, Indra a bamboo lute, Brahmā keeps time by beating his hands, Lakṣmī sings, and Viṣṇu plays small drums, whilst all the other gods stand round in a circle with joined hands.

*Varieties of Śiva Worship.*

We have described the ordinary worship in a Śiva temple, but on certain great occasions *Royal Worship* is offered.

The ritual acts are much the same, but the līṅga is covered with a mask and decorated with turban, scarf of ceremony, gariands, and jewels, whilst the whole setting of the worship is royal. Whisks are waved in front of the līṅga; all the offerings are made on silver dishes, and the water poured from a gold or silver vessel; the food is much richer in quality; the flowers offered (generally roses) are more beautiful; the sandal-wood paste has more expensive ingredients; the incense is more costly; and far more lamps are burned than usual. As more worshippers are present, more money and more gifts are offered, and so the temple recoups the outlay. Sometimes a small gold or silver umbrella is held over the līṅga. If the temple is rich enough, royal worship can be offered on any of the great festivals. A man often vows, if his friends recover

\(^1\) lākh = 100,000; 5 crores = 50,000,000; 33 crores = 330,000,000.

\(^2\) On the ceilings of temples you often see representations of these divine concerts.
from an illness, or if he gain promotion, or special success in business, to offer this royal worship, either at home or, more often, in the temple. If it is to be performed in a temple, it must be on some festival, but in fulfilment of a vow he could offer it any day in his own home in the room of the gods.

There are one or two other variations of worship that we should notice. We have described the worship in a temple where the linga was the work of men’s hands; but if the linga were Svayambhū, that is, had sprung up of itself, it would be far more holy, and far more merit would be gained by worshipping it; yet, curiously enough, the offering (prasāda) could be eaten by any Brāhmaṇa, not only by Atita. So holy is a Svayambhū linga, that under no circumstance would a woman be allowed to enter the inner shrine of its temple. Prayer offered to such a linga brings an answer more speedily and surely than that offered to a ‘graven’ image.

The writer came across in a native State an interesting variation of Śiva worship known as Samādhi-pūjā.

The late Ruling Chief had been very devout and generally immersed in meditation. When he died, he was burnt in the royal garden, and two temples to Śiva were erected. The big one was just like those we have described, but close beside it was a smaller Śiva temple on the very spot where the Rājā had been burnt, and where the fragments of his bones had been collected and buried. Inside the tiny inner shrine of this mortuary chapel were not only the linga, the image of Pārvati and the Ganges, but also a white marble model of the two feet of the late chief, separated by a lotus flower.

The little temple stands at a lower level than the bigger one, and a water-pipe conducts the water from the cow’s-mouth water-channel of the bigger temple and spills it over the linga in the inner shrine of the smaller temple. The temple is so associated with death that no ordinary Brāhmaṇa will do any worship at all there. So not only does the Atīta remove the flowers and eat the food, but he also performs the fivefold worship. No Brāhmaṇa will prepare the cooked food to be
offered; this is sent down from the palace every day, and on the occasion that the writer was present, the moment it arrived, the _Atita_ in the most perfunctory way, and making endless mistakes, performed the morning worship of washing and offering flowers to the linga, and then sat down, surrounded by dogs, to eat the trayful of curry, rice, milk pudding, and bread provided. A learned pandit who happened to be standing beside the writer, said: 'It is just a burning-ground; there is no reverence here.'

The writer discovered in an out-of-the-way village an even more interesting variation, namely, a case where _No Worship_ is permitted. In a tumbled-down corner of the town, she saw a group of eleven linga. Turning to her guide, she said: 'I suppose these are considered quite powerless now, and that is why they are neglected.' 'Powerless indeed!' he replied, 'they are so powerful that they won't permit us to worship them; they won't even allow us to build up this part of the village.' And then, delighted to get a new auditor, he proceeded to recite what was evidently the experience of his life. He, a man of the blood royal, of proved courage, a magnificent horseman, a strong swimmer, and an officer of constabulary, resolved that he would disregard the prohibition and worship these dreaded linga. Every day on his way back from bathing he used to worship them and pour water over them. All went well, till one night in a vision two yellow and black snakes seemed to follow him as he left the river after bathing. There was but one road that he could take, and at its entrance these two fearsome snakes erected themselves into an arch of horror. Their awful bodies formed the base and the sides of the arch, and the top was formed by their venomous heads, all ready to bite. He knew he must pass through this terrible archway, and the horror and the fear of it were killing him, when suddenly he saw an ascetic. He called on the holy man to save him, and the sādhu imperatively ordered the snakes to be gone. The reptiles fled, and, as the man in his vision passed safely homeward, the sādhu com-
manded him never again to venture to worship those terrific and mysterious linga.

This injunction, however, was in violation of the accepted rule that a linga should never be left unworshipped.

At Ačalesvara on Mount Ābu there is a most interesting variation, for there in the Śaiva temple, instead of the linga, the Great Toe of Śiva's right foot is worshipped.

In the inner shrine the yoni is set as usual, but in the centre of this yoni is a deep cavity. The writer was not, of course, permitted to step inside the shrine to look down it, but a most friendly officiant assured her that at the bottom of the cavity was a model of a toe. To this toe full Śaiva worship was offered: during the hot weather a water-vessel was suspended over it, flowers and bilva leaves were dropped on it, and on great days it was decked in a mask, turban, and scarf of ceremony.

But the varieties of Śiva worship must be innumerable, and the student must watch for them himself.

If we have got really friendly with the officiant at the temple, he may tell us of a third sort of worship that is sometimes, though very rarely, offered in a Śaiva Temple.

We have studied the Ordinary worship and the Royal worship, but there yet remains the highest offering of all, the Kamala-pūjā or Human Sacrifice.

There is no limit to the efficacy of this greatest offering, and the officiant will very likely tell you the following well-known story to prove it.

Once upon a time in Kāthiāwār there was a king who, though one of the Ruling Chiefs of that province, yet suffered from excruciating headaches. He applied for relief to doctors and physicians of all types in vain, but was at last persuaded to consult a famous astrologer. This astrologer, having knowledge of all three times—past, present, and future—understood at once the reason for the Chief's sufferings. 'Sire,' said he, 'in a previous birth your majesty was a goldsmith, and you possessed a cow on which you set great store. Suddenly,
however, your cow ceased to give milk. You accused, first, the herdsman who drove her to pasture, and then several other people, of stealing her milk. Every one denied the theft, and at last you yourself followed the cow stealthily in order personally to detect the thief. What was your astonishment when you saw this, your favourite cow, stop of her own accord on a particular piece of ground, and there let down her milk! You dug, and dug deeply at that spot, till at last you discovered there the most sacred of all linga, a really Svayambhu linga. Convinced of its miraculous power, you determined to offer this most sacred symbol the most sacred of all offerings, even Kamala-pūjā. Heroically resolved, you immediately cut off your own head, and let it fall before the linga.

'You, the goldsmith, thereupon, not unnaturally, died, but your head could not be found. (It had, as a matter of fact, rolled far away, and hence could not be burned with the rest of your goldsmith's body.) But as a reward, sire, for this greatest of all Sacrifices, you were born, in your next rebirth, as a Ruling Chief—even as we now behold you—but the reason of your headache is that your goldsmith's head, when it rolled away, rolled right into a neighbouring valley and was there buried. Unfortunately, a tree has grown up so near your buried goldsmith's head that, whenever the wind sways the tree, it rubs your skull, and this causes you pain.'

The king immediately sent to the place named, had the skull dug up, kept it in a gold casket, and worshipped it.

But the benefits derived from doing Kamala-pūjā in a previous birth were not yet exhausted, as the king soon proved to his delight, for he noticed that if bullocks were tied over-night to the pillars of the room wherein the skull was kept, they had doubled by next day, and he had four well-grown bullocks, instead of two, to greet him in the morning. He sent for the astrologer a second time, who, having obtained his wife's permission,¹ came again to the court. Arrived

¹ The reason why the astrologer had to ask his wife's permission to go to court throws such a vivid light on the doctrine of karma, that it is
there, he told the king that this lucky ‘doubling’ was all owing to the favour with which Śiva regarded him as one who in a previous birth had performed Kamala-pūjā; and, in order to profit by this favour to the fullest, he told him first to build a temple where he had found the skull (the temple stands to this day), and secondly to amass greater wealth by doubling horses rather than bullocks.

The king accordingly tied horses every night to the pillars of the skull room and grew so wealthy that his house became (and at the moment of writing still is) the most influential in his part of the famous province of Kāṭhiāwār.

*Kamala-pūjā*, or ritual suicide, is still occasionally, though very seldom, done. It is said that it is never now performed by a Brāhman, but not long ago the writer was told of a case in a distant part of India.

A bard and his wife living in an out-of-the-way village were very anxious to have a child born to them. They sat and prayed and prayed for it in Śiva’s temple. Growing more and more earnest and excited, they each made a wound in their necks and allowed the blood to flow on to the liṅga, and so they sat bathing the liṅga in their own blood in a very delirium of entreaty, till at last they lost consciousness and died.

worth recording. The wife said: ‘I will allow you to go if you let me beat you one hundred and five times before you start’ (i.e. the beatings shall be seven in number for each of the fifteen days that you will be away). To the amazement and scandal of all devout Hindus the astrologer submitted, and when the king, hearing of it, asked how he could allow such a revolutionary and unheard-of reversal of a husband’s rights and privileges, he replied: ‘Sire, it is all owing to karma. In my previous birth this wife of mine was a pony with a bad open sore on her neck, and I was a crow. I used to sit on her neck and peck, and peck, and peck at the sore, until at last I ate twenty-five pounds of flesh away; finally, in agony and desperation, she rolled into the Ganges with me on her back, and we were both drowned! So now in this present birth she is permitted to beat me until she shall have beaten her twenty-five pounds of flesh off my bones!’ His friends at once saw the way to provide this female Shylock with her pounds of flesh, all unbeknown to her. They gradually and secretly mixed twenty-five pounds of the husband’s flesh into her curry, and when she had eaten the last morsel, her eyes were opened, she realized the heinousness of husband-beating, begged her lord’s forgiveness, and they both lived happily ever after!
CHAPTER XV

VIṢṆU WORSHIP AND OTHER TEMPLE CEREMONIES


Temple-Building: Foundation—Vāstu Ceremony.

Consecration of Idols: Preparations—The Actual Ceremony—Nyāsa—Prāṇapratīṣṭhā.

Broken Idols.

It will be remembered that, in order not to get lost amongst too many details, we decided to limit our studies in this present book to a Brāhman who was a follower of Śiva, leaving the reader to notice for himself the interesting differences that occur when a Brāhman is a follower of Viṣṇu.

Now, however, we shall have for a moment or two to study Viṣṇu worship, for there is quite likely to be a shrine to one of the avatāra of Viṣṇu in the Śaiva temple we are visiting.

Worship in a Vaiṣṇava Temple.

In a temple devoted entirely to the service of Kṛiṣṇa, the most popular of Viṣṇu’s incarnations, worship is offered seven or eight times in the day.

At seven a.m. Maṅgala is performed. The god is awakened with the sound of bells and drums, and the curtain is withdrawn, showing the god lying down on a cot.

The officiant puts the god in an upright position¹ and then

¹ If the image had been one of Rāma, it would have been worshipped lying down.
worships it and, in a rich temple, offers it milk and sugar, afterwards waving the fivefold lamp ceremonially before it.

About nine o'clock another service (Śṛīṅgāra) is gone through. Behind a drawn curtain the special white dress worn by the god during the night is removed, and the day-robe and ornaments are put on. Then the curtain is withdrawn, and the god is displayed to his worshippers, who offer him the fivefold worship and are themselves allowed to make the special Viṣṇu mark with gopī clay.

About eleven or twelve, when the officiant has finished his own cooking, he offers to the god a Royal Repast (Rāja-bhoga) consisting of a tray of rice, curry, sweets, and bread. In a very rich temple a great number of dishes are offered, and a great quantity of clarified butter is used.

There are two great differences between the luncheon offered to an avatāra of Viṣṇu and that to the linga of Śiva.

First, in the case of either Rāma or Kṛiṣṇa, the officiant, after depositing the tray in front of the idol, draws a heavy curtain across the doorway of the inner shrine and stands outside whilst the god feasts. Secondly, as we have so often noticed, the food in a Vaiṣṇava temple can be eaten by all. So the officiant and the worshippers take a little of the holy prasāda and put it on their own trays of food, and the ascetics (of whom we shall have to talk later) who are staying in the temple compound also put some on their trays. Some of it, too, is sent to devotees of the god living in the town, that thereby their midday meal may also be sanctified.

As soon as the god has finished his meal, āraṇī is performed.

Another difference between Vaiṣṇava and Śiva worship is the meticulous care with which a Vaiṣṇava officiant speaks of everything concerning this and the other food-offerings.

For instance, the ordinary vernacular word for sugar (sākara) is not used, but a special Hindi name (mīrī). And all commands about the worship must be given in a ceremonially courtly tone. If an officiant said: ‘Put some sugar on the tray’ (using the
VIŚNU WORSHIP

ordinary word for sugar and the ordinary word put) instead of 'Please-bring-with-due-honour some sugar-candy', the sugar would have to be thrown away.

About noon or a little later the god is put to sleep in a cot for an Afternoon Nap for three hours. The curtain is drawn, but as no worshipper comes to see the god 'put down' for his rest, or to gaze on him at this time, it cannot strictly be called worship.¹

About three or four o'clock the god is roused (Uṭhāpana) from his midday sleep by a bell, the curtain is withdrawn, and the god set upright. Then worshippers come in and gaze on him in adoration.

The ordinary Evening Worship (Sandhya) is performed at seven o'clock. The fivefold worship (flowers, gopi-clay-narking, incense, lamp, and food-offering of uncooked milk, sugar, or fruit) is presented.

The officiant does not now pull the heavy curtain across the door, but contents himself with holding up a small cloth in front of the god, whilst the worshippers ring bells, beat drums, and play on all sorts of musical instruments.

The fivefold lamp is then waved before the gods and to the worshippers, and the sugar which has been offered is distributed amongst them and eaten with great pleasure.

The worship for the day closes at nine or ten at night with savana, when the officiant first displays the god in his day dress to the adoring gaze of the worshippers, and afterwards, drawing the heavy curtain, undresses him, puts on his night-clothes, and lays him down in a cot to sleep.

So much of the worship of Krīṣṇa or of Rāma in a Vaiṣṇava temple is done behind closed curtains, that one often hears it said that there are only two acts of public worship in the day.

¹ Those, however, who do reckon it as a separate ritual act count seven such rites in a day.
Visṇu Worship in a Śaiva Temple.

The worship offered to one of the avatāra of Viṣṇu in a Śaiva temple such as we are visiting is, however, much more simple. Let us begin by examining the shrine in greater detail.

The Vaiṣṇava shrine is generally situated to the left of the Śaiva temple, and with regard to the Idols, whereas the liṅga was on the floor in the Śaiva shrine, and Pārvatī and Gaṅgā placed against the walls, in a Vaiṣṇava temple the gods and goddesses are arranged in a row on the shelves of a three-tiered altar. If the shrine is sacred to Rāma, on the highest shelf, and in the following order from left to right, will be the images of Lakṣmanā, Rāma, and Sītā. Lakṣmanā, the faithful brother, is represented by a white-faced image clad in tinsel-trimmed muslin. Rāma, in the centre of the row, is represented by a black-faced god holding a bow and arrow. Sītā, the faithful but untrusted wife, is the third muslin-clad figure in the row, and she, too, is white-faced. (These three are sometimes repeated again along the row in the same order.)

On the second shelf of the altar, there is very often a small wooden stand or tray containing: a tiny brass image of Kṛṣṇa as a child, called Lālji, or sometimes an image of Rāma as a child (very often also called Lālji),¹ a brass image of Lakṣmī Nārāyaṇa, a Śālagrāma, a conch-shell, images of Hanumān and Gaṇeśa, and perhaps a picture of Rāma. There may also be (though this is not so common) a figure on a brass horse representing the Sinless Incarnation² that is yet to come to deliver the world from sin, a figure which enshrines one of the deepest hopes of the spiritually-minded.

On the third shelf, there may be a tiny copper bowl for the five nectars, some conch-shells, a lamp for burning

¹ If the child is holding a pot of butter flat in its hand, it is an image of the infant Kṛṣṇa; if it is holding a laddu with its finger stuck out 'for manners', it is Rāma.

² Devout Hindus like to compare with this the figure on the white horse in Revelation xix. 11.
incense, together with a bell and a five-wicked lamp. But
the variations are endless, and each researcher must learn
them for himself.

Again, instead of Rāma, the shrine may be sacred to Kṛiśṇa
and his wife Rukmiṇī, or to Kṛiśṇa and his mistress Rādhā,
whose images will be on the top shelf, whilst beneath will be
the Śālagrāma, the bell, the lamp, and the Lālji, as before,
and the four signs of Viṣṇu.

At the base of an altar, either to Kṛiśṇa or to Rāma, you
very often find a large figure in bas-relief of a Garuḍa, Viṣṇu’s
carrier.\footnote{The researcher will find it interesting to make a list of the chief gods
and the carriers on which they ride.}

The worship offered in these Vaiṣṇava shrines of a Śaiva
temple is much more simple than that offered in a Vaiṣṇava
temple proper, and bears a close resemblance to the worship
in the Śaiva shrine.

The \emph{Awakening} of the god is done after Śiva has been
awakened, in the same way, and by the same man in a small
temple, or in a big temple by his assistant, with beating of
drums and ringing of bells.

Later, after he has washed and finished worshipping the
śīla, the same officiant or his assistant goes to the Vaiṣṇava
shrine. If it is a very rich temple, the officiant takes off the
clothes worn by the idol during the night and puts on its
day-clothes, but in an ordinary shrine the idol wears the same
suit day and night, until new ones are offered or needed.

By way of \emph{Morning Worship}, the officiant either washes the
face and feet of the idol at this time, or, standing in front of
the image, with a damp cloth, waves it and says mentally:
‘I wash you’, or, filling a conch-shell with water, waves that
in front of the image and again contents himself by saying
mentally: ‘I wash you’. (How pleasing this mental method
would have been to the schoolboy of fiction!)

If the image be actually washed, the water used is looked
on as very sacred, and is afterwards given to worshippers,
who either sip it or sprinkle it on themselves. (This is in
distinct contrast to the water used in washing the liṅga of
Śiva, which is never sipped.)

In any case, however, the officiant washes off the old gopi-
clay\(^1\) marks and himself removes the old flowers (not, as in
a Śaiva temple, leaving the Atita to remove them).

Then the full fivefold worship is offered, marking with gopi-
clay, offering incense, lamp, flowers, and milk and sugar.

Finally the five-wicked lamp (ārati) is waved, first to the
feet, then to the body, and lastly to the head of the image,
to guard it from evil.

At *Midday*, after cooked food has been offered to the liṅga,
cooked food is also offered by the same man or his assistant
to the images in the Vaiṣṇava shrine. But this food differs
from that offered to the liṅga, for to the avatāra of Viṣṇu
a loaf, or rather a pancake, of millet flour and some butter
must necessarily be offered, whatever else is or is not included
on the tray of curry, rice, &c. Whilst the god is eating this, the
officiant pulls a curtain, and afterwards he himself can eat the
Prasāda, or share it with the ascetics living round the temple.

*Evening Worship* takes place about seven, or whenever the
first star appears. After the worship has been offered in the
Śaiva shrine, the officiant goes on to the Vaiṣṇava shrine and
there performs the fivefold worship, or contents himself
with waving the fivefold lamp with the usual musical accom-
paniments.

About nine the officiant places the image in a cot, or simply
closes the doors of the shrine for the night, leaving the god
upright.

*The Temple Courtyard.*

And now that the visitor has seen the Śaiva shrine and the
Vaiṣṇava shrine, he is ready to glance round the temple com-
 pound. There he will find, very likely in a separate shrine,
a huge image of Hanumān all covered with red lead.

\(^1\) An ignorant or lazy officiant uses sandal-wood paste for Kṛiṣṇa as for Śiva.
VIṣṆU WORSHIP

As we have already studied the Saturday evening worship in a Hanumān temple, we now need only note that this Hanumān in the compound is worshipped in the ordinary fivefold way every morning and evening, and that he is probably also worshipped with oil on Tuesday and Saturday (or perhaps only on Saturday, the more important day), by the devout pouring oil over his uplifted foot, which crushes down Pānotti, the incarnation of pain.

Any who wish to do so can pour this oil, provided they have washed their hands. The oil from any shrine of Hanumān is a great preventive against witches.

In the temple compound, too, you are very likely to see a Smallpox shrine. Either a stone carved goddess, sometimes seated on a donkey, or, what the writer herself has seen most often, just coral or pitted stones arranged on a platform, to which any who recover from smallpox offer coco-nuts.¹

Frequently, too, you will notice that there is another platform on which are Snake-stones (upright stones) with coiled or twisted serpents carved on them, and that these are smeared with red lead.

Perhaps these were originally put up by some obedient soul who had seen a snake in a vision which ordered him to erect a stone in its honour, or by some grateful person who had been bitten by a serpent; and who had vowed, if he recovered, to erect a snake-stone.

Occasionally the original donor endows the snake-stone with a glebe—a field which pays for the repair and worship of the stone, and for a lamp to be burnt every night beside it.

The stone is especially worshipped, as we have seen, on Nāga Pañchami,² but in addition, any one who has been bitten by a serpent vows to offer coco-nut or milk or sugar on his recovery, and also to re-lead the stone.

¹ Sometimes, if a child has fever, they offer a piece of paper, if it has pain in the arm they offer wooden arms, or if the pain is in the eye, glass eyes, to the smallpox goddess.
² See p. 314.
Somewhere in the temple courtyard, too, Bilva and Tulasi Plants are almost sure to be growing, for their leaves are needed to present with the offerings, and very often there is a Well, whose water, being specially pure, is used in the worship and washing of the idols.

The researcher will do well to notice any other little shrines in the courtyard; perhaps there may be one to a beneficent female power of Śiva, such as Annapūrṇa, or one to the more terrible Bhairava, and he will probably find that these are worshipped twice a day with the fivefold worship.

But time and paper are running out, and we have much yet to learn. We shall have managed clumsily in our study of the daily worship in a Śaiva temple if we are not by now on the most friendly terms with the officiant. Accordingly, if we ask for a chair in the shade where we may put on our shoes, he and his friends will probably come and sit on the ground beside us and answer the questions we are longing to put about the building of a temple, the installation of an idol, and what happens when one is broken or defiled. It may be objected that these subjects should have come before the temple worship; the writer can only reply that she is not trying to indite an Encyclopaedia of Hinduism, but a record of personal investigation; and so she is following the actual order in which, when visiting a temple, she found it best to ask for information, believing that by so doing she is affording the beginner the more help.

Temple-Building.

The ceremonies at the building and Foundation of a temple are much the same as those performed at the foundation of a house, though even more elaborate precautions are taken to ensure purity and auspiciousness.

The same prayer, too, is offered that the temple may endure as long as the sun and the moon, and, when the temple is all completed, this prayer is symbolized by the hoisting of a temple
flag\(^1\) which has appliqué\(d\) on to it a sun and a moon, to signify length of days.

No temple should be begun until provision has been made for its maintenance for ever, for a ruined temple is a terrible thing. A new temple may be the gift of a pious man, or of a Ruling Chief, who endows it with land or village (an endowment which can never be rescinded by his successor), or it may be built by subscription in memory of a famous man or woman.

But if at any time in the future the provision fails, and the liṅga is left unworshipped and neglected, grave sin accrues to the founder of the temple, far greater indeed than the merit he had previously acquired by founding the temple.

It is for this reason that, in certain native States, the endowment of a new shrine has to be handed over to the Ruling Chief, who himself administers the fund and pays the interest to the temple treasury.

When the temple building is complete, a Vāstu Ceremony is performed, resembling the Vāstu ceremony of a house, but more elaborate and more expensive.

Not until this Vāstu ceremony is complete and the liṅga installed, can the model egg, which in metal or stone surmounts the dome of a Śaiva temple, be put in its place. For the liṅga is not brought through the gateway and then through the door of the temple, as are the other gods and goddesses, but, because Śiva is Svayambhū and without beginning or end, his phallic symbol is lowered into position in a silken sling through the roof.

After the installation, this hole in the roof is filled up, the metal (gilt or brass) or stone egg is put in position, and the flag erected.

Consecration of Idols.

The life-implanting (Prāṇapratiṣṭhā) ceremony of the liṅga exactly resembles that of the other gods we are about to study. Even the ‘eyes’ of the liṅga are opened in the same

\(^1\) The flag in a Śaiva temple in the writer’s part of India is saffron-coloured, for a Hanumān red, for a Vaiṣṇava temple any colour but black.
way; though, as the linga has no eyes, the honey mixture is placed on the spot 'where the eyes ought to be'.

The writer has never yet been present at the consecration of an idol, but one of her pandits acted as head Acarya at such a consecration and came and told her all about it on the day following the ceremony. (His account agreed with and amplified that which she had already been given in many temples.) He told her that in this particular case new images of Ganesa, Ganga, Parvati, Hanuman, and the Bull were all ordered from Jaipur; they came by train and were taken without ceremony to the house of a leading gentleman in the city.

Preparations were made as follows. The astrologer decided which would be the auspicious day for the consecration, and on the previous day masons prepared platforms for the idols.

A booth was erected within the temple compound, and three little stools arranged in the following way.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

When the day dawned, Ganesa was worshipped in the sixteenfold way, the sixteen 'mothers' were worshipped, and the auspicious Sraddha, which guards against Sutaka, performed.

The chief Acarya and the other officers were chosen, fire was brought, and the Homa sacrifice offered.

Then a procession was formed, with bands and drums, which went to the house where the idols had been kept.

The priests brought the images in their hands, and when they reached the temple, they put all five images on stool 'A' facing the east, and around each stool thirty-five or thirty-seven brass water-vessels were arranged.

The Actual Ceremony takes place in this way.

First of all the images are rubbed with darbha-grass to remove the dust.
Then, in case there should be any marks left by the chisel, a mixture of honey and clarified butter is spread over each idol. In particular, honey and butter are spread thickly over their eyes to make a covering, for, if the eyes were left uncovered, the priest who puts life into the image would die. The whole ceremony is a most dangerous one, and if any mistake is made, the priest who performs it will suffer terrible things.

The entire bodies of the nude idols, still standing on stool 'A', are bathed with water from the vessels round it—in some of these vessels there are pipal leaves, in others sacred drugs.

All this time the Ācārya reads aloud from the special sacred books concerning Prāṇapratiṣṭhā, and continues to do so whilst his assistants move the idols with the greatest care from stool 'A' to stool 'B', which is covered with yellow cloth. There again they are bathed in the same way, whilst the Ācārya goes on reciting mantras. After the bathing is completed, they are moved to stool 'C', which is quite bare and uncovered, and there they are bathed again.

All this bathing is considered to be very tiring for the idols, so when it is finished, they are placed on a small bedstead to rest. A pillow is put under their heads, and they are covered with a cloth, a vessel filled with water being placed beside their pillows in case they should feel thirsty.

There is a grave fear that now, before a good spirit has been implanted in them, evil spirits may try and enter their empty bodies. To guard against this, sacred ashes, which no evil spirit can cross, are thrown in a line all round the bedstead.

When all is safe and snug, lullabies are sung to them, and after that no one in the audience speaks or even whispers, lest they should disturb or arouse them.

1 Amongst male gods, usually only Vaiṣṇava gods are dressed. All goddesses can be dressed.

2 If 'A' had been a stone platform instead of a stool, it would have been covered with sand.
When the idols have rested sufficiently, instruments are played at some auspicious moment to awaken them. They are then brought near the altar in the temple compound, where the fire of the Homā sacrifice is burning, for this is carefully fed with butter all through the ceremony. The Ācārya reads verses from the sacred books in praise of the particular gods that are going to be consecrated, and his assistants all join in.

Next follows Nyāsa, the installation of various gods in different parts of the body of each idol. (The image of Gaṇeśa in this particular case was first dealt with.) To effect this, a Brāhmaṇa takes in his hand five tiny bundles of darbhagrass—with three blades of grass in each bundle—and proceeds with it to install the gods. First he touches the breast of the idol and installs Brahmā there; Indra he places in the hand of the image by touching that with the grass; he proceeds to install Viṣṇu in the feet, Aśvinī Kumāra in the nose; Surya in the two eyes; and Dīkpāla in the ears. In the same manner, though with necessary variations, he installs the appropriate gods in the different parts of Pārvatī, Gaṅgā, Hanumān, and the Bull. But, though the gods have now been installed, and there is therefore less danger of an evil spirit entering, the great Prāṇapratisthā has not been performed; hence, even after Nyāsa, the images are still regarded only as things of stone.

But now preparations are made for this culminating act.

First, the householder who gave the idol, or who gave the biggest subscription, and so became the patron (the Yajamāna), has to be purified.

He sits on a stool in front of the altar, and a Brāhmaṇa gives him the five gifts of a cow to drink (milk, whey, curds, dung, and urine), which remove all his past sins.1

Next, the patron, under the direction of a Brāhmaṇa, installs the various gods in the various parts of his own

---

1 He may, however, have had to drink this earlier in the proceedings.
body by the touch of darbha-grass, just as we saw done in the case of the idols.

The great moment for the Prānapratiṣṭhā is now drawing near, but before the patron can perform it, he must first burn up his sinful 'soul-body' and then place a new one there.

Every one's sinful 'soul-body' resides in the left side of his human body immediately under the heart.

The patron burns up this sinful 'soul-body' by doing the breathing exercises and suspension of breath (prāṇāyāma), and then he has to place a new one there. This he does by touching his own heart and saying: 'May my thoughts, life, soul, senses, voice, mind, eyes, hearing and tongue be steadfast and at peace'.

This done, the critical moment comes when he places his hand on the breast of each of the five idols in turn and says (changing the name, of course, to suit the idol): 'May this image have the life and soul of [Gaṇeśa], and all the senses of [Gaṇeśa], speech, skin, eyes, nose, tongue, respiration. May all these things remain happily in this image for a long time.'

This safely said, the awful moment is over, and the eyes of the images may be opened, if due care is taken.

The patron moves to one side, as soon as he has performed the life-giving ceremony.

Little heaps of sugar and sweets are placed in front of each still blinded image in such a way that these sweet things may be the first object the newly-opened eyes of the image shall rest on. A Brāhmaṇ stands at one side of each idol in turn, and, holding a mirror in front of the image in such a way that in its reflection he can see what to do, he takes up a tiny golden rod and with it removes the thick covering of honey and clarified butter which at an earlier point in the ceremony had been spread over the eyes of the idol.

He moves from idol to idol, opening the eyes of each

---

1 It is a common mistake amongst Europeans to say that a Brāhmaṇ puts new eyes into an idol, whereas he only opens them.
with the golden rod as he gazes into the mirror, but never once does he relax his precautions, for if he stood in such a way that the eyes of any idol lighted first on him instead of on the heap of sweets, he would assuredly die.

Not long ago it is said that in a famous place of pilgrimage in a native State two men through carelessness did stand in such a way that the newly-opened eyes of an image of Bhairava (the terrible form of Śiva) first fell on them and not on the sweetmeats, with the result that both men instantly perished!

The next thing is to prepare each little masonry stand or platform for the reception of each new idol.

To do this the Brāhmans arrange a gold coin and five jewels (a ruby, a sapphire, a pearl, an emerald, and one yellow stone) or tiny pieces of jewels, if they can afford them, on the platform. (If they cannot afford the jewels, they just repeat the names of five precious stones and imagine that they have deposited the actual things.)

The astrologer decides on the auspicious time for each image, and at the exact moment he has selected each of the idols is placed on the top of the real or imaginary heap of jewels.

The mason fixes the idol in its place, and an officiant of the temple washes it with the five nectars, dresses it in splendid clothes, if it is a goddess or an avatāra of Viṣṇu, and offers it the fivefold worship.

This done, a silken flag of red or green is run up outside the temple.

But before all can be considered as completed, an interesting journey to the nearest cross-roads has to be made.

A procession is formed, in which the patron and all the Brāhmans who have taken part in the performance join. One Brāhman carries an offering of black pulse, rice, arecanut, a copper coin, and a lamp filled with clarified butter, arranged in either a big new red earthen pot, or in a bamboo basket.
Another Brähman carries a sword, to keep off any evil spirit that may desire to spoil the sacrifice.

They move towards the cross-roads with much beating of drums, and, arrived there, they sprinkle the junction with water to purify it, and then put down the pot and leave it there as an offering to pacify any evil power that lives at the cross-roads, being very careful never to look backwards as they go off again towards the temple.

Arrived back at the temple, the patron first washes his hands and his feet, and then gargles, being very careful not to swallow any water. When all this is completed, he places a coco-nut in a large wooden ladle, marks it with a Svastika sign, places a red or green silk cover over it, and, holding it in place with another wooden ladle, puts it into the Homa fire which has been burning all through the ceremony; and then more clarified butter is poured into this sacrificial fire.

Now all is finished, so gifts are made to Brähmans; and, as this is an auspicious occasion, leave is given to the 'mothers' and the fire to depart by sprinkling rice grains over them.

Before leaving, however, the Brähmans pile wood over the coco-nut, that it may be completely consumed in the fire, otherwise, they say, Agni would suffer from acute indigestion.

This done, the fire is allowed to go out of itself, but its ashes are looked on as specially sacred and treasured up for use in the morning worship (Sandhyā).

**Broken Idols.**

We have seen that before the consecration an evil spirit might try and attack an image and take up its abode in it. Well, if in the process of time the ear or nose of an idol, or any of its limbs, gets broken or crumbles away, the belief is that the spirit of the god escapes through the opening thus made, and, if the image were left long neglected, some evil spirit with a vaporous body would enter and take possession of the idol.
For this reason one should never sleep at night in an old deserted temple, nor visit one at twilight, for who knows what powers of evil may lie ensconced within the broken idols, only waiting their chance to pounce on the unwary?

It is very meritorious to repair a ruined temple, but the broken idols must not be repaired; they must be replaced by entirely new ones. To repair an old idol by clapping on a new ear, or a new arm, would be like crowning a decayed tooth, it would simply bottle up the bad spirit that had got inside it.

Perhaps one of the most illuminating ways to study idolatry sympathetically and scientifically is to watch what is done with a broken idol.

The superficial observer or the globe-trotter often says: 'The Indians only think of their idols as photographs of the divine, and they mean to them exactly what the Sistine Madonna does to us'.

If such a one really desires to learn whether an idol be only a photograph or not, let him watch what is done if a linga be broken.

We have seen that it cannot be repaired or mended, but must be removed, and no man, Brähman, mason, or low-caste, dare enter into the inner shrine and lay hands on a broken linga.

The difficulty is got over by employing a bull in the first place. The animal must never have undergone castration, never have carried clothes for a washerman, and never have been used in agriculture, but must be one that had been already ritually set free, after being branded with the trident of Śiva.

When such an animal is forthcoming, a Brähman takes a piece of gold, silver, or copper wire, affixes one end to the bull's horns, as it stands in the temple compound, and then, going inside the shrine, ties the other end of the wire round the linga.

The bull is tempted to move forward by some specially
nice food enticingly placed a little distance from it; as it
moves, the wire, of course, tightens round the liṅga till it
eventually breaks it off and drags it outside the shrine. Once
the liṅga has been thus ‘wire-pulled’ over the threshold of the
inner sanctuary, it can be touched; so then the Brāhmans
take it, pack it up most carefully with sweets or sugar, and
some high-caste gentleman, carrying it in his hand, drives or
goes by rail to the sea. Arrived at the seaside, he goes out in
a boat and drops the parcel containing the liṅga into deep
water.

If this involves too great expense, the broken liṅga is placed
beneath a pīpal tree in a temple courtyard, preferably on the
outskirts of the town, and just left there, for a pīpal tree is as
holy as a place of pilgrimage.
CHAPTER XVI

THE END OF THE WAY


The Three Ways.

The lowest of all the three upward paths to Mokṣa is the Way of Works (Karma-marga)—the faithful fulfilment by followers of Śiva or Viṣṇu of the rites of their particular creed: at birth, marriage, death, and the other great crises of life: at the great feasts; at their daily private worship; and in the temple courts.

It will be remembered that, for the sake of distinctness and brevity in this book, we have studied chiefly the rites of one type of the followers of Śiva, leaving for future researchers the rites of castes other than Brāhmans amongst the Twice-born who follow Śiva, or of Brāhmans who follow Viṣṇu.

It must, however, be clearly recognized that, so long as the worshippers are treading the Karma-marga, there are other great differences—unnoticed in this book—between the worship of Śiva and that of Viṣṇu. Some of these differences in rites and customs are grounded on the different characters of the gods.

Śiva is thought of by his followers as an ascetic—the greatest of all ascetics—and hence simplicity is the key-note of his worship. Viṣṇu is regarded as a king, a monarch of such temporal power and pomp¹ that his worship must needs be costly and full of ceremony.

¹ All Hindu Ruling Chiefs are traditionally descendants of one of the two avalāra of Viṣṇu—tracing their descent either from Kṛiṣṇa, who derives from the moon, or from Rāma, who derives from the sun.
The worship of Śiva is inexpensive, because he is thought of as an ascetic, not, as Hopkins says: 'Śivaism is cheap because Śivaites are poor, the dregs of society'—an odd term for Brāhmaṇs!

Of course, greater care has to be exercised in worshipping Śiva, even in his beneficent auspicious form as the bestower of happiness, because he is the hastier god of the two, quicker to grant boons to his devotees, quicker also to take affront and grow enraged. Viṣṇu is slower to grant a prayer, but slower also to anger.

The followers of Śiva claim also that he is the more simple, more straight-forward god. One of his titles in Gujarāṭi is Bhōḷānātha, and bhōḷo just describes the artlessness of a child. Whereas Viṣṇu is much more the 'man-of-the-world', and in some of his avatāra is represented as a great diplomatist, wily and fond of intrigue.

When a man has faithfully followed the way of Rites and Ceremonies (Karma-mārga), he is led on to the next highest path, the Way of Devotion (Bhakti-mārga). He passes from one path to the other almost insensibly, since, for some distance, the ways run parallel.

1 Hopkins, Religions of India, p. 484.
2 We have not dealt with Mahādeva in the terrible forms of Rudra or Bhairava, since neither to these nor to Kālī, the terrible wife of Śiva as Kāla, is the worship of the most respected Brāhmaṇs chiefly directed, at least in the writer's part of India. One sect of devotees of Kālī are called Vāma-mārgī: they follow the Tantras and worship the Śaktis and the wheel of destruction. But all the writer's personal friends amongst Brāhmaṇs loathe the hideous orgies of the Vāma-mārgī, whose followers indulge in the five M's.1 Māṃsa (flesh eating: including Matsya, fish eating), Madirā (wine drinking), Mantra (obscene mantras or evil speech), Mudrā (obscene gestures), Maithūṣa (union of the sexes). So widely spread is this sect (in which many see the logical outcome of the orthodox worship of the sex symbols of the linga and yoni) that no book on modern Brāhmaṇism would be complete which did not refer to it. For the sake of truth, it may even be the terrible and austere duty of some one to investigate it more fully than has yet been done, but the present writer confesses herself unable to sully either her pages or her memory with further details. She would sooner think of daffodils.

1 For a different list see Monier Williams, Brāhmaṇism and Hinduism, p. 192.
Much more has been written about the Way of Devotion to Viṣṇu, but it must not be forgotten that there is also a Bhaktimārga for the followers of Śiva. The followers of this Way are those who have a loving devotion to their god, Mahādeva, in his gentle form of Śiva, the Auspicious One, or Śaṅkara, the Giver of Happiness. The followers of Viṣṇu think of their God in bhakti as a husband, and their better songs express the devotion of a wife to her husband, their baser, of a mistress to her lover.

In bhakti the follower of Śiva thinks of Mahādeva as his father, and in his song expresses the love of a child for a parent. Śaiva devotees use hymn-books, such as the Śivamahimnāh-stotra or the Upamanyu-stotra. Strangely enough, they read the Bhagavadgītā as much as the followers of Viṣṇu; they say, in explanation, that all spiritual discisions are summed up in this book. The first six chapters of it, they declare, deal with Karma-mārga; the following six with the way of devotion (Bhakti-mārga); and the last six with the Way of Knowledge (Jñāna-mārga).

It may seem curious that followers of Śiva should use this Vaiṣṇava book, but the sectarian differences grow less in the Way of Devotion than they were in the Way of Rites and Ceremonies, and they are still less noticeable in the Way of Knowledge. Many Brāhmans, indeed, deny that the Bhagavadgītā is a Vaiṣṇava book, claiming it and the Mahābhārata as universal. As a matter of fact, the best commentaries on the Bhagavadgītā are written by Brāhmans.

Whilst a man treads the Bhakti-mārga, his thoughts get more and more taken up with devotion, and insensibly the path leads him farther and farther away from the once parallel Karma-mārga. But before he can pass over to the highest path of all, the Way of Knowledge, Jñāna-mārga, there are three debts that he must pay. First, he must fulfil his debt to the sages by studying the Veda; then to the gods by

1 For the Bhakti-mārga of South India the student is referred to Macnicol, Indian Theism.
treading for a while the *Karma-mārga*, the path that we have studied of sacrifice, ceremony, and ritual, which must for some period in his life be trodden by every Twice-born; and thirdly to his ancestors, by leading the life of a householder and begetting a son.

When these three debts have been discharged, then, and only then, may the Twice-born think of becoming a True Ascetic, one who completely throws away the world—*Sannyāsī*.

**Ascetics.**

The word ascetic is used in India to cover a great variety of persons, but the true *Sannyāsī* must not be confounded with any of the hordes of wandering mendicants, broken, dishonoured, or discontented men, who have chosen a wandering life to escape their liabilities. The Brāhmans who are learned in the Veda point out that for such wanderers as have taken up the calling without any initiation there is no sanction in the Veda. They disapprove of all the self-torturers who sleep on spikes; sit surrounded in summer by five fires; or for a whole winter day immerse themselves up to their necks in a river; hold their hands up over their heads, till they lose the use of their arms; roll themselves like a ball to a place of pilgrimage; or hop there on one leg; or beat themselves with an iron fork. All these folk, they say, are illiterate. The Scriptures, indeed, declare that a man should discipline his body till he has it in control, but the self-torture these wanderers inflict on themselves is clearly of no value as discipline, since its users often lead immoral lives and make themselves stupid by drinking or smoking hemp in various forms. The wise Brāhmaṇ, too, shrewdly suspects that the self-torturers are making themselves a spectacle to gods and men in order to get money; whereas the true ascetic, having done with the world and renounced all property, has no further thought of gain. The quick sure test, therefore, that Brāhmans tell you to apply, when you are not sure whether a man is a true ascetic or not, is to offer
money. The real sannyāsī refuses it, the false ascetic accepts it gladly, and even begs for it. But the true ascetics, few though they be in comparison with the worthless mendicants, are held in highest honour.

As we have seen, there used to be four āśrama or stages through which a man must pass on his way to his goal. First, the student stage; then he must fulfil all the duties binding on a householder; and only after those stages were passed was he allowed to become a hermit, or dweller in the forest, where by fasting and meditation he might prepare for the last stage, that of a Sanñyāsī.

Nowadays, however, men omit the third āśrama and pass at once to that of the wandering mendicant.

When a man longs to renounce the world, and is absolutely convinced of the permanence of this desire, he first becomes a Postulant, that is, he goes to some revered and honoured Sanñyāsī and tells him of his purpose to be for ever free from all worldly attachment and to fix his mind entirely on Paramātman.

The Sanñyāsī whom he has chosen as his director (guru) tests the reality of the postulant in various ways. First, perhaps, he makes him fast for three days; then he asks him to drink a cup of some bitter draught, which he must take without showing unwillingness;¹ or he may show him terrifying pictures, or make him listen to affrighting noises, all of which the postulant must suffer gladly. If the novice passes these and similar tests, which prove that he has got beyond the region of likes and dislikes, of love and hatred, he is asked to show that he has also cut himself off from all desire of possession by performing a Śrāddha, in which he gives away everything that he has.

This First Śrāddha takes place either on a river bank, or near a well in the compound of a Śiva temple, or better still at some place of pilgrimage like Benares.

In the ceremony, the postulant does not offer any balls of

¹ Cf. S. John xviii. 11.
rice, but declares that he gives away everything that he owns to the Brāhmans who perform the great sacrifices.

The candidate has now shown that he has done with likes and dislikes, and with all desire for property: he has yet to show that he is free from all affection for family, home, or caste.

So immediately after the first Śrāddha he performs a Second Śrāddha, in which he calls himself, and treats himself as, a dead man. He even offers rice balls to himself as a pītrī, to effect his union with his dead ancestors.

Four Brāhmans—each versed in a different Veda—are present at this ceremony, and to these four as witnesses the postulant now recites mantras, saying that he has given away everything, that he no longer belongs to the world, or to any family, and has no attachment to any person, and that he will never again desire any one or anything. Once he has made this declaration, he has once and for all broken with caste.¹

So at this point he himself takes off his sacred thread—that most cherished of all caste marks—and throws it away. A barber, or else the new ascetic himself, shaves off his lock of hair—his Śikhā.²

Then, too, he discards his worldly dress and retains only one saffron cloth. His director presents him with a bamboo staff with seven knots, and he is then left to himself.

Henceforth he has no home, no caste, no family, and must renounce even the desire to attain Mokṣa. When he dies, no further Śrāddha will be performed, so literally is this his dying to the world construed.³

The director decides which order of Sannyāsī the novice shall join. According to his commands, he joins perhaps the

---

¹ Even if he fail to live as an ascetic, he can never again be received back into caste, but, as we have seen, becomes an Alīta. See p. 378.
² It is interesting to compare this with the monastic-tonsure of the Roman Church, and with the tearing out of his hair by a Jaina ascetic.
³ His burial we have already noted when we were studying funeral ceremonies, pp. 153, 200.
Sarasvatī, the Tīrtha, the Āśrama, or the Pārvata. But though he nominally joins whatever order his director commands, he must be careful to form no worldly ties even to his order, and so passes at will from one order to another, without undergoing any ceremony, or even giving notice to the head of the order.

This is another ‘note’ which distinguishes the true Sannyāsī from the ordinary Sādhu, who clings tenaciously to any order that he may have joined.

The Sannyāsī should spend much time in mental prayer, but, as he has done with all rites and ceremonies and passed for ever from the Way of Works to the Way of Knowledge, he need perform no daily Sandhyā, neither does he worship in any temple, though he must not despise any rite or ceremony.

The ascetic comes to four different stages as he treads the Way of Knowledge.

First, the Kuṭiūcaka, when the ascetic, leaving the world behind him, lives in a hut and meditates solely on the Paramātman, until he is ready to pass on to the next stage.

In the second stage, Bahūdaka, he must drink of many waters and go on pilgrimage to many sacred rivers and seats of learning, that he may acquire much spiritual knowledge.

The ascetic has reached the third stage, Hāṁsa, when he knows good from evil, even as a goose (hāṁsa) can distinguish good from evil and separate from each other milk and water after they have been mixed together.

At this stage the ascetic must live outside all towns, never staying more than three nights in any village, but spending most of his time in some quiet place in the jungle.

There is a still higher stage, Paramahāṁsa, when the ascetic almost becomes one with the Paramātman.

A man who has attained this must never teach or repeat or read Scripture stories, and must eat only enough food to support life, not thinking of pleasing his palate. He must
beg his own food, and even for that must only at the most go to seven houses daily. He is not allowed to send word previously to these houses that he is coming, and if they have nothing ready to give him, he must just fast. Indeed, it would be better if he could live in a forest on fruits and roots, without begging at all.

Unlike the Jaina ascetic, he must drink filtered (not previously boiled) water. His supreme duty is to spend all his time in meditation, and all his begging must be so planned as not to interfere with that duty. That he may be fit to meditate, he must, like his Jaina brother, be careful in speech, that he never says anything unkind or untrue, and keep a watch over all his movements, that he may never injure any living thing, even the smallest.

The Paramahamsa, in short, must show that he is indifferent to everything and has passed for ever beyond the Way of Works. There is, however, one great exception; it is from the ranks of the Paramahamsa that the Saṅkarācārya are chosen.

There are four great Saṅkarācārya, who preside over four monasteries, in West, East, South, and North India.

One in Dvārakā, one in Jagannātha Puri, one in Śrīnagarī, and one in Badrī Kedāranātha.

Since these four sit in the seat of the great Reformer who made the cult of Śiva the power that it is in India to-day, they are given the state of a Ruling Chief and are bound to take thought for their order.

The qualifications for the post of Saṅkarācārya are that the man has been a celibate from his birth and is celebrated for his learning, especially in the Upaniṣad, Brahmāsūtra, and Bhagavadgītā.

Each Saṅkarācārya instructs the postulants who come to the monastery, and from their ranks he has the right to nominate his successor, who must be pre-eminent for learning and virtue.

If before his death a Saṅkarācārya has not exercised his
privilege of nomination, a number of laymen, headed by some Ruling Chief, appoint his successor, and this Chief will in future pay all the expenses of the monastery.

Not only a Śaṅkarācārya, but any true Sannyāsī can predict the date on which he will pass away, and is even able to choose the manner of his passing. For instance, he may decide to bathe in a stream and vanish, or, lost in contemplation, to expel his own soul from his body.

An ascetic, of course, must entertain neither wish nor desire as to the future, but after death he knows that he will be absorbed in the Supreme, and never again be reborn into this troublesome world.

The follower of the Way of Works, the Way of Rites and Ceremonies, whose customs we have been trying to understand, is on a lower level: if a man dies whilst on that path, he can attain only a temporary heaven, whose bliss he will some day have to leave, to pass again through the gates of birth. Small wonder that the path of professed asceticism is in India the 'desired way'.

The terrible experiences through which many parts of India passed in the autumn of 1918, scourged by famine, plague, and pneumonic influenza, gave to ascetics of every type and school their opportunity of proving their value to the commonwealth. They had a debt to repay, for they had been supported by the alms of the people; they had passed beyond all fear of death, and had severed every tie which might have made it difficult or undutiful for them to hazard their lives.

One night the present writer happened to be in an outcaste quarter of a town, where the people were dying in terrible numbers. Some of them drew her attention to an unknown stranger, whose friends, seeing that he was stricken with disease, and fearing infection, had got out at the station hard by and deposited the dying man on the veranda of an empty house; then, abandoning him there, they had themselves slipped away unseen in the darkness. The pitiful derelict
was literally rotting in his own filth; it was impossible to get food or medicine between his clenched teeth, nor could men be found strong enough to carry him to a hospital.

On a bridge above two sturdy, powerful ascetics were sitting, intoning sacred verses in the quiet starlight. The writer asked them who they were. 'We are holy men', they replied. So she suggested that they should leave off hymn-singing for a little, and come and help her to carry the unknown sufferer to hospital. Never will she forget the astonishment and blazing anger with which they enunciated the foundation truth of the Way of Asceticism, that Road to which the Path of Works and the Path of Devotion ultimately lead. 'We!' they cried, 'we are holy men (Sannyāsī); we never do anything for any one else.'
PART IV

CHAPTER XVII

THE APPEAL OF CHRIST TO THE TWICE-BORN

As in the West, so in the East, the appeal of Christ comes to different men in differing ways; and the study of these is of no less importance to the modern psychologist than research into the actual ritual. Here we can only touch on a few.

When we pass in review the pageant unrolled by a Brāhmān’s life-story, by his circling year and daily worship, either at home or in the temple of his gods, we cannot but be freshly struck by the interpenetration of his life: conduct, and even etiquette, with the rites of his religion.

There is no danger of a Brāhman making the mistake we Westerns too often commit of shutting up his religious beliefs and his ordinary daily life in separate compartments. No Indian merchant need ever be tempted to treat his religion as a thing for Sundays only: its ritual comes with him into the market-place; a government clerk can find the object of his worship in his pens and papers, a railway driver in his engine, a farmer in his plough.

Many of us have only realized the Omnipresence of God as the full meaning of the Incarnation has gradually dawned on us and tinged all our thinking; but the rites that surround a Brāhman from childhood are based on his conception of the Immanence of the divine.

But what exactly does that Immanence imply for him? Is it chiefly connected in his mind with a somewhat mechanical system of tabus and sanctions? Or would it be possible for a Brāhman to echo the great words of Bishop Lightfoot,
when he asked the congregation assembled for his enthronement to pray ‘that glimpses of the invisible righteousness, of the invisible glory, might be vouchsafed to him; and that the Eternal Presence, haunting him night and day, might rebuke, deter, strengthen, comfort, illumine, consecrate, and subdue the feeble and wayward impulses of his own heart to God’s holy will and purpose’?

And it is just because of the Hindu’s belief that every day is filled full with the divine, and that every crisis in life is a fresh opportunity of getting into contact with a man’s own god—his Išṭadeva—that the Character of his God is of such supreme importance to him. An absentee god has but little influence on the character of his devotee, but a god with whom he is in constant contact must leave an ineffaceable impress for good or evil on the character of the worshipper.

It is here that the most deeply devout of the Twice-born are wistfully conscious to-day that their gods have failed them.

No men admire purity and chastity more than do the Brāhmans, none are more quick to detect its lack. Yet, according to the popular legends, which were unhesitatingly told to the writer at the temples she visited, each of the three great Hindu gods wears a livery of shame. Brahmā sinned with his daughter; Śiva’s symbol is explained as recalling a coarse story of hot, unblushing, and unbridled lust; and the Śālāgrāma of Viṣṇu is declared to be a memorial of how that god defiled the proud chastity of a married woman, whose utter fidelity to her husband (the most admired of all virtues amongst Brāhmans) he could only wreck by deceit. Could any of these gods say to their worshipper: ‘Be ye holy, as I am holy’?

If the Hindu, with heartfelt longing after a god of purity, seeks to Kṛṣṇa (the most popular avatāra of Viṣṇu and the hero of the Bhagavadgītā), they turn away appalled from the stories of his amours. To those who know the age-long quest of India there is nothing more pathetic than the confession some men are making now: We can only worship Kṛṣṇa
up to his twelfth year; after that he fails us. Some, as pitifully, are trying to allegorize the stories and find some pure meaning in each impure legend; but it is bitter work for a boy to have to apologize for his mother's conduct, or for a devotee to have to allegorize the stories of his god.

To the Westerner, with his different traditions and more practical standpoint, it may seem incredible that any people so religious as the Hindus should be able to associate divinity with such frankly unconcealed immorality. But the Hindu mind, dwelling on power rather than goodness as the test of the supernatural, is inclined to resent for his god any check even of moral considerations which would seem to interfere with his omnipotence. To him God is one to whom nothing is impossible. 'Thou shalt not' is a limitation that can only apply to inferior beings. This habit of thought finds an apt illustration in the popular saying mentioned in an earlier chapter: Worship a good god once, for he may assist you; but worship an evil god twice, for he has it in his power to do you harm.

Yet many earnestly religious minds among the Twice-born are deeply conscious of the essential need of purity in any true conception of God. Their worship alone is in many ways calculated to impress this thought on them, a fact that must have struck us, as we studied the ceremonial purity which is demanded of the worshipper, and saw how, ere he can tread the temple courts, he must be free from all impurity contracted by contact with birth or death, must have his body washed with pure water, and be clothed in pure raiment. But to many a modern Hindu, perhaps unconsciously influenced by Christianity, it is this very ceremonial purity which only heightens the contrast between it and the true inward ethical purity that is demanded by Hinduism of neither god nor worshipper. To such the appeal of Christ comes through the attraction of His spotless purity, and they feel they needs must adore the awful holiness of the God He has revealed.

Again, the Personality and Unity of God are more and more
seen to be essential to any true conception of the divine. The devotion that is becoming increasingly common in India, the warm personal devotion of bhakti, can only be felt towards a personal god who takes an interest, such as a human father might, in the success and failure, the pain and joy, the struggles and the victory, and all the sacred intimate cares of the home life of his worshipper. This interest can never be felt, at least according to the strict advaitin theory, by the impersonal abstract Brahma, the supreme spirit, and so, because Brahma is not itself personal, it cannot command the personal love, or bhakti, of its worshipper. If Hindus are turned away from the members of the trimūrti because of their characters, they are equally repelled from Brahma, the supreme, because of its characterlessness.

To some Hindus the multiplicity of their gods is a very real difficulty. Recently the writer met a man who told her that what had attracted him to Christianity was simply the bewildering number of his own gods; if there were so many, no single one could be all-powerful. He was looking, he said, 'for one tree and was lost in a thicket', and this had drawn him to the Tree of Life; while a non-Christian Brāhma owned to her that he was bewildered by the contradictory stories told in the Purāṇas of the same gods, which it was quite impossible to harmonize: 'the stories all contradict each other', he said, 'but none of them depict God as good; so we are up against the old difficulty, "not good then not God"'

The modern Comparative Study of Religion is also influencing the thoughtful Hindu. The real students—not the half-educated, who are (like the half-educated amongst Europeans!) easily mesmerized by phrases and deceived by superficial generalizations, but the true scholars amongst the Twice-born—are discovering that the phallic symbols which they have been taught to worship are not a unique revelation to the Hindus, but are still worshipped all over the world by peoples in a far lower state of civilization than themselves. To many of them it has been a real astonishment to learn
that this worship is still prevalent in Sumatra and Java, in the Celebes, on the slave coast of West Africa, on the Congo and many other places of primitive culture. Some, like the late Svámi Vivekánanda, ‘asserted without a vestige of evidence that the linga is no phallus but a model of a sacred hill’. But scholarly Hindus have too true a feeling after accuracy to accept such an assertion: they feel that phallic worship must have been imported into their faith from non-Aryan sources, and that, to the modern man, at any rate, it does not fitly represent the God of the whole earth.

Again, a growing number of scholars amongst the Hindus are studying the literature and the mythology of Greece and Rome. There they see how men, their own equals in culture and philosophic attainments, were for a time under the sway of a degrading idolatry. They read in the legends of the Greek and Latin gods stories of lust, cruelty, and deceit to which no honourable man would stoop. They see how for a time the Greeks and the Romans tried to allegorize these stories, how again they tried by means of Neoplatonism to reconcile them with the higher instincts of mankind, much as Theosophy is vainly striving to do to-day. But they see how the despised religion of Christ (a religion which in those days also was thought at first to be only fit for slaves and the off-scouring of mankind) at last conquered the pride of the Roman and the subtle intellect of the Greek by the power of its love, its purity, its conquest of death, and above all, by the continuing life-giving presence amongst its members of its Risen Lord.

‘One question’, says Dr. Tylor, one of the greatest of Anthropologists, ‘the student will often ask himself—how it is that faiths once mighty and earnest fall into decay and others take their place. . . . It needs but a glance through history at the wrecks of old religions to see how they failed from within. The priests of Egypt, who once represented the most advanced knowledge of their time, came to fancy that mankind had no more to learn, and upheld their tradition against

1 Farquhar, Modern Religious Movements in India, p. 435.
all newer wisdom, till the world passed them by and left them grovelling in superstition. The priests of Greece ministered in splendid temples and had their fill of wealth and honours, but men who sought the secret of a good life found that this was not the business of the Sanctuary, and turned away to the philosophers. Unless a religion can hold its place in the front of science and morals, it may only gradually, in the course of ages, lose its place in the nation, but all the power of state-craft and all the wealth of the temples will not save it from eventually yielding to a belief that takes in higher knowledge and teaches better life. ¹

The appeal of Christ to Hindus lies often in the Dynamic Power. He offers them, for in this power lies 'the secret of a good life'. A Brāhmaṇ who was a personal friend of the writer told him that the thing he had felt he most lacked in his life was power. The longing for this grew on him, and one day he arranged all his idols and repeated the appropriate mantras which he had been told would work a miracle; but nothing happened, no voice spoke, and he was more than ever conscious of the spiritual weakness within him. In his anxiety to obtain power he even resorted to black magic, and on the dark fourteenth (the Kālī čaturdāśī) ate the flesh of a goat offered to Kālī and Kāla, hoping thereby to gain Śakti. But all was in vain, till one day in the street of a distant town he heard some simple, unlearned Bible-women speak of the forgiveness of sins. He had never heard of such a thing as the forgiveness of sins, and on his return he went to a missionary near his own home to ask more about these matters. After some conversation the missionary prayed with him, and, as he prayed, the Brāhmaṇ became conscious of the presence of quiet peace and power in his own heart. Then, with beautiful Eastern childlikeness, he resolved to imitate Christ in every minute detail of his daily life, and, as he followed, he found the power he sought.

A short time ago, whilst staying in the hills, the writer had

¹ Tylor, Anthropology, p. 372.
an illuminating conversation with a spiritually-minded ascetic. With charming courtesy this Sannyāśi had spread a blanket for her in front of his mountain dwelling, in order that, since both were seekers after truth, they might sit for a while and take counsel together. It was a morning of unforgettable beauty: the crest and pinnacles of every hill were sharply outlined against a blue winter sky, and a lake lay like a green emerald at their feet. The ascetic explained his quest in perfect English. He had, he said, no feeling of sin, and indeed no need of forgiveness, since God dwelt in him; he had passed beyond the Karma-mārga and took no interest in idolatry; he believed in the good in every religion: all was just a matter of progress. What, however, he was seeking for was a Superman, one who should lead the nations into truth, for unless a Superman directed them, they wandered astray in darkness and error. To such a seeker after truth the appeal of Christ may come in the realization that our Lord is indeed the Superman, ‘very God and very Man’, for whom the world is waiting, the Son of Man, who, fulfilling the desires and the heroic traditions of all nations, shall lead them into Truth.

One great test of any religion is the condition of the Women and Little Children under its sway: Does it give them a fearless unshadowed life? Does it aim at safeguarding their indefeasible right to freedom, health, and happiness? And does it give them courage when these fail?

‘It is the nature of women’, says Manu, ‘to seduce men in the world.’¹ ‘(When creating them) Manu allotted to women (a love of their) bed, of their seat and of ornament, impure desires, wrath, dishonesty, malice, and bad conduct.’² And from this belief in woman as the temptress, not the helpmate, of man the seclusion of women naturally follows: ‘Through their passion for men, through their mutable temper, through their natural heartlessness, they become disloyal towards their husbands, however carefully they may be guarded in this

¹ Laws of Manu (Ś. B. E. xxv), ii, v. 213.
² Ibid. ix, v. 17.
Degenerating punishments may be inflicted on them: *on women, infants, men of disordered mind, the poor and the sick, the king shall inflict punishment with a whip, a cane, or a rope and the like.* And again: *A wife, a son, a slave, a pupil, and a (younger) brother of the full blood, who have committed faults, may be beaten with a rope or a split bamboo.* And, while modern Hindu custom often rises superior to Manu, that ancient lawgiver still exercises a tremendous influence on popular ideas regarding women and the treatment that is their due.

We have seen the other sorrows that her beliefs bring on a Hindu woman, such as early marriage, a co-wife, and widowhood; and now the question we have to ask is: What courage and consolation does her religion afford her to meet these troubles? Crises test not only men but also creeds. 'Psychologically regarded, then,' says Dr. Maret 4 in an illuminative chapter, 'the function of religion is to restore men's confidence when it is shaken by crisis. Men do not seek crisis; they would always run away from it, if they could. . . Religion is the facing of the unknown. It is the courage in it that brings comfort.' Now an Indian woman stands pitifully in need of comfort and courage; a religion that has taught her that she herself is not trustworthy, and that has pressed her down to the status of a slave, is not one to imbue her with courage at the crises of life; and she is afraid of so many things! She is afraid of harm being done to her unborn child; afraid that through the malice of evil powers she may bear no child at all, and so be superseded; afraid of death; afraid of ghosts and the dead; and, above all, afraid of the most terrible of fates, widowhood: any of which calamities may befall her through the black malice of malevolent powers, or through the noxious Karma she has herself accumulated. In her fear she resembles some lonely, frightened child, shut up in a dark deserted house.

1 Laws of Manu (S. B. E. xxv), ix, v. 15. 2 Ibid. ix, v. 230.
3 Ibid. viii, v. 299.
4 R. R. Maret, Anthropology, p. 211.
Outside are horrible powers and shapes pressing with leering faces against the window-panes and striving to get in; the terrified child runs from casement to casement and from door to door, trying, with shaking, trembling fingers, to fasten this bolt and turn that lock more securely by vigil, fast, and prayer; all the time, however, she is throwing terrified looks over her shoulder, lest, while she is fastening one door, another should have been prised open, and some evil thing be upon her! At birth, at marriage, and at all special seasons of happiness, over-rejoicing and undiluted delight may have opened some such passage-door to evil, and so half her strength must be spent in averting the evil eye and the malicious jealousies of the powers of darkness. To her the appeal of Christ comes with special force through the realization of His mission to give light to them that sit in darkness and in the shadow of death, and of His revelation of the love of God surrounding her on every side, seeking, like the very sunlight it is, every crack and crannie through which it may penetrate and disperse her dread. Opposed to the misshapen, shadowy powers of darkness, comes to her the Light of the World, and, in exchange for a creed that would enslave her, He offers Liberty, Joy, and the Healing of her sorrows.

We have deliberately left out of this book any discussion of the Philosophy of Brâhmanism, for that is being dealt with by other writers in the series; but here for one moment we must pause to look at two ideas that lie at the base of all Brâhmanical thought and rites: Karma and Transmigration.¹

It is in the working out of these two undivorceable ideas that a Hindu, as we have already shown,² finds his answer to the riddle that has puzzled all thoughtful people: the inequalities of life and 'the heavy and the weary weight of all this unintelligible world'. Why is one man born poor, or maimed, or a prey to wicked passions? Why has another

¹ Cf. the writer's article on the 'Tyranny of the Past' in the Challenge, July 20, 1917.
² See p. 196.
a fair field and everything in his favour in the race of life? To such questionings the Hindu answers: It is the law of Karma, working itself out through various transmigrations; and to such an answer we are bound to pay the deference of a fair and sympathetic hearing, for it is an obvious effort to defend the ultimate righteousness on which he, as much as we, feel that the government of this world is based. 'Shall not', he too asks, 'the Judge of all the earth do right?'

Now at first sight the law of Karma does seem a fair law. The answer to the burthen of the mystery, to the riddle of all life's inequalities, it says, is to be found in the deeds of past births, for Karma is the accumulated energy of a man's past actions in his previous lives. We have already glanced at the popular beliefs as to the working of this law. To turn now to its classic exposition: As Manu words it,1 'What wombs this individual soul enters in this world, and in consequence of what actions, learn the particulars of that at large and in due order. Those who committed mortal sins (Mahāpātaka) having passed during large numbers of years through dreadful hells, obtain, after the expiration of (that term of punishment) the following births. The slayer of a Brāhmaṇ enters the womb of a dog, a pig, an ass, a camel, a cow, a goat, a sheep, a deer, a bird, a Čaṇḍāla (i.e. a Sweeper or other outcaste), and a Pukkasa (i.e. a despised member of mixed caste). A Brāhmaṇ who drinks (the spirituous liquor called) Surā shall enter the bodies of small and large insects, of moths, of birds feeding on ordure, and of destructive beasts. A Brāhmaṇ who steals the gold of a Brāhmaṇ shall pass a thousand times through the bodies of spiders, snakes and lizards, of aquatic animals, and of destructive Piśācas (i.e. witches). The violator of a guru's bed (enters) a hundred times (the forms) of grasses, shrubs and creepers, likewise of carnivorous (animals) and of (beasts) with fangs and of those doing cruel deeds.'

In another place Manu8 shows how picturesquely the

1 Laws of Manu (S. B. E. xxv), xii, vv. 53 ff.
2 Ibid. xii, vv. 53 ff.
3 Ibid. xi, v. 50.
punishment fits the crime, for in his next life an informer has a foul-smelling nose; 'a calumniator, a stinking breath; a stealer of grain, deficiency in limbs; he who adulterates (grain), redundant limbs; a stealer of (cooked) food, dyspepsia; a stealer of the words (of the Veda), dumbness; a stealer of clothes, white leprosy; a horse-stealer, lameness. The stealer of a lamp will become blind; he who extinguishes it will become one-eyed; injury (to sentient beings) is punished by a general sickliness; an adulterer (will have) swellings (in his limbs). Thus in consequence of a remnant of (the guilt of former) crimes, are born idiots, dumb, blind, deaf and deformed men, who are (all) despised by the virtuous.'

Perhaps the virtuous might be justified in their contemptuous attitude, if they could be absolutely sure that the unfortunate persons had committed these offences in a previous birth. But supposing they had not? Suppose the law of Karma were only a delusion, not a solution of the riddle after all? Then how terrible is the wrong that it inflicts on the dumb and the blind, the halt and the lame, who, in addition to their heavy affliction, have to bear the heavier weight of the contempt of all mankind.

It is this belief, by the way, that is responsible for the fact that hospitals and asylums have played so small a part in Hindu charity, until the followers of Christ showed the way; for the privilege of the virtuous was not to relieve pain, but to despise the sufferers.

Even, however, if the existence of such a law as that of Karma could ever be proved, is it so certain that it is in accord with the eternal justice?

There was once a school in England for children whose parents were abroad, and the discipline of that school was conducted on the following lines. The head master use wait till after nightfall, when all the children were asleep and in their happy slumbers had completely forgotten any little peccadilloes committed during the day, and then he would suddenly descend on them and whip them soundly for their
forgotten faults. To terrified, helpless, clinging children, roused by this sudden pain in the darkness of night, would there seem to be justice in that punishment, when they did not even remember the errors for which they were being punished? And similarly, how can a man assent to the justice of some punishment, when he does not even know for what crime he is being punished, or in which of his supposed past lives he may have committed it?

There is justice, of course, in reaping in this life what one is conscious oneself of having sown. ‘As a man sows, so shall he reap’ has its Indian counterpart in the fine saying:

‘He who plants mangoes, mangoes shall he eat; Whoso plants thorns, thorns shall wound his feet.

But that is a very different thing from reaping in another life what one is not conscious of having sown.

After all, this doctrine does not solve the problem of life; it rather evades it by merely pushing the riddle a stage or two farther back. Suppose a man is lame in this life, Manu would have us believe that it is because he stole a horse in his previous birth;¹ if we see a vulture, we are to believe that in a former life it must have been a man who stole meat;² while a person who steals grain in this life becomes a rat in his next birth.³ But does that answer the question why he stole? No, a pāṇḍit will simply tell you that the man owes his being a thief to his bad Karma, that is to say, that the accumulated energy of his past evil actions has made him a thief. But then we have to go back to a previous birth and ask what led him to do those evil actions that accumulated this baneful Karma, and we are told that his ill deeds in a still earlier life must have done so, and so on, and so on. We can get no clue to what led to the very first evil deed, but its responsibility is always put on the noxious Karma of a previous life, like a moral house-that-Jack-built, or, as Śaṅkarācārya himself

¹ Laws of Manu (S. B. E. xxv), xi, v. 51.
² Ibid. xii, v. 63.
³ Ibid. xii, v. 62.
says, like 'an endless chain of blind men leading other blind men'. How indeed can a law which cuts across all personal responsibility for sin make for righteousness?

When a thoughtful Hindu feels that the theory of Karma and Transmigration does not answer for him the riddle of life, but merely evades it, he begins to ask this question: Does it make good? In actual present-day life does the working out of this law make for righteousness? He is told, doubtless, that it makes for a certain morality, because a man is afraid to do evil, lest he be punished for it in a future life, and is anxious to do good and reap the reward in other rebirths. As a matter of fact, he may well doubt whether a conscious working for marks does lead to the highest morality, for he sees that the noblest men around him are not governed by any such motive, but by a simple desire to do right. But he knows, too, that the splendid band of reformers who are working for the uplift of India are faced, among other things, by two great problems: caste and the question of child widows. And he realizes that it is the law of Karma that is directly responsible for both of these abuses. An outcaste, say a Sweeper, who, with his children after him, is condemned to empty slops for ever and ever, must live in a cluster of huts without the city wall, for he is by his very birth shown to be a tried, convicted, and sentenced felon, whose offence was very likely that of murdering a Brähman. *The dwellings of Cândālas and Svapačas* (i.e. outcastes), says Manu, 'shall be outside the village, and their wealth (shall be) dogs and donkeys. Their dress (shall be) the garments of the dead, (they shall eat) their food from broken dishes, black iron (shall be) their ornaments, and they must always wander from place to place. A man who fulfils a religious duty shall not seek intercourse with them; their transactions (shall be) among

1 Vedānta Sūtra (S. B. E. ii), ii. 37.
2 Laws of Manu (S. B. E. xxxv), xii, v. 55.
3 Much of this is no dead letter to-day. In Kāthiāwār, for instance, special carriages are set apart on trains for outcasts (these carriages are labelled *Dhefs*), and they are allowed to enter no other. The writer's Sweeper was
themselves, and their marriages with their equals. Their food shall be given them by others (than an Áryan giver) in a broken dish; at nights they shall not walk about in villages and in towns. By day they may go about for the purpose of their work, distinguished by marks at the king’s command, and they shall carry out the corpses of persons who have no relatives.  

Even the caste above the outcastes must, according to Manu, always be kept in subjection to Bráhmans. If a Śúdra ‘mentions the name and castes of the (Twice-born) with contumely, an iron nail, ten fingers long, shall be thrust into his mouth. If he arrogantly teaches Bráhmans their duty, the king shall cause hot oil to be poured into his mouth and into his ears’. No one of low caste could ever hope to rise by education or exertion or innate genius to a higher state, for ‘a Śúdra, though emancipated by his master, is not released from servitude, since that is innate in him; who can set him free from it?’

Much of the unrest in India has been caused by the action of the British Government in throwing wide open the gates of opportunity to high-born and low-born alike. It is difficult for people at home to realize the distinction between the selfish agitator, who is scheming to retain all his class privileges, and the true reformer who is really anxious for the uplift of India. The test is simply to discover how either is willing to treat the outcastes and the low-castes; for to the true reformer, and there are many such, who realizes that the world is moving from ‘caste to contract’, and that India must move in the same direction, if she is to take her true place in the world and be able to utilize all her wealth of intellect wherever lodged, caste is no privilege to be clung to, but a fetter to be snapped.

made to miss his train and kept all one bitter winter night on an unsheltered platform, because there happened to be no such carriage on the train. The Twice-born are defiled by the mere touch of the outcaste.

1 Laws of Manu (S. B. E. xxv), x, vv. 51 ff.
2 Ibid. viii, vv. 271 ff.  
3 Ibid. viii, v. 414.
But caste does not only injure the oppressed and the downtrodden; at the other end of the scale, how enormously it must increase the difficulty of learning the grace and power of humility (difficult enough for any mortal, European or Hindu!) for a Brāhman, who believes that his high position is due to his own merits in the forgotten past, and that the world is simply made for him.

'A Brāhman, coming into existence, is born as the highest on earth, the lord of all created beings, for the protection of the treasury of the law. Whatever exists in the world is the property of the Brāhman; on account of the excellence of his origin the Brāhman is, indeed, entitled to it all. The Brāhman eats but his own food, wears but his own apparel, bestows but his own in alms; other mortals subsist through the benevolence of the Brāhman.'

Or again, how is a man to overcome selfishness when his own sacred law teaches him that 'No collection of wealth must be made by a Śūdra, even though he be able (to do it); for a Śūdra who has acquired wealth gives pain to Brāhmans'? How hard these laws must make it for a Brāhman to avoid the pride and selfishness and self-assertion of a self-made man who has won everything through his own past merits, and how difficult they must make it for him to attain that self-repression and lowliness which are the Hindu ideal.

The very greatness of his original position intensifies the heroism of a Brāhman who becomes a Christian. One may well doubt if any but an Indian can appreciate the wrench it is to a Twice-born to cross over and take sides with Christ. He stakes everything on the truth of the unseen. He flings away a position that he has been taught from his earliest days he owes to his past merit; and, if after all he should be making a mistake, he knows that he will pay for it in his future life by being born at best as a scavenger. Every Hindu is a man of the strongest domestic affection, but, by taking this step of joining the Christian Church, he almost invariably cuts

1 Laws of Manu (S. B. E. xxv), i, v. 99.  
2 Ibid. x, v. 129.
himself off for ever from mother and sister, wife and child. Above all, he cannot perform the funeral ceremonies for his father, and, if he is making a mistake, that mistake imperils his father's future lives as well as his own. (A Hindu can well understand what is implied in our Lord's words: 'Let the dead bury their dead, but follow thou me'.) A convert realizes also the awful pain he is causing his relatives, and the degradation and shame they feel that he is bringing on them. Very often, as we have seen, they will treat him as literally dead to them, and even perform a Srāddha for him.

Surely it behoves every follower of Christ, in whatever 'service' he may be, to offer to the new convert every consolation that love and tact, sympathy and kindness, can suggest; but the real power to give solace lies with Him who welcomes the Twice-born into the new family of God with the words: 'There is no man that hath left house, or wife, or brethren, or parents, or children, for the Kingdom of God's sake, who shall not receive manifold more in this time, and in the world to come eternal life'.

We outsiders cannot gauge the cost of the consecration, but neither can we tell the depth of the joy that such obedience brings; only we know that some day such will be given the honour meet for Confessors, for these are they that have followed the Lamb whithersoever He goeth. These were purchased from among men to be the firstfruits unto God and unto the Lamb.

Caste and its attendant evils, however, are not the only effects of the law of Karma and Transmigration. As we have noticed before, it is in the case of a child-widow that the fruit of this law is most clearly shown. Every Hindu loves children and, were it not for this theory, would show them sympathy in their hour of need; but the popular exposition of the law of Karma teaches that, if a wife commits adultery, she will be punished by becoming a widow during seven successive rebirths, and therefore a widow is ipso facto an adulteress, detected, exposed, and sentenced. Does it seem likely that

1 S. Luke xviii. 29, 30.  
2 Rev. xiv. 4.
a theory which brands a little child from her earliest years as a bad woman will help her to grow up into a good one?

It is, however, when a reformer endeavours to persuade the community to undertake some action for the common weal that he feels the full weight of the dead hand of Karma upon him, for this theory breeds the rankest individualism. All action leads to Karma: good action leads to the accumulation of good Karma, and evil action stores up noxious Karma, but both alike tie the individual to the wheel of rebirth; so that, in the popular belief, whilst it is good to do good, it is better still to do nothing at all.

It is his belief in Karma that makes it so difficult to persuade an Indian to take an interest in such things as the sanitation of his village (since, if people die of cholera, it is owing to their evil Karma, not to infection); to mend a road (for the upset of a cart and the death of owner or bullocks is necessarily due to maleficent Karma, not to carelessness); to raise the age of child-marriage (seeing that, if the immature wife dies, it is not owing to the bestiality of her husband, but ex hypothesi to her own Karma); or to recruit for the army, since victory will go to the side that happens to have the better Karma.

The popular belief is that a man has to be born eight million four hundred thousand times before he can obtain release: according to his Karma, he will be born an ant, a beast, a bird, or a man of high or of low caste, the best Karma being rewarded by birth as a Brähman. But the chief end of a Hindu is to cut short all these rebirths, whether good or bad, by every means in his power. We have seen some of the methods by which he endeavours to do this, such as mentioning the name of Rāma at the moment of death, or dying as a Sannyāsī. But as another way of cutting short these millions of transmigrations is by sheer inaction which can breed nothing (ex nihilo nihil fit), not only is individualism a necessary concomitant of Karma, but altruism is ruled out.

Think how the path of reformers is blocked, when all heroic
self-sacrifice for others, all bearing of another's pain, runs counter to the popular working of this law. How could the great Italian patriot have cried to people emasculated by such a belief: 'Come and suffer'? For by suffering and dying in this life to redeem their country they would merely have been laying up fresh Karma against their next life. Moreover, they might have replied: 'The suffering of our countrymen under Austrian tyranny is only the just reward of their individual past Karma; why should we interfere?' If Nelson had reminded believers in Karma that they were expected to do their duty, they could logically have said: 'Our duty is to ourselves; we will sit and watch you fight'. Those fine men who are labouring to persuade the youth of India to serve their motherland are working with their hands tied and their feet clogged by a law which declares that all action, even the most unselfish, leads to rebirth—a noble rebirth truly, but still rebirth, a further stile across the road that leads to Liberation. It was because he realized that the dead weight of Karma and caste crushed out all public spirit that one reformer at least became a Christian, finding in Christ the only hope for the true freedom of India.

This belief also rules out the idea of giving one's life that another may live. The Indians who died for us in France and so saved Europe are not logically, according to this theory, objects for our gratitude and love; they merely reaped the fruit of past sins; so their widows are also logically denied the proud joy of feeling that they are giving everything, even their husbands, for their country. They are, in fact, just like any other widows, branded for past sinfulness. It seems impossible that foolish women in England or America, however much they love the latest craze, should palter with this theory for a moment, for those new-made graves in Flanders have shut it out from our thoughts for ever; since, according to this law, the golden boys who, for our sakes and our redemption, flung away all that the future held for them, were simply reaping the reward of their past sin. Would any theoretic
believer in Karma dare to comfort a new-made war-widow by
telling her that she had been an adulteress, and that her man,
who had lain and suffered the agonies of thirst and wounds
those long nights through, till death relieved his vigil, had been
a vile scoundrel in his previous births?

It is well that men, in India as elsewhere, do not shape
their lives altogether by their theories. The Hindu heart, for
all these hardening influences, is a very human heart, and, as
all who know India can testify, often rises to great heights of
sympathy and compassion. Nevertheless, the theory remains,
and, universally acknowledged as it is, it cannot fail to affect
conduct and opinion in innumerable ways. For instance,
according to the law of Karma, Edith Cavell—that pure
heroic soul who reached the supreme heights of love and
forgiveness—must have been in her former lives a demon of
cruelty. Imagine the spiritual poverty of the world if this
theory were true, and all the sighs and tears and martyrdoms
of men who died for others had to be catalogued as punishments
that fitted each its crime. According to the law of Karma,
Christ Himself must have suffered, not for us men and for
our salvation, but as the just reward of vile deeds in previous
incarnations, during which He must have revelled in foul
treachery and animal brutality. Daily with the theory as
we may, it is for ever barred out of Christendom by the
white figure on the cross.

In opposition to the doctrine of Karma is set God's great
law of the Forgiveness of Sins. But there is no Christian
doctrine that needs stating with greater care, for, loosely
worded, it has not only shocked the Indian conscience, but
has undoubtedly harmed the Indian Christian Community.

 Forgiveness is never a cheap thing. Some one—it may be
God—but some one always pays. Neither is forgiveness the
instant undiscriminating abrogation of all penalty. Holy
writ gives no warrant for an easy 'God will forgive; c'est son métier'; its teaching is on higher, nobler lines.
'Thou wast a God that forgavest them', says the Psalmist,
'though Thou tookest vengeance of their doings.' But forgiveness does mean 'the reversal of relations between God and the sinner, and with that the end of separation, which is the chief and deadliest element in sin's penalty.' The little lad who, having disobeyed, went pluckily to his father and ended his spontaneous confession with the words: 'Whip me, Father, but, I say, let's be friends again', had grasped the innermost meaning of penitence.

True penitence, to which alone forgiveness is promised, has always two sides: Sorrow for the past and intention for the future. 'Forgive us all that is past, and grant that we may ever hereafter serve and please thee in newness of life.' It does not ask to get off the present whipping. The return of the prodigal meant not only contrition for the past, but also intention to submit to the discipline of the home for the future; yet not all the father's love could give him back his boyhood's fresh glad strength and sunlit imagination.

But the forgiveness of God, by removing the intolerable burden of the guilt of our past sin, and snapping its present hold over us, does remove the obstacle to future progress. 'He breaks the power of cancelled sin and sets the prisoner free.' Taking away the awful restlessness of a soul that has something to hide, God floods it instead with the peace that passes all understanding.

To many thinking people, in India as in England, it used to be a real difficulty that this forgiveness and this peace were won through the sufferings of Another. But in this dread war we have learnt what it is to owe everything to our brothers who have flung away their lives for us, and in the new humility which that has taught us, we can better understand how our elder brother, Christ, has given us rest by His sorrow and life by His death.

1 Psalm xcix. 8.
2 Haigh, Some Leading Ideas of Hinduism, p. 42.
3 'He is a japer and a gabber, and no verray repentant, that eftsoone dooth thing, for which him oghte repente. Wepinge, and nat for to stinte to doon sinne, may nat avaylle.' Chaucer, Parson's Tale, § 2.
THE APPEAL OF CHRIST

A Brähman not long ago said to the writer that, while the Prārthanā Samāja had taught him that the popular Hindu incarnations were false, when he heard that Christ, becoming incarnate, had atoned for sin, there grew up in his mind the certainty that Christ was the true Incarnation. Hinduism, he said, offered no break with the past, no hope that a man might become a new creature, with whom old things had passed away. Every reflecting Hindu is bound to ask himself some time or other if he must for ever remain bound by the tyranny of the past, if nothing can break the chain that unknown acts in unremembered births have fastened round his neck. And nearly every Brähman friend of the writer who has been attracted to Christianity gave as one of his reasons the break with the past which Christ makes possible. Herein lies one great difference between Christianity and Brähmanism.

The law of Karma at its best compels a man to dull middle age, to live for ever on past hoardings of merit gathered in past births, never knowing when the stored-up treasure, on which his happiness depends, may run out, and all his past evil deeds swarm suddenly down on him, like a hive of stinging bees. His present life and his uncertain future are alike under the tyranny of the past. Whereas Christianity has in it the undying freshness of spring, the promise of youth, and the call of romance. 'Everything lies before you, forget what lies behind' is the message of the Evangel that says: 'I have blotted out as a thick cloud thy transgressions, and as a cloud thy sins: return unto me; for I have redeemed thee'.

It is the certainty of guilt blotted out that brings with it the strenuous longing to press forward in the power of a New Life. Christianity alone of all the religions of the East is the Gospel of the second chance, of the fresh start, not only in childhood, but, through the miracle of the new birth, even when a man is old. To a Hindu, who, by virtue of his second birth, has passed from the ranks of the Śūdra into those of the Twice-born, there is nothing strange in our Lord's words:

1 Isa. xlv. 22.
TO THE TWICE-BORN

‘Except a man be born anew, he cannot see the Kingdom of God’.

Karma looks for ever towards the past, towards what men have done, their own past actions: hence its hopelessness. But Christ looks forward and sees men ever, not as they have been, not even as they are now, but as they are becoming; for he is the God of Hope. ‘A man shall hope that He that giveth him remission of sins shall give him eke grace well for to do. For in the flower is hope of fruit in time cominge; and in forgivenessee of sins hope of grace well for to do.’

The appeal of Christ comes to some of the noblest of the Twice-born through the future He offers to India. Sometimes on a reformer, breaking his heart over the thought of India, bound for ever by the Karmic theory to the wheels of the past and split up into innumerable creeds and castes, which dissipate all her strength, there dawns suddenly the idea of a Universal Church. Every one of us has somewhere this ideal, whether it be like the City of God of St. Augustine, or the Utopia of Sir Thomas More, or the Ideal Republic of Plato. And some have found their ideal fulfilled in the full glory of the Holy Catholic Church of Christ, that great company of believers scattered throughout all the world, purchased out of every tribe and tongue and people, and made unto God a kingdom and priests; in which there are no distinctions of bond or free, male or female, Greek or Scythian, Indian or English. One Indian confessed that he had looked in vain for any hope for India in Islam or Hinduisum, till, appalled by their isolating and reactionary tendencies, he had become convinced that the future of this mighty continent lay with the Indian Christian Church, humble and all unconscious of its powers as it yet is, for in it alone, as in some lowly acorn, lay the germ of life and unity.

Two different Brähman friends told the writer that the appeal of Christ lay to them in the hope He offers of a Life after Death. The logical outcome of the law of Karma, that

1 S. John iii. 3.
2 Chaucer, Parson’s Tale, § 13.
a man reaps after death the fruits of previous actions in his rebirths, as a man, an animal, or a clod, leaves no room for the motive of Śrāddha, which is to win comfort for the soul on its journey to another world and to re-unite him with his ancestors. According to the Karmic theory, all that depends on his past actions; yet so desperately does every Hindu cling to his belief in the efficacy of Śrāddha, that the desire to possess a son, who alone can perform the funeral sacrifice, colours the whole life of the most advanced Vedantist. This double contradictory belief about the future life has produced a piteous uncertainty. Over and over again the writer has been told by her Indian friends that they have no certain knowledge of a life beyond.

To these the tremendous sentences that head our Burial Service are, in their magnificent certainty, a veritable revelation of a Power that has conquered death and all its fears. 'I am the Resurrection and the Life,' saith the Lord: 'he that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live: and whosoever liveth and believeth in me shall never die.'

'I know that my Redeemer liveth, and that he shall stand up at the last upon the Earth: and after my skin hath been thus destroyed, yet without my flesh shall I see God: whom I shall see for myself and mine eyes shall behold, and not another.'

Logically Hinduism leaves no room for the reunion after death of husband and wife, of parent and child; for each, according to his various Karma, will be treading different paths, one, it may be, as an ant, and another as a god. The theory of Karma admits of no 'knitting severed friend-

---

1 Because a son delivers (trāyate) his father from the hell called Put, he was therefore called put-tra (a deliverer from Put) by the Self-Existant (Svayambhu) himself. Laws of Manu (S. B. E. xxv), ix, v. 138.
2 S. John xi. 25, 26.
3 Job xix. 25-7.
4 For in the next world neither father, nor mother, nor wife, nor sons, nor relations stay to be his companions; spiritual merit alone remains (with him). Single is each being born; single it dies; single it enjoys (the reward of its) virtue; single (it suffers the punishment of its) sin. Laws of Manu (S. B. E. xxv), iv, vv. 239 and 240.
ships up', no reunion of Hallam and Tennyson, such as inspired the noblest passages of *In Memoriam*; or of husband and wife, such as led Charles Kingsley to choose for himself and his wife the motto: 'AMAVIMUS, AMAMUS, AMABIMUS'.

To a Hindu his past, his present, and his future are all overshadowed by the despotism of Karma; whereas a Christian has the right to live absolutely in the present, as gay as a bird in the sunshine; for the past is pardoned, and the future, whether in this life, or the life beyond, is in his Father's hand.

But the *Supreme Appeal* to the Twice-born comes, not merely through the Christian creed, or even through the thought of what Christ has done or is doing for him, but through his realization of what Christ is in Himself.

A Hindu can appreciate far more fully than we children of a Western world the character of our Lord, for the ideal that character enshrines is in many ways more Eastern than Western. Much that we fail to fathom of the infinite riches of His personality the Indian mind comprehends at once: His gentleness, His approachability, His love of children, His wit and humour (so Oriental in their form), His knowledge of village life and thought, His parables and illustrations, based on stories and sayings still current in the East (the empty house, the hire of labourers, the merchantman, the trumpeted almsgiving, the grinding at the mill); His idealism and the other-worldliness of His Kingdom; still more, His patience under provocation, His sweetness under wrong, His love and forgiveness of His enemies, His love for his country, His patriotism, and His wide love for all mankind.

Such is the Christ who stands before the new India of to-day, the Incarnate Son of God, who fulfils the highest ideals of her sons, removes all their fears, and offers them, with outstretched hands, the unsearchable riches of His love.

What a magnificent response a Hindu can make to that appeal, what spiritual wealth he can bring to that treasury, into which the wealth of all nations shall be poured! For
the Twice-born understand something of the power of Sacraments, and of the strength that can be won through resolute self-discipline; they recognize the omnipresence of the unseen world and the importance of the spiritual rather than the material. Above all, a Hindu has the power of utter consecration to his god (tana, mano, dhana) of supreme love and devotion (bhakti) to him, and unconsciously he is seeking a God worthy of his devotion; as yet all unknowing that, through the long years of India's marvellous spiritual history, God has been calling him; 'for the Father seeketh such to worship Him'.

The more one studies the Ritual of the Brāhmans and counts up all the fasting, toil, and time spent on the worship of imperfect gods, the more is one forced to wonder what homage the Twice-born might not pay to a God worthy of their adoration. Surely at the last no voices will thrill with deeper love than theirs amid the thousands of thousands who cry with a great voice:

'Worthy is the Lamb that has been sacrificed to receive the power and riches and wisdom and might and honour and glory and blessing.'
INDEX

Abhimanyu, 2.
Abhiseka, ceremony, 348.
Abhyātāna, 86.
Ablutions, 213, 235, 244.
Absolution, see Confession.
Absorption in the divine, 197 f.
Abu, 364.
Acacia Catechu, see Khadira.
Āchārya, 21, 124, 168, 344, 346, 410 f.
Accessories of worship worshipped, 382.
Account-books, worship of, 339 f.
Additional month, 340 f.
Adhika Māsa, 340.
Aditi, 168, 236 n.
Adoption, 131 ff.
Advaitin theory, 431.
Ādya Śrāddha, 177 n.
Aegle Marmelos, 34. See Bilva.
Affusion, 214 n.
Afterbirth, disposal of, 5, 6.
Afternoon worship, 393.
Agastya, 161, 178 n.
Aghanarṣaṇa, 220.
Agni (fire), 37, 55, 84, 85, 86, 95, 115, 145, 147, 148, 159, 176, 178, 225 ff., 282, 358 f., 375; resides in the mouth, 226 n.; appearance of, 236.
Agniḥotra, 45 n., 79, 107, 150, 226.
Agni-Vaṭuna, 85.
Aḥalyā, 50 n.
Ajamila, 199.
Akṣaya Trīṣṇyā, 291.
Alcoholic drinks, 243.
Alcor, 137 n.
Allahābād, 143 n., 365.
Almsgiving, 115, 133, 228, 272 f.;
secret, 273; see also Brāhmans, gifts to.
Āmānna, 142.
Anāvāṣya, 127, 262.
Ambā, 376.
Ananta Caturdāśī, 325.
Ancestors: reconciliation of, 124, 321; spirits of, see Pitri; worship of, see Pitri-tarpana; days sacred to, see Pitri Days.
Annakūṭa, 264 ff., 271 n.
Anna-prāṣaṇa, 19.
Annaphāṇa (goddess), 257, 376 408.
Anointing (at wedding), 79.
Antelope-skin, see Skin.
Anthropology, Notes and Queries on, see Notes, &c.
Anumati (goddess), 237.
Aṣāna, 243.
Aṣāṅgī, 115.
April–May, see Vaiśākha.
Apsara, 85.
Āravalli, 366.
Āravārā, 289.
Areca-nut in worship, 172, &c.
Arga, 76.
Argha-pradāna, 221.
Arghya, 194, 216 n.
Aṣṭāṅga-nut, 11, 117.
Arka (tree), 256, 294.
Arṣa marriage, 55.
Aruṇa, 258.
Arundhati, 137.
Ārya Samāj, 154.
Āryamā, 86.
Āṣaṇa Suddhi, 218.
Ascetics: burial of, 153, 200 ff.; fallen, see Aśīla; forbidden to travel in monsoon, 303; orders of, 378 n., 424; represented by bride and groom, 68 f.; reverence for, 366; special gate into Yama’s kingdom for, 194; support of, 303; true and false, 421.
Ashes (funeral), disposal of, 152; (sacred), 214, 216, 348.
Aśoka (king), 280; (tree), 65, 362 n.
Aśrama (the four), 138 f., 422; (order of ascetics), 378 n., 424.
Āśura (marriage), 56.
Āśvina (twelfth month), 328, 329 ff.
Āśvinī, 296.
Āśvinī Kumāra, 137, 412.
Atharvaveda, 344.
Aśīla, 200 f., 320, 378 f., 385, 390, 392, 396, 423 n.
Āśītheya, 237.
Atonement (discussed), 446 ff.
Āṭura Sannyāsi, 139.
Āvadha Brāhmans, 12, 42, 48, 56, 67 n., 70, 100, 113.
Augury, see Omens.
August-September, see Bhāḍrapada. Aum, see Om.
Aunt (maternal), 24; (paternal), 10, 13, 14, 19, 40, 66, 103, 113, 114, 283.
Auspicious and inauspicious: days and times, 20, 23, 28, 59, 67, 113, 116, 154, 252 ff., 275 f., 291, 334; fingers, 37, 75; lamp, 93; marks, 11, 49, 60, 63, 71, 73, 110, 115, 116, 117, 155, 175, 205, 319; rites, 34, 125 f.; side, 30, 35, 329 n.; signs, 21 n., 30, 30 n., 33, 144, 210 f.; things, 356, 358; thread (given to bride), 71.
Āvassaki, 390 n.
Āvatāra, 270, 275, 401 ff., 429.
Bābul, see Bāvāla.
Babyhood, 1 ff.
Badrī Kedāranātha, 425.
Bāhūdaka, 424.
Bājari, 140, 286.

Baleva, 309 f.
Bali, Balīrāja, 59, 309 f.
Bālidāna, 237.
Bamboo pole (at ceremonies), 29, 61, 128.
Baniā, 101, 206, 246.
Banyan tree, 300.
Baptismal rites, 214 n., 308.
Barber, 44.
Barley, 142, 159 f., 172, 183, 350.
Barren woman, malice of, 112, 259; fast on Sundays for, 259.
Bathe: of infants, 6; of mother, 12, 117; before and after thread ceremony, 30, 39; of bride, 69; of bridegroom, 76; daily, 213, 235; in cold water, 213, 274; of women, 247; in intercalary month, 340 f.; of idol, see Washing.
Bātu, Bātuka, 31 n., 38.
Bāvāla wood, 12, 14, 52, 149, 274, 292, 319.
Beads, telling, see Rosary.
Beam, 2, 356.
Beauty, Day of, see Rūpa ēaturdasi.
Bedstead, 2.
Beef-eating, 240.
Beggars, 38, 303, 421 f.
Bell, in temple, 233, 370, 379, 385, 389, 392; rung to ward off demons, 239.
Bengal, 56, 329 n., 338 n.
Best man at wedding, 71.
Betrothal, 46 ff.; good days for, 273.
Better half (wife of husband), 98.
Bhadāli, 297.
Bhadra, 167 n., 175 n.
Bhadrapada (eleventh month), 320 ff.
Bhaga, 87.
Bhagavadgītā, 229, 425, 429; read aloud in temple, 393; read at death-bed, 142; used by Śaiva, 420.
Bhāgavata Purāṇa, 128, 321.
Bhāgiratha, 298.
Bhāgī-śya, 268.
Bhātirava, 408, 414, 419 n.
Bhātiravi, 338.
Bhakti, 431.
Bhakti-mārga, xvi, 419 f.
INDEX

Bhambdha, 336.  
Bhama, 279.  
Bhanga, see Outcasts.  
Bhara, 8.  
Bharad, 296.  
Bhasma, 216, 216 n.  
Bhudda, 28, 56, 206.  
Bhil, 149, 318, 338.  
Bhima, 299.  
Bhima-kadasi, 299.  
Bhima-saikara, 365 n.  
Bhelanatha, 419.  
Bhringaraja, 178 n.  
Bhu, 121.  
Bhupati, 242.  
Bhuta, 161, 199, 201, 337 n.  
Bhuta-loka, 272.  
Bhuvanesvara, 104.  
Bhuvanesvari, 104.  
Bilva, 34, 232, 277, 305, 384, 392, 408.  
Bind, things that, 1 ff.  
Birth: ceremonies, 1 ff.; announcement of, 4; birthmarks, 8; superstitions connected with 7 ff.; things associated with, 289, 317; time of, 3, 8; b. of Krishna, see Krishna; b. of Rama, see Rama-navami.  
Birthdays, 26, 213; auspicious days for, 254 ff., 261.  
Black offerings, 256.  
Black pot (at funerals), 146, 148, 152.  
Blessing, 120; at Divail, 339; at marriage, 84, 90.  
Blossoms, see Flowers.  
Body, indwelt by Visnu, 170.  
Bola-catha, 311 ff.  
Bombay Gazetteer, 33 n., 379 n.  
Books, judgement, 194.  
Booth: at Gyaatri Pura\r\nara\n, 349; at investiture, 29; at sacrifice, 345; at wedding, 61 ff., 101.  
Boundary-god, 88.  
Brahm, 92, 227, 234, 236, 237, 238, 242; dwells in back of hand, 210; in cooked food, 242, 246; image of, in heart, 229; name repeated, 24; name given to rubbing-stone, 377, 380 n.; placated by laddus, 313 n.; represented in ceremonies, 168, 344 ff.; sin of, 429; symbolized in sacred thread, 32; visit to Padma, 59, 271; worship of, 29, 61, 87, 125, 126, 170, 173; Sakti of, 220.  
Brahma marriage, 55.  
Brahma Sam\r\n, 154 n.  
Brahmacari, Brahma\r\nra, 31, 38.  
Brahmagranti, 32.  
Brahma-loka, 220.  
Brahma-\r\n\r\nasa, 200.  
Brahmarandhra, 139.  
Brahmasutra, 425.  
Brahmayadna, see Scriptures, reading of.  
Brahmans: classes of, 127; gifts to, 2, 11, 44, 54, 65, 66, 94, 122, 125, 126, 128 ff., 133, 140 ff., 161, 169, 174, 177, 178, 190, 256, 272, 289, 299, 319, 329, 336, 339, 341, 415; (on behalf of the dead), 186, 193, 323; feeding of, 178, 291, 319, 326, 327, 349; imperfections among, 42 n.; professions derogatory to, 378 n.; represented by thumb, 168; reverence for, 24; six privileges of, 41; tradition of learning among, 44; worshipped, 345.  
Breakfast, see Meals.  
Bride: giving away of, 78; going to new home, 100 ff., 254; inspection of, 491; qualifications of, 47.  
Bridegroom, qualifications of, 48; represents king, 97; Siva, see Siva.  
Brihaspati, 34, 59, 91, 255.  
Brihaspati (planet), see Guru.  
Brihaspati-va\n, 255.  
Bronze, 271 n., 383 n.  
Brother and sister, relations between, 14, 86, 254, 261, 304; festival of, see Bh\r\n-\r\n, Pas\r\n.  
Brother’s part at wedding, 86.  
Bu\r\n (planet Mercury), 104, 288.  
Bu\r\nara, see Wednesday.  
Bull, image of, in Siva temple, 234, 370, 380, 380 n., 410, 412; used to remove broken linga, 416.  
Bull and heifer, marriage of, see Marriage.
INDEX

Bull-roarers, 336 n.
Burne, 339 n.
Burning-ground, 148 f.
Butter, see Clarified butter.

Caitra (sixth month), 28, 271, 287 ff., 294, 318.
Calendars, differences in, 287, 301 n., 317 n.
Camphor lamp in ceremonies, 232.
Čāmudā (form of Durgā), 217, 218.
Čāndula, 437.
Čāndula, 116, 168 n., 190. (See also Auspicious mark.)
Čandēśvara, 385.
Čandi, 350.
Čandi-māhātmya, 350 n.
Čandi-pāṭha, 350.
Čandra (god of mind), 137. See also Moon.
Čandra-loka, 272.
Cāraṇāmṛta, 388.
Cardinal points, protectors of, 24.
Cart, epidemic, 362.
Cartwheel-worship, 100.
Caste, 46, 246, 423, 440 f.
Cat, uncleanness of, 145.
Catechism at thread ceremony, 35.
Catholic, see Church.
Cauly-karma, 20.
Celibacy, observed for a period after marriage, 97 f.
Cemetery, children's, 152.
Ceylon, 372.
'Challenge', The, 436 n.
Character of God, 283, 429.
Charity, see Almsgiving.
Čhatthi, 10.
Child-birth, death in, 151, 191.
Children's part at birth, 3 f.; at name-giving, 14.
Child's cemetery, see Cemetery.
Child-widows, see Widows.
Child-wives, 103 f.
Cholera, remedies against, 361.
Christ, see Jesus.
Christianity, conversion to, 153 f., 442 f.
Christians, 7.
Church, Universal, 449.

Circumambulation: of banyan-tree, 300; of corpse, 145, 152; of cow, 312; of fire, 35, 85, 86, 176; of idols, 167, 387 f.; of pīpal-tree, 248, 290; of sun, 248; of temple, 234; of tulasi, 248.
Čitragupta (Yama's minister), 194.
Clarified butter (ṛghi): as test of death, 143; in ceremonies, 21, 23, 29, 39, 62, 85, 100, 140, 160, 169, 170, 173, 184, 345 ff., 355, 359, 383, 390, 411; lamp of, see Lamp; offered to Agni, 132, 226; on pyre, 152.
Clay: from sacred rivers, 213; c. images, 321; c. liṅga, see Liṅga.
Cloth, offering of, 174, 175; holy, for covering face, 239.
Clothes: at wedding, 63, 68 ff., 72, 74, 79, 82, 97, 98, 104, 105; of ascetics, 423; of boys, 31, 39, 40; of expectant mother, 118 f.; of idols, 138, 403, 411 n.; of mourners, 156, 158; of temple offician, 377, 379; of temple worshippers, 377, 389, 394; of widows, 204.
Co-marrige, see Remarriage.
Commandments given at investiture, 35.
Common meal: at wedding, 93; of god and worshippers, 317 n.
Communion, Holy, resemblances to, 93; fasting, 391.
Comparative Religion, 431 ff.
Compass, points of, see Points.
Concert, Divine, 395.
Čunch-shell, 161, 172, 174, 224, 257.
Condolence, visits of, 155.
Conduct, rules of: for Brāhmaṇī, 38; for Snataka, 43.
Confession and absolution, 246.
Consecration of idols, see Idols.
INDEX

Constellations, influence of, 296 f.
Contemplation, see Yoga.
Converts from Hinduism treated as dead, 153 f.
Cooking Day, 315.
Cooking, first, 105.
Copper coins in worship, 174.
Coral, 253.
Corpse, carrying of, 147; divinity of, 144, 145; dressing of, 144, 147; guarding of, 145; offered to Agni, 145, 148.
Cost of ceremonies, 348, 350, 377 ff.
Cotton-pods, 140.
Cow, gift of, 23, 44, 77 f., 94, 141, 194, 246, 343; five products of, 166, 412; milked on burning-ground, 153; not injured by inauspicious food, 184, 385; reverence for and worship of, 161, 214, 273, 311 ff., 324 f., 376; tail of, 141, 161, 194; the Heavenly, see Kāmadhenu.
Cow-dung, 142; cow-urine, 168.
Cow's-mouth, see Gaumukha.
Crocodile's-mouth, 375 n.
Croe, 395.
Cross-roads, sacrifices at, 146, 414 ff.
Crown: worn by expectant mother, 118; by mother-in-law at wedding, 81, 100.
Crows, offerings to, 187, 238.
Curds, ceremonial use of, 160, 173, 190.
Curtain between bride and groom, 73.

Dāiva marriage, 55.
Dākhani Brāhmans, 82. See also Deccan.
Dākini, 199.
Dāmodara Kūndā, 152, 280.
Dāna, see Almsgiving.
Dāndi, 201.
Dārgha grass, 22, 75, 76, 81, 85, 93, 124, 126, 142, 147, 150, 159, 161, 166, 168, 169, 171, 172, 173 f., 178 ff., 182 ff., 189, 215, 218, 226, 228, 229, 323, 324 n., 412.
'Dark Third', the, 111.
Darśana, 157, 366, 394.
Dāsā, 189.

Dasenī (festival), 52 n., 86 n., 122, 332 ff.
Dātāra Pir, 2, 3.
Daughter, part of, in funeral ceremonies, 179.
Day of the gods, 272.
Days of rest, 262.
Dead: Days of the, see Pitri days; Dark Fortnight of the, 326; gaining merit for the, 323; gifts for the, 323 f.; the Unhappy, 191, 199 ff.
Death, God of, see Yama.
Death, life after, see Life.
Death-bed, 142, 198.
Death-bed ascetics, 139.
Death-bed gifts, 140, 178.
Deccan, 56, 82, 203 n., 704 n., 288, 321.
December-January, see Paua.
Deerskin: at thread ceremony, 33, 40; at puberty, 104.
Defilement (ceremonial), see Sātaka.
Demons: inhabit space, 142; more powerful during night of the gods, 172; rites to guard against, 29, 220, 221, 239, 242, 284, 337 f., 415; Viṣṇu's weapons against, 224 f.; seek to inhabit idols, 411; and empty houses, 357.
Desire for a son, 112.
Deva Divālī, 268 ff.
Devadraṇya, 388 n.
Deva-loka, 272.
Devanyāsa, 232.
Deva-pūjana, 231.
Deva-harpana, 229.
Devi, 239, 365; heaven of, 197.
Devotion, Way of, see Bhakti-mārga.
Dhāmbāli, 240.
Dhana-terasa, 335 f.
Dhārma Pīṇḍa, 124.
Dhārma-rāja (name of Yama), 194.
Dhātā, 237.
Dheēf, see Outcastes.
Dhṛiti, 30 n.
Dhrolo, 301 n.
Diet of nursing mother, 7, 12, 17.
Dikpāla, 87, 150, 359; god of ears, 412.
Dilipa (king), 324.
Dining, separation of sexes when, 30.
Dipili, see Divili.
Divjvali, see Divvili.
Directions, auspicious and otherwise, 145, 152, 173, 215, 229; see also Points of the Compass.
Divili, 19, 288, 334, 335 ff.
Divaso, 108 ff., 304.
Divided pot, 176.
Divivatiation, see Omens.
Divinity of bride and groom, 68, 70, 72, 79, 97 n.
Divorce, 131.
Dogs, feeding of, 193, 238, 385; of Yama, 193, 238.
Donkey (vehicle of Mother Smallpox), 307.
Dravhal, 50 n.
Dress, see Clothes.
Dressing, 214; of idols, see Clothes.
Drinking, method of, 243.
Drun, Holi, 282.
Dubois, 43, 374 n.
Duida-pakha, 244.
'Dumb Third', the, 110.
Durga, 53 n., 376.
Durga Pujà holidays, 329 n.
Durgastami, 216.
Durva-grass, 354.
Durvastami, 323 f.
Dvaraka, 143, 366, 425.
Dvarapala, 344.
Ear, sacredness of right, 211, 364.
Ear-boring, 23 f.
Early marriage, 54.
Earth, gifts of, 140; sacrifice to, 146, 160; see also Prithivi.
Eating, apparatus for, 240.
Eclipse, 213, 245, 351 f.
Egg on temple, 409.
Egress of soul at death, 139.
Eighth month, see Jyestha.
Ekadasi Shradhha, 171 ff.
Ekadasi, 143, 260.
Ekoddita Shradhha, 177 ff.
Elephant-headed god, see Ganeṣa.

Eleventh day: after birth, 12; after death, 163 ff.; of month, 143, 260.
Eleventh month, see Bhadrapada.
Eleventh, the Great, of Asvina, see Nima.
Endowments, see Temple.
Epic survivals, 367.
Evening worship, see Worship.
Evil spirits, see Demons, Ghosts.
Expectant mother, care of, 113; rules for, 114.
Expense, see Cost.

Farewell to bride, 99.
Farquhar, Dr., 432 n.
Fasts and festivals: brothers' and sisters', 268, 303; virgins', 50 ff.; women's, 110, 299, 306 ff., 315 f., 323 f., 331.
Feasts: young men's, before thread ceremony, 31; marriage, see wedding feasts; funeral, 178; inauspicious, 179.
February-March, see Phalguna.
Feeding: of animals, 143, 237 f.; of Brhamans, see Brhamans.
Feet-washing at wedding, 79.
Festivals and fasts, 263 ff. See also Fasts and festivals.
Ficus glomerata, 34.
Ficus Indica, 300 n.
Fifth month, see Phalguna.
Fingers, see Hands.
Fire: at wedding, 79, 84, 85; desecrated, 236; different kinds of, 236 n., 259 n.; indwelt by Rudra, 176; festivals of, 280 ff.; hearth, 357; reverence and worship to, 35 f., 54, 107, 126, 132, 225 f.; sacrificial, 35, 37, 346. See also Agni.
INDEX

First day of fortnight, 261.
First-fruits, 190, 193, 267.
First month, see Kārttīka.
Five (number), see Numbers.
Five Prīṇa, 242.
Five, worship of the, 125, 239, 248.
Fivefold Śrāddha, 173 f.
Fivefold worship, see Worship.
Flags: on house, 359; on temple, 409 n., 414.
Flood-worship, 310.
Flooding of Śiva’s temple, 313.
Floor, placing on, 119.
Flowers: auspicious and otherwise, 159 f.; throwing of, 386; used in worship, 175, 183 f., 234, 250, 381, 384, 389, 390.
Food: at weddings, 64; auspicious and otherwise, 184; cooked, 242, 245 f.; during mourning, 154; eaten, considered holy, 356 n.; forbidden, 166; identified with Brahmā, 242; of infants, 7, 20; of nursing mother, 7; for spirit after death, 179; offered to idols, eating of, 242, 258, 267, 267 n., 275, 339, 385, 402 f.; restricted at certain seasons, 52, 306 f.; white, 255. See also Meals.
Fool, notes of a, 114 n.
Forest, retiring to, 138 n.
Forgiveness: asked on New Year’s Day, 266.
Forgiveness of sins, prayer for, 234; discussed, 446 f.
Forty-fifth day after birth, 16, 17, 18.
Fortunate persons and things: actions, 71; householder, 346; women, 10, 39, 60, 84, 92, 94 n., 109, 113, 116, 118 f., 320, 327, 357.
Foundations, digging of, 353, 408 f.
Foundation-stone, laying of, 355.
Four (number), see Numbers.
Fourteenth day of fortnight, 261.
Fourth day of fortnight, 261.
Fourth month, see Magha.
Frazier, Golden Bough, 281.
Frescoes, 376.
Friday, 28, 256.

Full-moon Day, 262 f.; in Āṣaḍhā, 303; in Śrāvana, 307 ff.
Fun at weddings, 69, 73 f.
Funeral dress at, 145 f.; expense of, 150 f.; materials for, 146; of ascetics, 153, 200 f.; of children, 153, 201, 230; of women, 151; procession, 148; pyre, 149 f., 152; when no corpse, 151.

Gaṇasotri, 7.
Gambling, 318 f.
Gaṇa, 373.
Gaṇapati, see Gaṇeśa.
Gaṇapati (official in sacrifice), 344.
Gaṇḍakī (river), 365.
Gaṇḍharva, 55, 84, 85.
Gaṇḍharva marriage, 56.
Gaṇeśa, 372, 376, 380; auspiciousness of, 21, 24, 25, 29, 60, 65, 75, 85, 88, 95, 101, 102, 128, 132, 190, 231, 239, 257, 312, 346, 355, 357, 410, 412; first to be worshipped in ceremonies, 293, 380; lord of orifices of body, 293; lord of wealth, 294; origin of, 292; remover of obstacles, 322, 354, 372; special festival of, see Gaṇeśa-caturthi; wives and sons of, 293; worship of, in temple, 380, 387 n., 404.
Gaṇeśa-caturthi, 292 ff., 321 f.
Gaṅgā (Ganges), 70, 98 n., 143, 176, 213 f., 247, 298, 365, 376, 381; ten days’ worship of, 297 ff.; water of, 143, 151, 298, 360 f., 404, 410 f.
Gaṅgā-Jamnā, 176 n.
Gaṅgā-mandirā, 370.
Gaṅgāhāvana, 108.
Gaṅgī, 29.
Gargling (ceremonial), 415.
Garuda Purāṇa, 155.
Gates to Yama’s kingdom, 194.
Gaumukha, 375.
Gaurava feast, 97.
Gaurī, 50, 110, 175 n.
Gayā, 124 f., 152, 172, 290, 338 n., 364.
Gayā, Fort of, 124.
Gayā Śrāddha, 124, 128.
Gāyatrī mantra, 33, 211, 218 ff.,
INDEX

236, 246; forbidden during mourning, 164; great repetition of, 348 ff.; personified, 36, 215, 219 f.; repeated during eclipse, 352; taught at thread-investiture, 35 ff.; used as grace before meals, -241; at changing of thread, 308.

Gazing at sun or star at wedding, 91.

Genep, van., see Rites de Passage.

Geographical salvation, 364, 366.

Ghanhil, 311 f.

Ghi, see Clarified butter.

Ghurry, 348.

Ghosts, 128, 129, 142, 200, 337; getting rid of, 338.

Ghrisnesvara, 365 n.

Ghrimatāryākā, 21, 23, 30 n.

Gifts at ceremonies, 4, 11, 17, 25, 50, 94, 103.

Girls: birth of, 4; festivals observed by, 50; functions of, at weddings, 71; at Holt, 285; no haircutting ceremony for, 20, 23; sacred thread of, 28, 32.

Girnar (mountain), 280, 361, 366.

Giving away of bride, 78, 81.


Gogrisa, 238.

Gondal, 150 n., 279 n., 301 n.

Gord-tav, 62.

Gotrā, 324.

Grace before meat, 242 n.

Grihā, 237.

Guardianship of gods -over girls, 54 f., 84.

Gudhi Pratipad, 287.


Gulāla powder, 94.

Gundogara, 50.

Gupta, 189.

Guru (preceptor), 31 ff., 255; reverence for, 344, 346; worship of, 303.


Guruva, 255. See Thursday.

Haddon, 336 n.

Haigh, 447 n.

Hair: cutting of, 20; parting of, 94 n., 115 ff.; tying of, see Sikhē-bandhana; washing of, 247.

Hālāra Prānt, 301.

Hamsha, 424.

Handbook of Folklore, 339 n., 368 n.


Hardwar, 365.

Harivāmśa, 124.

Havyavāda, 171.

Hearth-worship, 316.

Heaven, 162, 195, 197 f.

Hell, 132, 162, 177, 195, 198, 298.

Herbs on head while bathing, 170, 173.

Hermits, 138.

Himālaya mountains, 366.

Hiranyakāsha, 280 f., 294.

Hiranyakarṣaṇa (Vishṇu), 84.

Hiranyasūra, 80.

Holi, 18 f., 94, 275, 280 ff., 375 n.

Holī prasāda, 19.

Holika, 280 f.

Homa, 126, 225, 331 f., 349, 410, 412, 415.

Honey, ceremonial use of, 160, 173, 184, 411 ff.

Hopkins, 66 n., 419 n.

Horī song, 275.

Horoscope, 3, 8, 67.

Horse-dance, 121 f.

Horse-sacrifice, 297.

Hospitals, reluctance to enter, 5.

Hurt, 344.

House-building, 353 ff.

House-warming, 360.

House-work, 248 f.

Householder, see Gṛihastha.

Human sacrifice, survivals from, 310 f., 398 ff.

Hunter, legend of, 277 ff.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index Item</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Husband, reverence for</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hulâsâni, 276</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hymn-singing, 389, 427</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ideal wives, the seven, 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idols, broken, 415 ff.; consecration of, 409 ff.; food offered to, see Food; opening eyes of, 413 f.; place in temples, 404; worship of, see Worship.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immanence of God, 428</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immersion, aspersion, affusion, see Baptismal rites.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impurity, ceremonial, 11 ff., 247, 250</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incarnations of Viṣṇu, see Avatāra.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incense, 121, 172, 300, 384</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indra, 85, 86, 92, 104, 242, 297, 324, 373, 376, 395; god of crops, 267; of hands, 137, 412; heaven of, 197.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ṭhirā-loka, 197</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indrâni, 92, 104, 373</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indus (river), 365</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infanticide, 56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infants, appearance of, 9; bathing of, 6; feeding of, 7, 20; father's first sight of, 8, 12; i. boy given to expectant mother to hold, 120.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initiation of Sannyâsī, 139, 422</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installation of god in idol, 167, 409 ff.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intercalary month, 340 f.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior foes, the six, 87 n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intervening-space, Lord of the, 237.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Investiture, see Thread (sacred).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invincible goddess, see Aparâjita.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invitations to wedding, 60, 64.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron, protective power of, 5, 71, 140; frightens away spirits of the dead, 159, 174.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iśādeva, Iśādevatā (tutelary deity), 2, 163, 210, 231, 245, 429.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iśvara, 224, 228</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jagadambâ, 117</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jagannâtha, 257</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jagannâtha Purî, 366, 425</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jaina, 56, 139, 162, 180, 243, 244 n., 246, 266, 280, 303 n., 336, 388 n., 390 n., 423 n., 425.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jaipur, 410</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jaladkhârâ, 220</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jalehâ (sweets), 64.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jambu (tree), 329.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jambuvâti, 167 n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jannâ, Jannâ (river), 143, 176, 213 f., 247, 268, 365.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jannâgar, 301 n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jâna, story of, 180 f.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Janmâstamî, 276, 289 n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>January–February, see Mâgha.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jâta-karma, 6.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jâthârâgini, 299 n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jâyâ-homa, 86.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jesus Christ, 446 ff.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jewellery, 63, 74.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jewels, in ceremonies, 414.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jñâdapâtâghâ, see Anûkâlâ.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jinn, 200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jivâman, 197</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jñâna, 224</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jñâna-mârga, xvi, 420 f.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jñâna mudrâ, 222, 224.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jośi, see Astrologer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Journey to Yâna, 179 ff., 193 ff.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Judgement of Yâna, 162, 195.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>July–August, see Śrâvaṇa.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jumna (river), see Jannâ.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jumâgadhâ, 2, 3, 152, 280, 309, 315.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>June–July, see Âsâdhâ.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jupiter (planet), see Guru.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jyeṣṭha (eighth month), 28, 51, 59, 295 ff.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaḍâvâ Kaṇâbî, 54 n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kailâsa, 197, 374.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kâjâli Trîśa, 111.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kâkkola berries, 69.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kâla, 171, 182, 419 n., 433.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kâla Râtri, see Kâlî caturdaśi.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kâlî, 329 n., 361 f., 376, 419 n., 433.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kâlî caturdaśi, 200, 259, 276, 337 f., 433.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kâlindî, 167 n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kâliyuga, 93, 181.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kâna, 182, 274; see Love, god of.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kâmadhenu, 324.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kamala mudrâ, 224.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kamala Piûjâ, 398 f.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kapila, 125 n., 297.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kârâṇa Šârîra, 162, 195.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Karkâ Śaṅkrântî, 272.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Karma: accountable for evils, 123; for early death, 136, 136, 201 f.; for widowhood, 203 ff.; can be neutralized, 195; judgement according to, 162, 190, 195; stories illustrating, 399, 399 n.; theory of, discussed, 196 f., 208, 436 ff.

Karma-mārga, xvi, 363, 378, 418 ff.

Karma (Viṣṇu), 123.

Karna-veda, 23 f.

Kārtti (first month), 59, 264, 291, 318.

Kāśi, see Banares.

Kātyāyaṇa, 237.

Kātyā Yan, 186.


Kāṭhi customs, 149 n., 155.

Kauravya, 367 n.

Kausalya, 288.

Kāveri (river), 365.

Kavyavāha, 171.

Kedara, 365 n.

Keśava (name of Viṣṇu), 216.

Ketaki flower, legend of, 276, 384.

Ketu, 104.

Khadira tree (‘Flame of the Forest’), 200, 275 n., 333, 337 n., 354; abode of Māmah, 200.

Kharisa, 240.

Kharaśa (castle), 2.

Khilo, 119.

King and Queen: represented by bridegroom and bride, 97.

King George, 3 f.

Knowledge, the Way of, see Jñānamārga.

Koli, 149, 283, 338.

Kravvyā, 236 n.

Krīṣṇa, 2, 57, 92, 185, 248, 250, 275, 299, 366, 376, 401, 403 ff., 418 n., 429 f.; bathing of, 318; birthday of, 317; eight wives of, 167; story of, as remedy after miscarriage, 124.

Kṛṣṭikā, 296.
clay, 234, 305; clothed and decorated, 270, 279, 305; eleven sacred, 365 f.; installation of, 409 ff.; in temples other than Śaiva, 257; legend of, 276; worship of, 382 ff., 397 f.

Līṅga Śārira, 156, 159 ff., 180.

Litigation, 255.

Lohāṇā, 28.

Love: fruit of, see Madana; god of, 143.

Low-castes, 56, 319 n. See also Outcastes.

Lowell, J. R., 365 n.

Luck, good and bad, see Auspicious signs.

Lucky, see Fortunate.

Lunar month, 271 n.

M's, the five, 419 n.

Macnicol, Dr., 420 n.

Madana fruit, 61, 65, 80, 103, 143.

Mādhava (name of Viṣṇu), 216.

Madhuparka, 74.

Madya, 271 n.

Māgha (fourth month), 28, 274.


Magical powers, 120.

Mahābhārata, 2, 98 n., 229, 299, 367 n., 393.

Mahādeva, 275 n., 345, 419 n., 420.

Mahākāla, 365 n.


Mahākāliśṭhāna, 329, 350.

Mahālaya Śrāddha, see Śrāddha.

Mahāpātaka, 165, 437.

Mahārudra sacrifice, 344 ff.

Mahāsaravatī, 329, 350.

Māla Māsa, 341.

Malaria, remedies for, 259 f., 282.

Malina Šoḍaśi, 157, 159 ff.

Mallikārjuna, 365 n.

Mālvā, 314.

Māmā, 200, 337 n.

Mandodari, 50 n.

Maṅgala (planet Mars), 66, 104, 124, 203, 206, 253 f., 288; (act of worship), 401.

Maṅgala Śrāddha, 21.

Maṅgalavāra, see Tuesday.

Mango, 65.

Maṇidvīpa, 197.

Maṇiṣyastambha, 29, 61, 101.

Man-lion, see Nṛṣimha.

Mantras, 5, 21 ff., 32, 52, &c.

Manu, Laws of, 131, 182, 434 ff., 450.

Marajādi, 213 n.

Marāṭhā country, see Deccan.

March-April, see Cāitra.

Maret, Dr. R. R., 434.

Margāśīra (second month), 271, 357.

Mārjana, 214, 218, 220, 308, 349.

Mārkaṇḍeya (sage), worshipped, 26.

Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa, 350 n.

Marketing, see Shopping.

Marking of idol, see Gopīcandana, Sandal-wood.

Marriage: age of, 53; blessing at, 84; of bull and heifer, 124, 175, 290, 321, 338 n.; of kindred, 41 n., 47, 81; preliminaries, 46 ff.; procession, 71 f.; eight kinds of, 55; second, see Remarriage; ten essential rites of, 82.

Mars (planet), see Maṅgala.

Marutah, 85.

Mask on īṅgā, 279.

Mathurā, see Muttra.

Matsya Purāṇa, 124.

May-June, see Jyesṭha.

Māyā, 375.

Meals: breakfast, 240 ff., 250; eating together at marriage, 93; evening meal, 245 ff.; women's, 251.

Meat-eating, 241 f.

Medha, 30 n.

Medical remedies, 3, 20.

Meditation, 383.

Mediums, 121 f.

Mela, see Fairs.

Melāṭi, 338.

Mendicants, see Sannyāsī.

Meṅgaṇi, 315.

Mental worship, 216.

Mercury (planet), see Budha.

Merit, acquisition of, 323, 363 ff., 366, 389, 394 f.

Meriyumi, 339.

Methi, 16.

Midwives, 2 ff., 15; fees of, 6.
| Milk, 64; ceremonial use of, 160, 173; selling of, 164 n. |
| Millet, 140; white, 151, 158, 286. |
| Mimic journey, 41. |
| Mimosa Soma, 115 n., 333 n. |
| Mina Dālīka, 338 n. |
| Mina Rasī, 59. |
| Mindala, 103. |
| Mīndhalā nut, 175. |
| Mirror, given after investiture, 40. |
| Miscarriage, 123. |
| Mitra, 231. |
| Mitra-Vindā, 167 n. |
| Monday, 28, 252, 302; in Sṛvāṇa, 305 f. |
| Monier Williams, 59 n., 62 n., 160 n., 339 n., 372 n., 379 n., 419 n. |
| Monogamy, 130. |
| Monsoon, end of, 270 f.; signs of, 291, 295, 302 f. |
| Moon, 54, 59, 104, 260, 261, 288, 301. See also Soma. |
| Moonless night, 260. |
| Moonlight, festival of white, see Saratpūrṇimā. |
| Moonstones, 253. |
| Morning worship, 379 ff. |
| Mother (bride's), 72, 73, 74, 75, 78 ff., 92, 93, 122. |
| Mother (groom's): at birth, 17; at wedding, 73, 75, 81; in home, 102, 105, 106, 112, 130. |
| Mother Sixth, 9 ff. |
| Mound of food, see Annakūṭa. |
| Mourners, chief, 159; hired, 155 n. |
| Mourning, 154. |
| Moving house, 254. |
| Mrīgī Mudrā, 169. |
| Mrītaka Sūtaka, 157, 160. |
| Mudrās (Tantric), 224, 286, 330 f., 347, 419. See also Hands. |
| Muṇhammadan, 243, 246, 333; midwives, 2. |
| Mukti, 224. See also Mokṣa. |
| Muṇgī Trija, 110. |

### natuurlijke textuele vertaling

| Muṇja grass, 31, 39. |
| Music, 67, 71, 289; forbidden during mourning, 163. |
| Mustard-seed, at funerals, 151. |
| Muttra, 366. |
| Myrtus Pimenta, 69. |

### Nāga-bārota, see Snake-bards. |
### Nāga-pañcani, 314 ff., 407. |
### Nāgara, distinctive customs of, 4 n., 5 n., 7, 9, 12, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 25, 42, 45, 46, 47, 51, 52 n., 53, 55, 60, 63, 64, 67 n., 68, 70, 78, 78 n., 79, 80, 83, 85, 87, 88, 96, 97, 98, 99 n., 100, 101, 105, 106, 107, 109, 111, 113, 115, 127, 128, 129, 148 f., 151, 268, 273, 305, 305 n., 309 n., 349. |
| Nāgara Brāhmans, 42, 47. |
| Nāgēśvara, 365 n. |
| Nagnajīti, 167 n. |
| Naivedya, 174, 237, 239, 250, 27; 332, 391; distinguished from prasāda, 385, 392. |
| Nakalaṅka, 2, 404. |
| Nīmakaṇaṇa, 13. |
| Nāmaśkāra, 224. |
| Name: customs regarding, 14 f.; giving of, 13 f.; new, at thread ceremony, 34; pronounced or not, 15, 84, 172 f. |
| Nandā, 175 n. |
| Naraka, see 1st. |
| Narasīnha, 257. |
| Nārāyaṇa, 190, 238. |
| Nārāyaṇa Bali, 125. |
| Nārbarā (river), 214, 365, 365 n., 374. |
| Nāsik, 365 n. |
| Navaratrā, 52 n. |
| Necklace of rudra beads, 377. |
| Nectars, the five, 248, 414. |
| New moon, see Amāvasyā. |
| New Year ceremonies, 140. |
| New Year's Day, 261, 264; Decanī, see Gūḍi Pratīpad; Halāri, 301. |
| Night festivals, 276. |
| Night of the gods, 272. |
| Nīlghiri, 365. |
| Nilotsarga, 124. |
| Nīṃ trees, 157, 189, 288, 362. |
**INDEX**

**Nima**, 302 f.
Nine Days of Āśvina, 329 f.
Nine Nights of Cāitra, 288.
Nine planets, the, 24, 87, 104, 340, 358.
Ninth day of fortnight, 261.
Ninth month, see Āśadhā.
Nirmāya, 388, 389, 392.
Nirvāna mudrā, 225.
Niskalanka, see Nakalanka.
Niṣkramaṇa, 18.
Niṣṣaṁ, 390 n.
Nitya homa, 226.
Nīvīti, 33.
Nodes of the moon, 104.
Northern India, differing calendar of, 317 n.
No-salt festival, 51, 259, 301.
Notes and Queries on Anthropology, 131 n., 368 n.
November–December, see Mārgaśīrṣa.
Nyāsiṇa-tāturdaśi, 289 n., 294.
Numbers, auspicious and otherwise:

| 1) | 120 |
| 2) | 126, 157 |
| 3) | 158 |
| 4) | 113, 120, 121, 122, 123, 170 |
| 5) | 239, 242, 248, 330, 414 |
| 6) | 9 ff. |
| 25) | 159 |
| 7) | 2, 89, 103, 115, 120 |
| 128) | 173 |
| 218) | 281 |
| 8) | 173 |
| 9) | 157 |
| 10) | 12, 157, 159, 170 |
| 13) | 171, 176, 347 |
| 12) | 13 |
| 18) | 126 |
| 143) | 248 |
| 15) | 179, 285 f. |
| 16) | 110, 182, 188 |
| 20) | 16 |
| 24) | 349 |
| 30) | 16 |
| 32) | 110 |
| 35) | 410 |
| 37) | 16, 410 |
| 46) | 358 |
| 52) | 159, 178 |
| 81) | 358 |
| 101) | 81 |


Nursing mother, 7.

**Nyāsa**, 228, 232, 382 n., 412.

Obscenity, at Holi, 282 f., 287.
Occasional rites and ceremonies, 343 ff.
October–November, see Kārttika.
Odd and even, 116, 122.
Offering, in temple worship, 385.
Offerings to gods: after wedding, 98; in temple, 385, 388.
Offertory, 385.
Officiants in temple, 369, 377 ff.
Oilings of hair, 112, 114, 119.
Oldenberg, 84 n., 88 n., 90 n.

**Om**, 138, 143 f., 147, 150, 152, 154, 189, 217.
Omnipresence of God, 428.
One and a quarter, see Numbers.
Oraśya, 380 n.
Oṣadhi, 85.
Outcastes, 36, 56, 61, 149, 153, 169, 196 f., 213, 247, 282, 319 n., 351 f., 440 f.
Ovāranām levāṇu, 133 n.

**Padma-sīlā, 355.**
Paśātha marriage, 57.
Paśātha, 34, 169.
Paśa deva sthāpana, 170.
Paśa Śrādha, 173.
Paśātātvavṛti, 166.
Paśācamṛita, 166.
Paṇḍava, 299, 332, 367.
Paṇḍu (king), 367.
Paṇīni, 229.
Panoti, 256, 371.
Paṇḍa, 60.
Paramahamsa, 424.
Paramātman, 138, 197, 422, 424.
Paraśurāma, 291.
Paṁśu, 336.
Paṁśtha Sūjana, 234.
Paśvata (order of ascetics), 378 n., 424.
Paśali, 304.
Paṭāla, visits of gods to, 59, 266, 302, 309 f.
Paṭhika, 146.
Paṅsa (third month), 272.
Pārvaka, 236.
Peace-pot, 102.
Peace treaty, Thursday good day for, 256.
Permission to go given to gods, see Dismissal.
Personality of God, 430 f.
Phalākhāra, 289 n.
Phālguna (fifth month), 28, 50, 280 ff., 304, 357.
Phallic symbol, see Liṅga.
Phallic worship, 431 f.
Physician, 182.
Picnic, 246.
Pigeons, meritorious feeding of, 143.
Pilgrimage, 207; best time for, 306; places and rites of, 363; symbolic, after investiture, 41.
Pillion, riding, 71.
Śīḍa, 124, 127, 146, 159 ff., 172 ff., 177 ff., 328.
Śīpāl tree, 10, 14, 61, 110, 111, 143, 165, 304, 330, 410; abode of bhūta, 337 n.; of Viṣṇu, 290; holy, 417; worshipped, 248, 290, 319.
Śīpala, 330.
Śīśā, 200, 437.
Śīmāmbārā, 351.
Śīthi, 30.
Śīrī, 66, 174, 177 ff.; P. days, 271, 289, 291, 318; P. finger, see Hands; P.-lokā, 19, 272; P.-tarpana, 230 ff.; represented by Brāhmans, 182.
Plague, remedies against, 361.
Plastering house, 240, 249, 254.
'Pleasant First', see Gūḍi Pratīpad.
Ploughing, 254 ff.
Pole-star, gazing at, 91.
Porbandar, 375 n.
Postulants, 422 f.
Postures (ceremonial), 216, 218, 382.
Pota sārī, 204.
Pots at wedding, 63, 66.
Potter's thumb, 65.
Powder, coloured, used in worship, 175, 177.
Power in religion, 433.
Prabhāṣa Pālan, 290, 364.
Prācēṇī, 33.
Pradakṣīṇā, 222.
Pradoṣa, 395.
Prālāda, 280 f., 294.
Prasāhasi, 35, 81, 85, 91, 227, 237.
Prāpyaṭya, form of marriage, 56.
Prāṝti, 375.
Prāṇa, 242.

Prānāḥuti, 242.
Prāṇapratīṣṭhā, 286, 409 f., 413.
Prāṇāyāma, 167, 218 ff., 226, 232, 382 n., 413.
Prāṇātā pātra, 169.
Prasādī, 304.
Prāḷāh Sandhkyā, 215.
Pratīṣṭha (king), 98 n.
Pravara, 31 f.
Prayāg, 366.
Prāyaścitta, 165, 344.
Prāyaścitta Homa, 168.
Precautions against evil at birth, 1 ff., 5.
Precedence of husband and wife, 88.
Preceptor, see Guru.
Precious metals, use of, at death, 143. See also Money.
Premonitions of death, 136.
Presents and present-giving, 3, 11, 17, 68, 72, 80, 82, 94, 98, 105, 119 f., 273, 282; to and from Ruling Chief, 275.
Prēta, 161, 168, 171, 174, 177 ff., 201; how united to ancestors, 182 ff.; miserable state of, 191, 199.
Prithivī (Mother Earth), 211, 218, 353.
Prithivirāja Čauhāna, 57.
Prohibited degrees for marriage, see Marriage of kindred.
Proposal of marriage, 48.
Prosoptis spicigera, 86 n.
Protectives against evil, 35, 72.
Provision-jar at wedding, 99.
Puberty, attainment of: by boys, 27, 53; by girls, 53 ff., 104.
Pud, Put (Hell), 132.
Pūjā, see Worship.
Pujārī, see Officiant.
Pūnāsavana, 108.
Pūrāṇa, 124, 431.
Purandhi, 88.
Purdah, see Women, seclusion of.
Pure Śrāddha, 174 ff.
Purification: after death, 143, 162 ff.; after investiture, 37; of altar, 168; of Brāhmans by Holi fire, 283; of food, 178; of ground, 74, 159, 215, 218, 240, 246, 358, 392 f.
Puruṣa, 171, 375.
Puruṣasakha mantras, 167, 232.
Puruṣottama, 341.
Pāśan, 176.
Puṣṭi, 30 n.
Pyre, funeral, 149 f.

Quarrels, matrimonial: how made up, 88.
Quarters of the sky, 87, 150; guardians of the, see Dikṣāla.
Queen Mary, 367.

Rāba, 7.
Rādā, 405.
Rākṣa, 104, 351, 355.
Rājā, see Ruling Chief.
Rājābhoga, 402.
Rājā-pūjā, see Royal worship.
Rajas, 32 n., 305.
Rājākot, 301 n.
Rājopacāra, see Royal worship.

Rājput, adoption among, 134; festivals of, 332 f.; funeral customs of, 155; marriage customs of, 55, 56; midwives, 2; opposite marriage of widows, 206; privileges of, 42 n.; thread ceremony among, 28, 32, 33, 40.

Rākṣaḍ, 259.
Rākṣaṇa, 200.
Rākṣaṇa marriage, 57.
Rākṣaṇa-loka, 272.
Rākṣasandhana ceremony, 113.
Rāma, 89, 92, 275, 332, 372, 401 n., 402 ff., 418 n.; birth of, 288; birthday of, see Rāma-navamī; name of, used at funerals, 147, 154, 185, 444.

Rāma-navamī, 261, 288 f.
Rāma-with-the-axe, see Paraśu-rama.
Rānūtyāna, 89, 229, 283, 332, 393.
Rāmeśvara, 365 n., 366.
Rānaka Devī, 20.
Rāṇḍirīṇḍa, 204.
Rāṇi, 351.
Rāṣadā, 108.
Rāṣṭra-bhṛita-homa, 85.
Raurava, 195.
Rāvaṇa, 372.

Ravi, see Sun.
Ravivāra, see Sunday.
Reading aloud of Scriptures, see Scriptures.
Rebirth, 195 f., 198 f., 225, 436 ff.
Remarriage, 130 f.
Remedies, medical, 3, 259, 282, 285.
Restrictions on expectant mother, 113; on her husband, 115.
Return from pilgrimage, 42.

Revati, 296.
Rheumatism, remedies against, 285.

Rice: at funerals, 151, 169, 172 ff.; at weddings, 75 f., 78; in other ceremonies, 236, 358 f., 384, 390; scattering of, 126.

Rice-balls, see Piṇḍa.

Rīg-veda, 64, 232, 344.
Rīṣi, 47, 68, 89, 376.
Rīṣi Pañcarāti, 322.

Rīṣi-tarpana, 229.
Rising in the morning, 210.

Rites de Passage, Les, author of, 390 n.

Rivers: consecrated things thrown into, 101, 311, 314; sacred, invoked, 214, 247.

Rosary, 128, 223, 388.
Rosary of the Clouds', 297.
Rose-apple, see Janbu.
Royal repast, see Rājābhoga.
Royal worship, 233, 321 f., 395 f.
Ruby pillar, see Māṇikyastambha.

Rudra, 125, 170, 171, 173, 176, 231, 345 f., 419 n.
Rudra's consort, Caṇḍī, propitiation of, 350 f.

Rudraṣṭaṇa, 348.
Rudrākṣa, 147, 388.

Rudrī, 279, 347.

Rukmiṇī, 57, 92, 167 n., 405.

Ruling Chief: at ceremonies, 347, 361; and funerals, 150, 153; and Holi, 283; sacredness of, 366, 418 n.

Ruling Chief's consort; at ceremony, 351; sacredness of, 367.

Rāpa āṭurāṇi, 336.

Sabala, 193, 238.
Sabāha Manḍapā, 370.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>31 n.</td>
<td>Saccharum Munja</td>
<td>Sacred thread, see Thread.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85 ff.</td>
<td>Sacrifices</td>
<td>five great, 343 ff.; at wedding, 85 ff. See also Homa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>273</td>
<td>Sudasyapti</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>297</td>
<td>Sagara</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307</td>
<td>Sace</td>
<td>See Ri.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>Sahadharmani</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>350</td>
<td>Sahasranandi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>287</td>
<td>Saka era</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115, 119, 121, 220 f., 373, 376, 387 n., 419 n.</td>
<td>Saketi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>165, 166, 170, 177, 182 ff., 188, 201, 232, 257</td>
<td>Siltagrama (symbol of Viṣṇu)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>269, 429</td>
<td>Sanniyasti</td>
<td>Origin of, 269, 429; worshipped, 270, 308.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Sale of daughters in marriage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>198</td>
<td>Saltolaya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52, 259, 289, 294, 301</td>
<td>Salt</td>
<td>Abstinence from, 52, 259, 289, 294, 301; bought on New Year's Day, 264; high regard for, 140; Holt, remedy for animals, 284; spilling of, 243; symbolic use of, 72, 108.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71 n.</td>
<td>Salutation festival</td>
<td>See Annakuta.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>171 n.</td>
<td>Samadhi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>396</td>
<td>Samadhi pūja</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>242</td>
<td>Samama</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Samvatara</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>344</td>
<td>Sama-veda</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86, 115, 333</td>
<td>Samiti</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Samidha</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>198</td>
<td>Saminjito</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>Sahasikara Bhaskara</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>287, 301 n.</td>
<td>Sahirvat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sahi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>381</td>
<td>Sahi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>181 ff., 193</td>
<td>Sahiyojana</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>Sahiyukta</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Sandhya</td>
<td>Detail of, 210 ff.; evening, 225, 239, 244; first period formed after investiture, 38; in Viṣṇava temple, 403; midday, 225, 238; morning, 215 ff., 389, 415; truncated form during mourning, 164, 165.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104, 256, 288 f.</td>
<td>Sani (planet Saturn)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>256</td>
<td>Sani</td>
<td>Stone, 256.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121, 219, 383 n.</td>
<td>Saniyardra</td>
<td>See Saturday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>340</td>
<td>Sankalpa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27, 181, 439</td>
<td>Sankaracharya, the first</td>
<td>His successors, 303, 376, 425.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>224</td>
<td>Saṅkha</td>
<td>See Conch-shell.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>293, 271, 272 ff.</td>
<td>Saṅkranti</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139, 421 ff., 427, 444</td>
<td>Saṅnyāsti</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>161</td>
<td>Saṅṭāṇjali</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>348</td>
<td>Saṅtattanu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 n.</td>
<td>Sapindus Sapornaria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>295</td>
<td>Sarabha</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>338 n.</td>
<td>Sarangpur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12, 42, 69 n., 70, 100, 113, 268</td>
<td>Sarasvata Brāhmans</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125, 214, 247, 365</td>
<td>Sarasvati (river)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>378 n., 424</td>
<td>Sarasvati (order of ascetics)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>334 f.</td>
<td>Saratpurini</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>189</td>
<td>Sarmat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>198</td>
<td>Sārūpya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>365</td>
<td>Saryaya (river)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>334</td>
<td>Sātā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>350</td>
<td>Satacāndi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>236 n.</td>
<td>Satamāṅgala</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>178 n.</td>
<td>Satapatrā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50, 99, 176 n., 207, 208</td>
<td>Sāti</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32 n., 305</td>
<td>Sāttva</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8, 256 ff., 393, 302 f., 372</td>
<td>Saturday</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>167 n.</td>
<td>Satyābhāma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>167</td>
<td>Satyāya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403</td>
<td>Savana</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35, 88</td>
<td>Sāvithā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85, 92, 110</td>
<td>Sāvitrī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>197</td>
<td>Sāvyuṣa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Scarf of ceremony</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 25, 255 | School, going to | }
INDEX

Scripture, reading of, 228, 245, 260, 289, 299, 343, 393; repetition of, 247; at wedding, 64 ff.; to Hana-\nman, 258.

Scriptures, texts from, see Mantras.

Seating on ground, 20.

Second month, see Marga\-sirsa.

Sectarian animosity, 266.

Seedlings, worship of, 52.

Semi-pure śrāddha, 171 ff.

September-October, see Āsvina.

Śeṣanāga, 62, 115, 354.

Śeṣa, 60.

Seven circles, 2.

Seven steps, see Steps.

Seven worlds, see Worlds.

Sevens, see Numbers.

Seventh month, see Vaiśākha.

Seventh-day Penance, 108.

Shaving: after investiture, 44; before birth of child, 115; before thread ceremony, 30; in mourning, 44 n.; days for, 254 ff.

Shoes, removal of, 369 f.

Shopping, 249, 252 ff.

Shrine, 407.

Śiddha, 25.

Śiddhāpur, 125, 152, 290, 338 n., 364.

Śiṣṭa of idols, 403, 411.

Śikhā, 22, 142, 423.

Śikhā-bandhana, 217 ff.

Silence, vows of, 243.

Silent fast, 110.

Śīlī-sātana, 306 f.

Silk thread tied on wrist, 304, 309.

Simanta, 116 ff., 253, 255.

Sinless incarnation, see Nakala\-naka.

Sins, great, 165; minor, 165; death-bed, 168.

Sipping of water, ritual, 12, 75, 76 f.

Śīro, 7.

Śītā, 50 n., 92, 404.

Śīva: 89, 92, 104, 125, 126, 176 n.; 225, 239, 292 f., 294, 362; auspicious names of, 419; character of, 429; followers of, see Śaiva; god of boundaries, 88; heaven of, 197; holds darbār on Śivarātri, 278, 375; how depicted, 375; husband of Pār\n\va, 50; inherent

in Brāhmaṇ, 242; mark of, 217; Monday sacred to, 252; regarded as great ascetic, 418; placated by water, 313; repetition of name, 24, 147; represented by bridegroom, 68, 70, 72, 79, 97; Śakti of, 220; special month of, see Śrāvana; symbolized in AUM, 138; in sacred thread, 32; by trident, 125; temples of, see Śaiva; visits Pātāla, 59; worship of, 377 ff., 418; worshipped at weddings, 87; by most Brāhmaṇs, 210, 231.

Śīva Purāṇa, 393.

Śīva-liṅga mudra, 225.

Śīva-mahimna\-stotra, 420.

Śīva-nirmāṇa, 267 n.

Śīvarātri, 261, 276 ff., 375.

Śīva’s consort, worship of, see Pār\n\va.

Śīva-worship, varieties of, 395.

Sixteenfold worship, see Worship.

Sixteens, see Numbers.

Sixteen-thread necklace, 110 f.

Sixth, Mother, see Mother Sixth.

Sixth-day ceremonies, 9 ff.

Sixth month, see Čaitra.

Sixth year inauspicious, 25.

Skins used ceremonially, 33, 40, 93, 104, 215.

Slapping, 120.


Śmaṭṭa ācamana, see Ācamana.


Smith, James, 248.

Smoke, 87.

Snake round liṅga, 234 n., 375, 382.

Snake shrines and stones, 315, 407.

Snake-bards, 315 f.

Snake-bite, cure and avoidance of, 315 f.

Snake who supports the world, see Śeṣanāga.

Snake-well, 315.

Snake-worship, 20, 314 ff.

Śaatāka, 39; rules for, 43; classes of, 43.

Soma (plant), 54, 85.
INDEX

Soma (the moon), 54, 84, 85, 288.
Samarāja, 171.
Somavāra, see Monday.
Somnāth, 290, 364, 365.
Son, desire for a, 110, 112 ff., 325.
Soot auspicious for pigment, 65.
Soul after death, 156.
Soul-body, 413.
Sowing, 254 ff.; symbolic, 51 f., 340.
Spirits, evil, see Demons, Ghosts, &c.; gaining power over, 337.
Spoon in ceremonies, 76, 184.
Squints, 10.
Śrāddha: 449; ascetic’s, 201; at Gayā, 289, 363; auspicious, 21, 62, 72, 124, 159, 410; bathing after, 213; for ascetics, 326, 422; for those who died of snake-bite, 314; for those who died violent deaths, 327; for women, 327, 364; impure, 159; Mahālaya, or Memorial, 326 ff.; of union, see Sam-vyaya; pure, 174; Sāhāvatsari, 326 ff.; semi-pure, 171; to appease ghosts, 290; unlucky days for, 253, 262.
Śrāddha, 30 n.
Śrāvāna, 194, 304 ff., 340, 357, 390; last day of, 319; Mondays in, 305 f., 375.
Śrāvāna fair, 316.
Śrāvāni, 307 f.
Śrī, 30 n., 67, 110, 339. See also Lakṣmī.
Śrī Kṛṣṇa, see Kṛṣṇa.
Śrī Nāthājī, 366.
Śrīgā, 402.
Śrīneri, 425.
Staff given at thread ceremony, 33, 40.
Stages of a Brāhmaṇ’s life, 139.
Stanjila, 168.
Steps, the seven: at funeral, 148; at marriage, 89 ff.
Sthāpita īṅga, 374.
Sthula Āraṇā, 156.
Stone: at weddings, 87, 88; for pounding paste in temples, 376, 380.
Śūdra (i.e. one not invested with sacred thread), 27, 164, 293, 440 f.
Sugar, ceremonial use of, 160, 173, 184.
Sugrīva, 89.
Suicide, ritual, 400.
Śukla Yajur-veda Samhitā, 170, 346.
Śukra (planet Venus), 59, 104, 123, 256, 288, 346.
Śukra (preceptor of the gods), 256.
Śukravīra, see Friday.
Sumanasi, 175 n.
Sunday, 8, 258, 302 f., 320.
Yajñōta, 301.
Superman, 413 f.
Superstitions, birth, 7 ff.
Supreme spirit: inhabits Brāhmaṇ’s body, 234; see also Paramātman.
Surabhi, 175 n., 224.
Śūrya, see Sun.
Śūryamāṇḍala, 220.
Śūtaka (ceremonial defilement), 11 ff., 15, 16, 17, 63, 123, 150, 154 f., 157, 202; affected by nearness of kinship, 164; lightening of, 162 f.; precludes Mahālaya Śrāddha, 326; prevents presence of god in house, 163.
Śuyāni (midwife), 2 ff.
Śvadha, 227.
Śvādhyāya, 228 n., 245.
Śvāhā, 85, 227, 347, 348.
Śvāmī Nārāyaṇa sect, 279 n., 377 n.
Śvarga, see Heaven.
Śvasti, 83, 142.
Śvāstikā, 18, 22, 36, 109, 110, 158, 316, 335, 355, 358, 415.
Śvayambhū, 276, 364, 374, 3"4 n., 396, 399, 409.
Sweepers, see Outcastes.
Śyāma, 193, 238.
Symbols in worship, 289. See also Īṅga, Śālagrama, &c.
INDEX

Tamás, 32 n., 305.
Tantras, the, 419 n.
Tāpī Sālāma, 108.
Tapodhana Brāhmans, 37 n., 385.
Tāra, 50 n.
Tāraka mantra, 364.
Tarpāna, 173, 214, 229, 308, 349.
Tatpurusa, 125, 170, 173.
Taylor, Rev. Dr. G. P., 56 n., 341 n.
Tea-drinking, 239, 243 n.
Teeth-cleaning, 39, 212 ff., 247.
Teething of infants, 24.
Temple: bell of, see Bell; building of, 408 ff.; endowment of, 409; flag of, 409 n., 414; garden of, 396, 406 ff.; gifts to, 2, 17, 190, 243, 288; t. of Siva, 396 ff.; of Vishnu, 401 ff.; visit to, 158; well, 408; t. worship, see Worship.
Tenth day: after birth, 12; after death, 157 ff.
Tenth month, see Śrāvāna.
Thākora, 275 n.
Thanksgiving, 306.
Third month, see Pauṣa.
Thirteen (number), see Numbers.
Thirteen black pots, ceremony of, 126, 190.
Thirteenth day after death, 164, 178, 190.
Thirteenth day of month, 261.
Thirtieth day after birth, 16.
Thirty-seventh day after birth, 16.
Thirty-two (number), see Numbers.
Thread, sacred: changing of, 170, 170 n.; composition of, 32; discarding of, by ascetic, 423; donning and wearing of, 32, 33; investiture with, 27 ff., 133; necessary before marriage, 27; position of, 32; renewal of, 33, 307 ff.; symbolism of, 31 ff.
Thread: protective, 113; symbol for clothing, 160, 174, 175, 178, 185.
Thread-girding at wedding, 82, 95, 102.
Three, worship of the, 126.
Threshold, sacrifice to, 146; t. of temple, 372 ff., 381.
Thumb, see Hands and fingers.
Thursday, 8, 28, 255, 302, 320.

Tīrtha (order of ascetics), 378 n., 474.
Tobacco-smoking, 243.
Toilet: 211; of women, 247.
Tonsure, 423 n.
Toothpick, see Teeth-cleaning.
Topknot, see Śikhā.
Tortoise in Śaiva temple, 371, 380.
Transmigration of souls, see Rebirth.
Travelling, 254 ff.; forbidden to ascetics during monsoon, 303.
Tributary rivers, impurity of, 213.
Trident of Śiva, 125, 177.
Tīrśod, 212 n.
Trīnūrti, 138, 431.
Tripiṇḍi, 126.
Triple leaves, 110.
Triśula, see Trident.
Trouseau, 17, 104.
Trunk of Ganeśa, 292.
Tryambakānātha, 365 n.
Tuesday, 8, 253, 293, 302 ff., 320, 372, 407.
Tulasi, 141, 143, 147, 161, 172, 178, 183 ff., 232, 239, 293, 319, 392 n., 408; married to Śaṅgarāma, 269 ff.; worshipped, 248, 270.
Turmeric, 87, 100, 110, 113, 116, 117, 120, 190, 316, 356, 358, 359.
Tutelary deity, see Iṣṭadeva.
Twelfth day: after birth, 13; after death, 164, 170; of fortnight, 261.
Twelfth month, see Āśvina.
Twentieth day after birth, 16.
Twice-born, who included among, xv n., 27, 28; when, 37.
Tying together: of bride and groom's clothes, 83, 99, 103; of parents' clothes at wedding, 75.
Tylor, 432.
Ucchīṣṭa, 391, 392.
Udāna, 243.
Udumbara, 34, 39, 330.
Ujāni, 314.
Ujjain, 287, 365 n.
INDEX

Ujjvalanavami, 261.
Umbrella first carried after investiture, 40.
Uncle (maternal) of bride, 68, 73.
Union, Śrāddha of, see Sāhityopana.
Unity of God, 430 ff.
Untouchables, see Outcastes.
Upadraṣṭrī, 344.
Upamanyu-stotra, 420.
Upaśāna, 27.
Upāniṣad, 142, 425.
Upapātaka, 165.
Upāsara, 303 n.
Upāstāna, 222.
Upāstīti, 33.
Uṣṭhāpana, 403.
Uttama Sūkṣma, 174 ff.
Uttarāyaṇa Sākrānti Day, 190.

Vadavāgni, 299.
Vadhānami, 4.
Vāgdevā, 48.
Vāmāvaitāvana, 167.
Vaidyānapātha, 365 n.
Vaiśāṅśika, 197.
Vairāgya mudrā, 224.
Vaiṣākhā (seventh month), 28, 291 ff., 357.
Vaiṣṇava, 64, 97, 239, 274, 289 n., 356, 391 n., 393 n., 418; see also Saiva. V. temple, 401 ff.
Vaiśāvadeva, 235.
Vaiśvanātha, 364.
Vaiśya, thread ceremony among, 28, 32, 33, 40.
Vaiśāraṇi, 141, 162, 176, 194.
Vaiśvāvata family, 238.
Vālāma Brahmans, 12.
Vāma-mārgi, 419 n.
Vāmanā-dvādaśa, 289 n., 323.
Vāmanasthali, 309.
Vānaprastha, 158, 422.
Vāntali, see Vāmanasthali.
Varada, 236 n.
Varāṇi, 189.
Varuna, 85, 231.
Vasanta Pañcami, 274.
Vasiṣṭha, 137.
Vāsudeva, 128.
Vāṭa Sāvitrī Vrata, 300.

Vāyu, 85, 137.
Vedantā Sūtra, 440 n.
Vedā, 216; study of, 44, 229, 245, 420; symbolic study of, after investiture, 39; veneration for, 56, 57, see also Scriptures.
Veda, 175.
Vedic survivals, 6, 13, 18, 19, 20, 23, 55, 64, 115, 367.
Venus (planet), 104, 122, see also Śukra.
Vera, 364.
Vidhātī, 237.
Vidhātī, 11.
Vidyā Snātaka, 43.
Vidyā Vrata Snātaka, 44.
Vigil before thread ceremony, 30.
Vijaya Dasami, 52 n., 352.
Vikrama, 287.
Vindhyādala, 366.
Virgin fasts and festivals, 50 ff.
Virpur, Ṭhākor Sāheb Surāji 332.
Visarjana, 224, 286.
Visits: general, 250; of condolence, 155; of congratulation, 9.
Viṣṇu, 92, 99, 125, 126, 128, 129, 210, 224, 239, 244, 276 ff., 308, 309, 335, 341, 376, 387 n., 388, 391 n., 395; character of, 429; embodiment of dead ancestors, 231; god of feet, 137, 412; followers of, see Viṣṇu; forgiveness asked from, at end of ceremonies, 227; heaven of, 197; identified with supreme good, 229; incarnate in corpse, 145; in rulers, 89 n., 150; incarnations of, 275, 281 n., 288, 291, 294, 309, 317, 324; inhabits parts of body, 170, 412; invoked at funeral ceremonies, 159, 161, 165, 170, 171, 173, 177, 182 ff., 188, 201; mark of, 217; names of, repeated, 24, 129, 142, 216; placated by kindness to others, 313 n.; protector, 59, 89; regarded as great potentate, 418; śakti of, 220; special months of, see Philoguno, Puruṣottama; symbolized in AUM, 138; in sacred thread, 32; symbols of: śānta-grāma, 165 ff., 182 ff., 201, 269; wheel,
INDEX

100, 125 ; third finger sacred to 168 n. ; visit to Pātāla, 59, 266, 302 f. ; worship of, 401 ff., 418 ; in Saiva temple, 404 ff. ; worshipped at marriage, 85, 87, 89.

Viṣṇu mantra, 170.

Viṣṇu’s consort, see Laksmī.

Viśācara, 147, 149.

Viśākārmā, 353.

Viśvedevāḥ, 85, 182 f., 182 n.

Vows : of midwife, 2, 3 ; of relatives of corpse, 189 ; paying of, 320 ; release from, on Deva Divālī, 271 ; taken for duration of monsoon, 303.

Vrata Sāttaka, 44.

Vṛddhi Śānaya, 39.

Vṛddhi Śraddha, 62, 132.

Vṛiṇa, 299.

Vyāna, 243.

Vyāsa, 303.

Wadkuali, 20.

Waking a god, 379, 401, 403, 405.

War, ceremonies to avert, 361.

Ward of the gods, 54 f.

Warriors’ Day, see Vijaya Daśamī.

Washing idol, 383, 405.

Water : ceremonial sprinkling or pouring of, 34, 75, 80, 90, 189, 226, 239 ; use of, after ablutions, 69, 79 ; defilement through, 246 ; in worship, 185 f. ; jug of, 133, 143 ; placates Śīva, 313 ; regarded as witness, 241 ; sanctification of, 232 ; symbolizing cleansing from sin, 221 ; worshipped, 214, 220 ; water in which idol has been washed, drunk, 258.

Water-drain in temple, 234, 375, 387.

Watering trees for merit, 248, 290, 319.

Wealth-worship, Day of, 335 f.

Weaning, 20.

Wedding, 58 ff., 67 ; w. booth, see Booth ; w. chariot, 67 ; w. day, fixing of, 59, 254, 262 ; w. feasts, 64, 96, 101 ; w. garments, see Clothes ; w. jar, 99 ; w. journey, 101 ; w. presents, 80, 94, 97, 98 ; w. songs, 106.

Wednesday, 8, 28, 254 f., 302.

Welcoming home : of adopted son, 133 ; of bride and groom, 102 f.

Well-digging, 360.

Western India, calendar of, 317 n.

Wcệnurse, 7.

Wheat : sacrificed, 152, 169 n., 175 ; worshipped, 108 f.

Wheel : symbol of Viṣṇu, 100, 125, 177.

Wheel-worship, 100.

Widows and widowhood, 61, 72, 108, 143, 202, 211, 443.

Wife as helpmate, 83, 85 ; half of husband’s body, 88 ; fasts of, 108, 300.

Wife, second, 129 f.

Wind, goddess of, 237.

Witches, 280 ff., 336, 407.

Witches’ night, see Kākī caturdaśī.

Woman’s day, 246 ff.

Woman’s Movement, 29.

Women : condition of, 434 f. ; fasts of, see Fasts ; religious limitations of, 36, 321 ; seclusion of, 249 ff., 434 ; seven bad qualities of, 281, 434 ; temple worship of, 373 n., 382, 384 n., 390, 396.

Works, the Way of, see Karma-mārga.

Worlds, the seven, 218.

Worship : evening, 250, 393, 403 ; fivefold, 174, 177, 189, 233, 248, 300, 339, 346, 353, 354, 358, 380, 393, 403, 406, 414 ; forbidden, 397 ; midday, 393 ; morning, 379 ff. ; royal, see Royal worship ; sixteenfold, 29 n. 52, 52 n., 182, 188, 190, 233 f., 331, 333, 336, 346, 353, 410 ; threefold, 380, 382 ; w. of accessories and apparatus of worship, 232, 381 f. ; of account-books, 339 ; of bridegroom, 72, 74 ; of cow, 214, 237, 311 ff. ; of ground, 146, 160, 353 ; of guru, 303 f. ; of hearth, 316 ; of husband, 130 n., 248 f. ; of idols, 21, 29, 331, 346, 350, 378 ff. ; of mason’s tools, 354 ; of Mound of Food, 267 ; of potter’s wheel, 65 ; of Rāma, 288, 401 ff. ; of rivers, 214, 247, 310 f. ; of sea, 309 f. ; of Śiva, 378 ff. ; of snakes, 314 ff.
407: of toe, see Toe; of tooth-stick, 213; of trees, see Tree-worship; of Viṣṇu, 401 ff.; of water, 214, 220; of wealth, 335 f.; of weapons and regal insignia, 332 f.

Yajamāna, 344, 412.
Vājñavalkya, 29.
Yajur-veda, 170, 172, 228, 245, 344.
Yakṣa, 238.
Yama, 137, 140, 160, 161, 301; abode of, in south, 2; court of, 177; kingdom of, 194; soul taken to, 156, 161 f., 179; sacrificed to after miscarriage, 125; and at weddings, 86; worshipped at funerals, 170, 173.
Yama-loka, 272.
Yama-harpana, 230.
Yamū, Yamunā, see Jannā.
Yātanā Śarira, 159 ff., 168 n., 180, 193.
Yoga, Yogī, 139, 171 n., 198.
Yoginī, 346.
Yojaka, 236 n.
Yoke at weddings, 87.
Yoni, 220, 234, 346, 375, 419 n.
Yoni mudrā, 224.

Zizyphus fruit, 275 n.
Zodiac, Signs of, 59.
"A book that is shut is but a block"

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY

GOVT. OF INDIA
Department of Archaeology
NEW DELHI.

Please help us to keep the book clean and moving.